

SPECIAL, and AGRICULTURAL BANK of NATAL, payable
 Pietermaritzburg or Durban free of charge.
 The present rates allowed on fixed deposits are—
 for 6 months 6 per cent per annum.
 12 " 7 " "
 24 " 8 " "
 Interest paid

45, OXFORD-STREET, W.
OSLER'S GLASS CHANDELIERS,
 Wall Lights and Mantelpiece Lusters for Gas and Candles.
 Glass Dinner Services for 12 persons, from £7 10s.
 Glass Dessert Services for 12 persons, from £2.

hed, surrounded by five acres of land, of cheerful
 tion, thoroughly ventilated, and contains forty-
 s and four bathrooms.—THETA, post-office,
 7.

SAN FRANCISCO PUBLIC LIBRARY



3 1223 09628 9393

Interest p
 Durban, P
 EDUC
 Frenc
 engaging fiv
 gish, Ita
 intlog, La
 Clergyman
 y of the
 num invol
 anch, and
 d Garmau
 air undivi
 tips. Par
 ouch includ
 on a heal
 rk; it is
 d airy co
 e lofty
 chmond, S
 RIDIN
 Sma
 Saddle R
 RIDING SC
 N.B.—T
 THE
 Pall-r
 d wharve
 ill, Britis
 CHIM
 FONT
 earwick B
 obility and
 ents in Ita
 scription
 allergies
 married in
 ents and T
 Manufact
 reet, Lond
 Estimates
 Sol
 COCK
 manu
 DURING C
 esset, new
 oms, 139,
 instruction
 testimonial
 SEWID
 for Fa
 e Franklin
 air, and th
 enable pa
 t on hire.
 s, New Ox
 W
 e most ap
 erience, an
 execution
 e unrivall
 aterial, the
 at, Lists
 ewgate-str
 SEW
 MACE

ELLEN LUPTON

thinking
with

theory

type

practice

entertaining
economical
essential

how
why

2ND EDITION
REVISED & EXPANDED

MORE

- PRINCIPLES
- EXAMPLES
- EXERCISES
- TYPE CRIMES
- FONTS
- FACTOIDS
- FUN

A DESIGN HANDBOOK

A CRITICAL GUIDE
 FOR DESIGNERS,
 WRITERS, EDITORS,
 & STUDENTS

HENNESSY
 COGNAC
 CARRIAGE FREE
 TO ANY PART OF THE KINGDOM
 CHRONOMETERS. WATCHES.

had
 tions
 Nick
 Dish
 Cutle
 Lam
 Beid
 and
 1, LA
 New
 J
 Ma
 door
 door
 and
 of L
 Easy
 with
 from
 cases
 D
 T
 J
 Five
 T
 C
 simp
 warn
 the g
 prese
 ed
 6,
 are, a
 Other
 Uphe
 Est
 upon
 B
 street
 the s
 An in
 M
 old C
 consi
 with
 Origin
 W
 new
 loo t
 and
 small
 what
 MAB
 R. G
 from
 F
 F
 AT
 stock
 comp
 draw
 in ret
 appli
 with
 furni
 &c.
 wool
 sheet
 H
 8s. 6d
 Son's
 also s

.....

BASKERVILLE

Designed by *John Baskerville*, 1757

.....

BODONI

Designed by *Giambattista Bodoni*, 1790s

.....

ADOBE

CASLON

Designed by *Carol Twombly*, 1990, based on pages
printed by *William Caslon*, 1734–70

.....

CENTAUR

Designed by *Bruce Rogers*, 1912–14.
The italic, by *Frederic Warde*, is based on the fifteenth-century
hand of *Ludovico degli Arrighi*.

.....

CENTURY EXPANDED

Designed by *Morris Fuller Benton*, 1900

.....

CLARENDON

Named for the **Clarendon Press**, Oxford,
who commissioned it in 1845

.....

HTF

DIDOT

Designed by *Jonathan Hoefler*, 1992, inspired by
the types of *François Ambroise Didot*, 1784

.....

FEDRA SANS

Designed by *Peter Bilak*, 2001, who was asked
to create a “de-Protestantized Univers”

.....

.....

FILOSOFIA

Designed by *Zuzana Licko*, 1996,
a revival of the types of *Bodoni*

.....

FRUTIGER

Designed by *Adrian Frutiger*, 1976

.....

FRANKLIN GOTHIC

Designed by *Morris Fuller Benton*, 1904

.....

FUTURA

Designed by *Paul Renner*, 1927, who sought an
“honest expression of technical processes.”

.....

GEORGIA

Designed by *Matthew Carter*, 1996,
for display on screen

.....

GILL SANS

Designed by *Eric Gill*, 1928.
It has been described as Britain's Helvetica.

.....

ADOBE

GARAMOND

Designed by *Robert Slimbach*, 1989,
based on pages printed by *Claude Garamond*
in the sixteenth century

.....

GOTHAM

Designed by *Tobias Frere-Jones*, 2000,
inspired by lettering found at
Port Authority Bus Terminal, New York City

.....

Typography is what language looks like.

Dedicated to GEORGE SADEK (1928–2007) and all my teachers.

SEP 30 2011

ELLEN LUPTON

thinking
with
type

A CRITICAL GUIDE
FOR DESIGNERS,
WRITERS, EDITORS,
& STUDENTS

SECOND, REVISED AND
EXPANDED EDITION



PRINCETON ARCHITECTURAL PRESS • NEW YORK

Published by
Princeton Architectural Press
37 East Seventh Street
New York, New York 10003

For a free catalog of books, call 1.800.722.6657.
Visit our web site at www.papress.com.

© 2004, 2010 Princeton Architectural Press

Princeton Architectural Press
All rights reserved
Printed and bound in China

14 13 12 11 5 4 3 Second, revised and
expanded edition

No part of this book may be used or reproduced in
any manner without written permission from the
publisher, except in the context of reviews.

Every reasonable attempt has been made to identify
owners of copyright. Errors or omissions will be
corrected in subsequent editions.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Lupton, Ellen.

Thinking with type : a critical guide for designers,
writers, editors, & students / Ellen Lupton. — 2nd
rev. and expanded ed.

p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 978-1-56898-969-3 (alk. paper)

1. Graphic design (Typography) 2. Type and
type-founding. I. Title.

Z246.L87 2010

686.2'2—dc22

2010005389

eISBN 978-1-61689-022-3

BOOK DESIGNER

Ellen Lupton

EDITOR

First edition: Mark Lamster

Second edition: Nicola Bednarek

COVER DESIGNERS

Jennifer Tobias and Ellen Lupton

DIVIDER PAGES

Paintings by Ellen Lupton

PHOTOGRAPHER

Dan Meyers

PRIMARY TYPEFACES

Scala Pro, designed by Martin Majoor

Thesis, designed by Luc(as) de Groot

SPECIAL THANKS TO

Nettie Aljian, Bree Anne Apperley, Sara Bader, Janet Behning,
Becca Casbon, Carina Cha, Tom Cho, Penny (Yuen Pik) Chu,
Carolyn Deuschle, Russell Fernandez, Pete Fitzpatrick,
Wendy Fuller, Jan Haux, Linda Lee, Laurie Manfra, John Myers,
Katharine Myers, Steve Royal, Dan Simon, Andrew Stepanian,
Jennifer Thompson, Paul Wagner, Joe Weston, and Deb Wood
of Princeton Architectural Press

—Kevin C. Lippert, *publisher*

This project was produced with editorial support from the
Center for Design Thinking, Maryland Institute College of Art.

DESIGN BRIEFS—essential texts on design.

Also available in this series:

D.I.Y. Design It Yourself, Ellen Lupton, 978-1-56898-552-7
Elements of Design, Gail Greet Hannah, 978-1-56898-329-5
Form+Code, Reas, McWilliams, & LUST, 978-1-56898-937-2
Geometry of Design, Kimberly Elam, 978-1-56898-249-6
Graphic Design Theory, Helen Armstrong, 978-1-56898-772-9
Grid Systems, Kimberly Elam, 978-1-56898-465-0
Indie Publishing, Ellen Lupton, 978-1-56898-760-6
Lettering & Type, Bruce Willen, Nolen Strals, 978-1-56898-765-1
Typographic Systems, Kimberly Elam, 978-1-56898-687-6
Visual Grammar, Christian Leborg, 978-1-56898-581-7
The Wayfinding Handbook, David Gibson, 978-1-56898-769-9

3 1223 09628 9393

CONTENTS

7 INTRODUCTION

9 ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

LETTER

- 10
- 14 Humanism and the Body
- 16 Enlightenment and Abstraction
- 22 Monster Fonts
- 26 Reform and Revolution
- 28 Type as Program
- 30 Type as Narrative
- 32 Back to Work
- 36 Anatomy
- 38 Size
- 42 Scale
- 46 Type Classification
- 48 Type Families
- 50 Superfamilies
- 52 Capitals and Small Capitals
- 54 Mixing Typefaces
- 56 Numerals
- 58 Punctuation
- 60 Ornaments
- 64 Lettering
- 68 Logotypes and Branding
- 72 Typefaces on Screen
- 74 Bitmap Typefaces
- 76 Typeface Design
- 78 Exercise: Modular Letterforms
- 80 Font Formats
- 82 Font Licensing

TEXT

- 84
- 88 Errors and Ownership
- 90 Spacing
- 92 Linearity
- 96 Birth of the User
- 102 Kerning
- 104 Tracking
- 106 Exercise: Space and Meaning
- 108 Line Spacing
- 112 Alignment
- 118 Exercise: Alignment
- 120 Vertical Text
- 124 Enlarged Capitals
- 126 Marking Paragraphs
- 130 Captions
- 132 Hierarchy
- 144 Exercise: Hierarchy
- 146 Exercise: Long Lists

GRID

- 148
- 152 Grid as Frame
- 160 Dividing Space
- 164 Grid as Program
- 170 Grid as Table
- 174 Return to Universals
- 176 Golden Section
- 178 Single-Column Grid
- 180 Multicolumn Grid
- 194 Modular Grid
- 202 Exercise: Modular Grid
- 204 Data Tables
- 206 Exercise: Data Tables

APPENDIX

- 208
- 210 Spaces and Punctuation
- 212 Editing
- 214 Editing Hard Copy
- 215 Editing Soft Copy
- 216 Proofreading
- 218 Free Advice

- 220 BIBLIOGRAPHY
- 222 INDEX

INTRODUCTION

Since the first edition of *Thinking with Type* appeared in 2004, this book has been widely adopted in design programs around the world. Whenever a young designer hands me a battered copy of *Thinking with Type* to sign at a lecture or event, I am warmed with joy from serif to stem. Those scuffed covers and dinged corners are evidence that typography is thriving in the hands and minds of the next generation.

I've put on some weight since 2004, and so has this book. For the new edition, I decided to let out the seams and give the content more room to breathe. If you—like most graphic designers—like to sweat the little stuff, you'll find a lot to love, honor, and worry about in the pages that follow. Finicky matters such as kerning, small capitals, non-lining numerals, punctuation, alignment, and baseline grids that were touched on briefly in the first edition are developed here in more detail, along with new topics that were previously omitted, such as how to style a drop capital, what you need to know about optical sizes, and **when to say "typeface" instead of "font"** at your next AIGA wine-and-carrot-stick party. This new book has more of everything: more fonts, more exercises, more examples, a more bodacious index, and best of all, more type crimes—more disgraceful "don'ts" to complement the dignified "do's."

Worried? See page 81

I was inspired to write the first edition of this book while searching for a textbook for my own type classes, which I have been teaching at Maryland Institute College of Art (MICA) since 1997. Some books on typography focus on the classical page; others are vast and encyclopedic, overflowing with facts and details. Some rely heavily on illustrations of their authors' own work, providing narrow views of a diverse practice, while others are chatty and dumbed down, presented in a condescending tone.

I sought a book that is serene and intelligible, a volume where design and text gently collaborate to enhance understanding. I sought a work that is small and compact, economical yet well constructed—a handbook designed for the hands. I sought a book that reflects the diversity of typographic life, past and present, exposing my students to history, theory, and ideas. Finally, I sought a book that would be relevant across the media of visual design, from the printed page to the glowing screen.

I found no alternative but to write the book myself.

Thinking with Type is assembled in three sections: LETTER, TEXT, and GRID, building from the basic atom of the letterform to the organization of words into coherent bodies and flexible systems. Each section opens with a narrative essay about the cultural and theoretical issues that fuel typographic design across a range of media. The demonstration pages that follow each essay show not just *how* typography is structured, but *why*, asserting the functional and cultural basis for design habits and conventions. Throughout the book, examples of design practice demonstrate the elasticity of the typographic system, whose rules can (nearly) all be broken.

The first section, LETTER, reveals how early typefaces referred to the body, emulating the work of the hand. The abstractions of neoclassicism bred the strange progeny of nineteenth-century commercial typography. In the twentieth century, avant-garde artists and designers explored the alphabet as a theoretical system. With the rise of digital design tools, typography revived its connections with the body.

The second section, TEXT, considers the massing of letters into larger bodies. Text is a field or texture whose grain, color, density, and silhouette can be endlessly adjusted. Technology has shaped the design of typographic space, from the concrete physicality of metal type to the flexibility—and constraints—offered by digital media. Text has evolved from a closed, stable body to a fluid and open ecology.

The third section, GRID, looks at spatial organization. In the early twentieth century, Dada and Futurist artists attacked the rectilinear constraints of metal type and exposed the mechanical grid of letterpress. Swiss designers in the 1940s and 1950s created design's first total methodology by rationalizing the grid. Their work, which introduced programmatic thinking to a field governed by taste and convention, remains profoundly relevant to the systematic thinking required when designing for multimedia.

This book is about thinking *with* typography—in the end, the emphasis falls on *with*. Typography is a tool for doing things *with*: shaping content, giving language a physical body, enabling the social flow of messages. Typography is an ongoing tradition that connects you *with* other designers, past and future. Type is *with* you everywhere you go—the street, the mall, the web, your apartment. This book aims to speak to, and *with*, all the readers and writers, designers and producers, teachers and students, whose work engages the ordered yet unpredictable life of the visible word.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

As a designer, writer, and visual thinker, I am indebted to my teachers at the Cooper Union, where I studied art and design from 1981 to 1985. Back then, the design world was neatly divided between a Swiss-inflected modernism and an idea-based approach rooted in American advertising and illustration. My teachers, including George Sadek, William Bevington, and James Craig, staked out a place between those worlds, allowing the modernist fascination with abstract systems to collide with the strange, the poetic, and the popular.

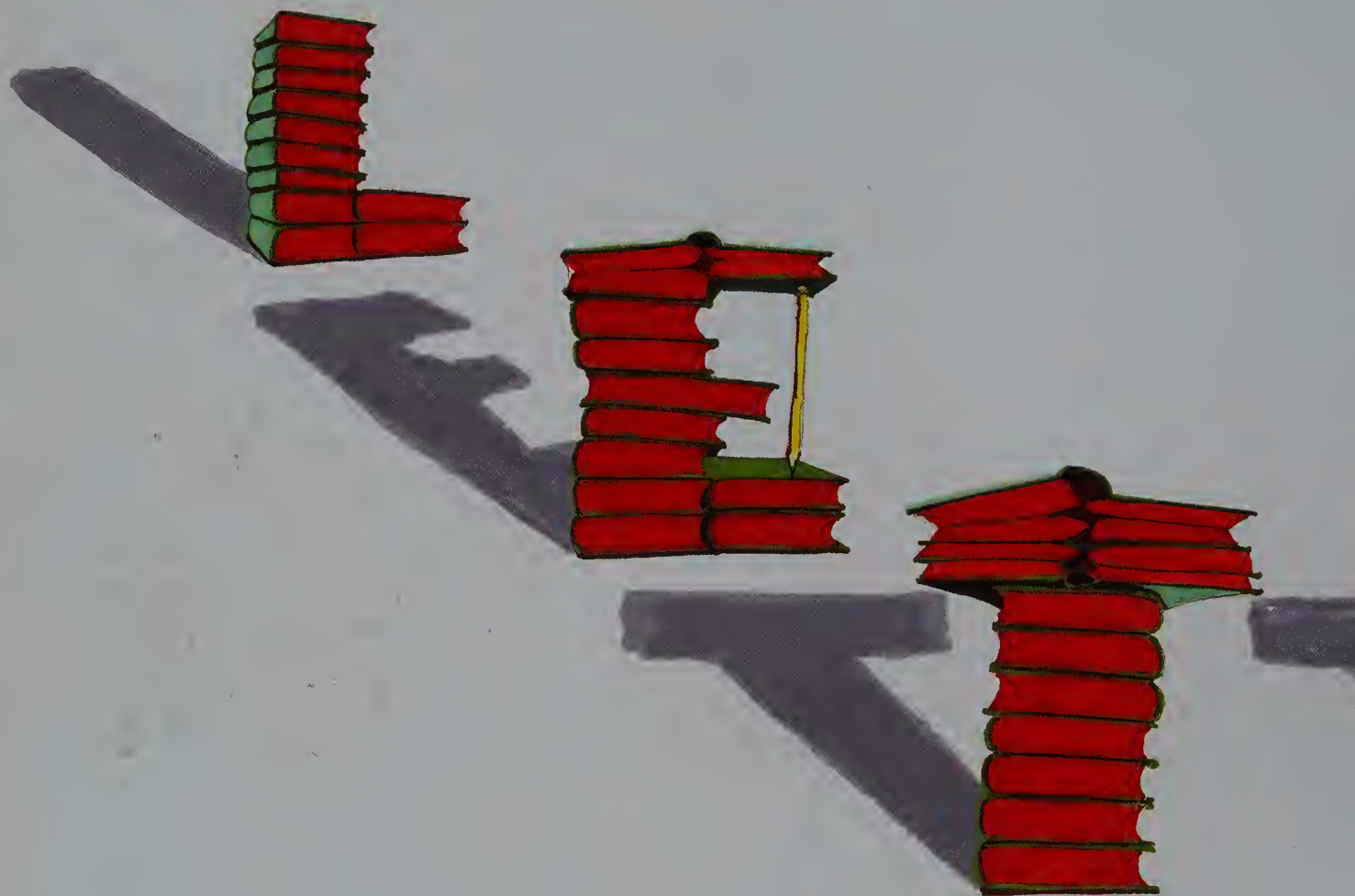
The title of this book, *Thinking with Type*, is an homage to James Craig's primer *Designing with Type*, the utilitarian classic that was our textbook at the Cooper Union. If that book was a handyman's manual to basic typography, this one is a naturalist's field guide, approaching type as a phenomenon that is more evolutionary than mechanical. What I really learned from my teachers was not rules and facts but how to think: how to use visual and verbal language to develop ideas. For me, discovering typography was like finding the bridge that connects art and language.

To write my own book for the twenty-first century, I decided to educate myself again. In 2003 I enrolled in the Doctorate in Communications Design program at the University of Baltimore and completed my degree in 2008. There I worked with Stuart Moulthrop and Nancy Kaplan, world-class scholars, critics, and designers of networked media and digital interfaces. Their influence is seen throughout this book.

My colleagues at MICA have built a distinctive design culture at the school; special thanks go to Ray Allen, Fred Lazarus, Guna Nadarajan, Brockett Horne, Jennifer Cole Phillips, and all my students.

The editor of *Thinking with Type*'s first edition, Mark Lamster, remains one of my most respected colleagues. The editor of the second edition, Nicola Bednarek, helped me balance and refine the expanded content. I thank Kevin Lippert, publisher at Princeton Architectural Press, for many, many years of support. Numerous designers and scholars helped me along the way, including Peter Bilak, Matteo Bologna, Vivian Folkenflik, Jonathan Hoefler, Eric Karnes, Elke Gasselseder, Hans Lijklema, William Noel, and Jeffrey Zeldman, as well as all the other designers who shared their work.

I learn something every day from my children, Jay and Ruby, and from my parents, my twin sister, and the amazing Miller family. My friends—Jennifer Tobias, Edward Bottone, Claudia Matzko, and Joy Hayes—sustain my life. My husband, Abbott Miller, is the greatest designer I know, and I am proud to include his work in this volume.

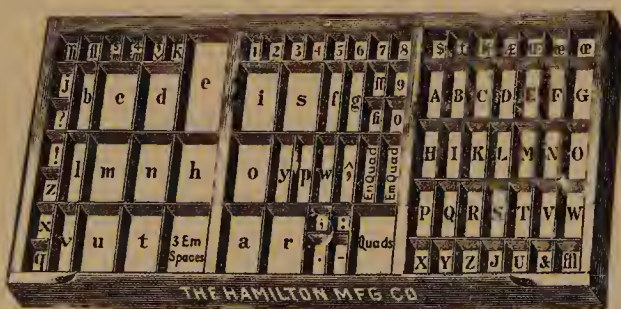




{LETTER}



Upper Case.

Lower Case.
A PAIR OF CASES.

California Job Case.

FIG. 2.—Showing Lay of Cases.

TYPE, SPACES, AND LEADS
Diagram, 1917. Author:
Frank S. Henry. In a
letterpress printing shop,
gridded cases hold fonts of type
and spacing material. Capital
letters are stored in a drawer
above the minuscule letters.
Hence the terms "uppercase"
and "lowercase" are derived
from the physical space of the
print shop.

LETTER

THIS IS NOT A BOOK ABOUT FONTS. It is a book about how to use them.

Typefaces are an essential resource employed by graphic designers, just as glass, stone, steel, and other materials are employed by architects. Graphic designers sometimes create their own typefaces and custom lettering. More commonly, however, they tap the vast library of existing typefaces, choosing and combining them in response to a particular audience or situation. To do this with wit and wisdom requires knowledge of how—and why—letterforms have evolved.

Words originated as gestures of the body. The first typefaces were directly modeled on the forms of calligraphy. Typefaces, however, are not bodily gestures—they are manufactured images designed for infinite repetition. The history of typography reflects a continual tension between the hand and the machine, the organic and the geometric, the human body and the abstract system. These tensions, which marked the birth of printed letters over five hundred years ago, continue to energize typography today.

Movable type, invented by Johannes Gutenberg in Germany in the early fifteenth century, revolutionized writing in the West. Whereas scribes had previously manufactured books and documents by hand, printing with type allowed for mass production: large quantities of letters could be cast from a mold and assembled into “forms.” After the pages were proofed, corrected, and printed, the letters were put away in gridded cases for reuse.

Movable type had been employed earlier in China but had proven less useful there. Whereas the Chinese writing system contains tens of thousands of distinct characters, the Latin alphabet translates the sounds of speech into a small set of marks, making it well-suited to mechanization. Gutenberg’s famous Bible took the handmade manuscript as its model. Emulating the dense, dark handwriting known as “blackletter,” he reproduced its erratic texture by creating variations of each letter as well as numerous ligatures (characters that combine two or more letters into a single form).

This chapter extends and revises “Laws of the Letter,” Ellen Lupton and J. Abbott Miller, *Design Writing Research: Writing on Graphic Design* (New York: Kiosk, 1996; London: Phaidon, 1999), 53–61.

JOHANNES
GUTENBERG
Printed text,
1456.

rum: quæ ip
diger. filia
nrae illis d
tantū bonū
nostros. rī
bandia rōz
nostra mūt.
et habitāre
Assensio; si
maribz. Et
mus vulne
filij iacob. si
dñs. ingress
intefedilq;
sichem parit
de domo su
egressis. irru
iacob. et dep
onem supri: oues rōz et armenta. i
asmos. cunctaq; vastantes que in d
nibz et i agris exasperuulos q; rō
et uxores duxerūt captiuas. Quibz

NICOLAS JENSON

learned to print in Mainz, the German birthplace of typography, before establishing his own printing press in Venice around 1465. His letters have strong vertical stems, and the transition from thick to thin emulates the path of a broad-nibbed pen.

illos appellatur mariti
euir dicitur frater mar
ratriæ appellantur quæ
mitini fratrum & ma
atrueles matrum fratr
ōsobrini ex duabus ed
ta sunt in antiquis au

the iiii wekis, and how l
lord, yet the chirche mak
that is to wete, of that he
and of that he cometh to
in thoffyce of the chircl
tynges that ben in this
one partie, & that othe
cause of the comynge of
ben of joye and gladne

GOLDEN TYPE

was created by the English design reformer William Morris in 1890. He sought to recapture the dark and solemn density of Jenson's pages.

CENTAUR, designed from 1912 to 1914 by Bruce Rogers, is a revival of Jenson's type that emphasizes its ribbonlike stroke.

Lorem ipsum dolor si
consectetuer adipiscing el
Integer pharetra, nisl u
luctus ullamcorper, au
tortor egestas ante, vel
pede urna ac neque. M
ac mi eu purus tincidu

Lorem ipsum dolor si
consectetuer adipiscing
Integer pharetra, nisl
luctus ullamcorper, au
tortor egestas ante, vel
pharetra pede urna ac
neque. Mauris ac mi e

ADOBE JENSON was designed in 1995 by Robert Slimbach, who reconceives historical typefaces for digital use. Adobe Jenson is less mannered and decorative than Centaur.

RUIT was designed in the 1990s by the Dutch typographer, teacher, and theorist Gerrit Noordzij. This digitally constructed font captures the dynamic, three-dimensional quality of

vanum laboraverunt
si Dominus custodie
istra vigilavit qui cos
num est vobis ante h
rgere postquam sede
i manducatis panem
m dederit dilectis sui
ALMI IVXTA LXX

Lorem ipsum dolor s
consectetuer adipisci
Integer pharetra, nisl
ullamcorper, augue t
ante, vel pharetra pec
neque. Mauris ac mi
tincidunt faucibus. P
dignissim lectus. Nun

typefaces as well as their gothic (rather than humanist) origins. As Noordzij explains, Jenson “adapted the German letters to Italian fashion (somewhat rounder, somewhat lighter), and thus created roman type.”

SCALA was introduced in 1991 by the Dutch typographer Martin Majoor. Although this thoroughly contemporary typeface has geometric serifs and rational, almost modular forms, it reflects the calligraphic origins of type, as seen in letters such as a.

HUMANISM AND THE BODY

In fifteenth-century Italy, humanist writers and scholars rejected gothic scripts in favor of the *lettera antica*, a classical mode of handwriting with wider, more open forms. The preference for *lettera antica* was part of the Renaissance (rebirth) of classical art and literature. Nicolas Jenson, a Frenchman who had learned to print in Germany, established an influential printing firm in Venice around 1469. His typefaces merged the gothic traditions he had known in France and Germany with the Italian taste for rounder, lighter forms. They are considered among the first—and finest—roman typefaces.

Many typefaces we use today, including Garamond, Bembo, Palatino, and Jenson, are named for printers who worked in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. These typefaces are generally known as “humanist.” Contemporary revivals of historical typefaces are designed to conform with modern technologies and current demands for sharpness and uniformity. Each revival responds to—or reacts against—the production methods, printing styles, and artistic habits of its own time. Some revivals are based on metal types, punches (steel prototypes), or drawings that still exist; most rely solely on printed specimens.

Italic letters, also introduced in fifteenth-century Italy, were modeled on a more casual style of handwriting. While the upright humanist scripts appeared in expensively produced books, the cursive form thrived in the cheaper writing shops, where it could be written more rapidly than the carefully formed *lettera antica*. Aldus Manutius, a Venetian printer, publisher, and scholar, used italic typefaces in his internationally distributed series of small, inexpensive printed books. For calligraphers, the italic form was economical because it saved time, while in printing, the cursive form saved space. Aldus Manutius often paired cursive letters with roman capitals; the two styles still were considered fundamentally distinct.

In the sixteenth century, printers began integrating roman and italic forms into type families with matching weights and x-heights (the height of the main body of the lowercase letter). Today, the italic style in most fonts is not simply a slanted version of the roman; it incorporates the curves, angles, and narrower proportions associated with cursive forms.

Sed ne forte tuo carea
 Hic timor est ipsis
Non adeo leuiter nost
 Ut meus oblito pul
Illic phylacides incu
 Non potuit cæcis im
Sed cupidus falsis atti
 Thessalis antiquam
Illic quicquid ero ser
 Traicit & fati litto
Illic formosæ uenian
 Quas dedit argui
 Quarum nulla tua fu
 Grator, & tellus h
 Quamuis te longæ rei
 Cara tamen lachry

FRANCESCO
 GRIFFO
 designed roman
 and italic types
 for Aldus
 Manutius. The
 roman and italic
 were conceived as
 separate typefaces.

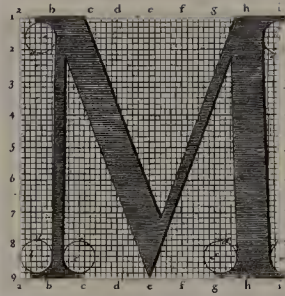
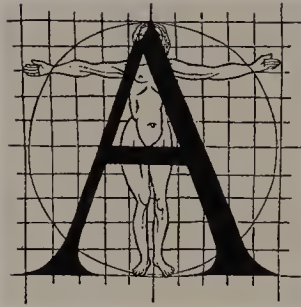
JEAN JANNON created
 roman and italic types for
 the Imprimerie Royale,
 Paris, 1642, that are
 coordinated into a larger
 type family.

comme i'ay des-ia remarqué, *S. Augu-
 stin demande aux Donatistes en vne sem-
 blable occurrence : *Quoy donc ? lors que*
nous lisons , oublions nous comment nous auons
accoustumé de parler ? l'escriture du grand Dieu

* Aug. lib. 33.
 contra Faust. c.
 7. Quid er-
 go? cum legi-
 mus , obliui-
 scimur quem-
 admodum lo-
 quifoleamus?
 An scriptura
 Deialiter no-

On the complex origins
 of roman type, see Gerrit
 Noordzij, *Letterletter*
 (Vancouver: Hartley and
 Marks, 2000).

GEOFROY TORY argued that letters should reflect the ideal human body. Regarding the letter A, he wrote: "the cross-stroke covers the man's organ of generation, to signify that Modesty and Chastity are required, before all else, in those who seek acquaintance with well-shaped letters."



LOUIS SIMONNEAU designed model letterforms for the printing press of Louis XIV. Instructed by a royal committee, Simonneau designed his letters on a finely meshed grid. A royal typeface (romain du roi) was then created by Philippe Grandjean, based on Simonneau's engravings.

WILLIAM CASLON produced typefaces in eighteenth-century England with crisp, upright characters that appear, as Robert Bringhurst has written, "more modelled and less written than Renaissance forms."

By WILLIAM CASLON, Letter-Founder, in Chiswick

ABCD
ABCDE
ABCDEFG

DOUBLE PICA ROMAN.

Quousque tandem abutere, Catilina, patientia nostra? quamdiu nos etiam furor iste tuus eludet? quem ad finem sese effrenata jactabit?

GREAT PRIMER ROMAN.

Quousque tandem abutere, Catilina, pa-

Double Pica Italic.

Quousque tandem abutere, Catilina, patientia nostra? quamdiu nos etiam furor iste tuus eludet? quem ad finem sese effrenata jactabit?

Great Primer Italic.

Quousque tandem abutere, Catilina, pa-

S P E C I M E N

By JOHN BASKERVILLE of Birmingham.

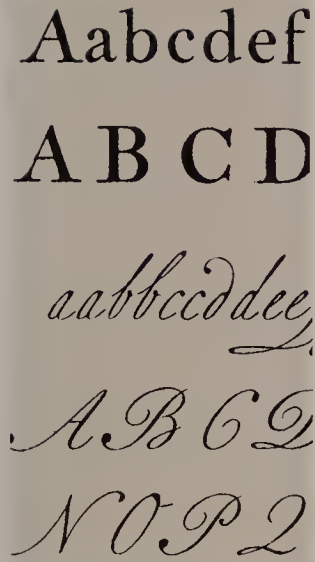
I Am indebted to you for two Letters dated from Corcyra. if to mean well to the Interest of my Country and to approve that meaning

JOHN BASKERVILLE was a printer working in England in the 1750s and 1760s. He aimed to surpass Caslon by creating sharply detailed letters with more vivid contrast between thick and thin elements. Whereas Caslon's letters were widely used during his own time, Baskerville's work was denounced by many of his contemporaries as amateur and extremist.

AUSTERLITI.
RELATAM A GALL
DUCE

GIAMBATTISTA BODONI created letters at the close of the eighteenth century that exhibit abrupt, unmodulated contrast between thick and thin elements, and razor-thin serifs unsupported by curved brackets. Similar typefaces were designed in the same period by François-Ambroise Didot (1784) in France and Justus Erich Walbaum (1800) in Germany.

ENLIGHTENMENT AND ABSTRACTION



GEORGE BICKHAM, 1743.
*Samples of "Roman Print"
and "Italian Hand."*

This accusation was reported to Baskerville in a letter from his admirer Benjamin Franklin. For the full letter, see F. E. Pardoe, *John Baskerville of Birmingham: Letter-Founder and Printer* (London: Frederick Muller Limited, 1975), 68. See also Robert Bringhurst, *The Elements of Typographic Style* (Vancouver: Hartley and Marks, 1992, 1997).

Renaissance artists sought standards of proportion in the idealized human body. The French designer and typographer Geoffroy Tory published a series of diagrams in 1529 that linked the anatomy of letters to the anatomy of man. A new approach—distanced from the body—would unfold in the age of scientific and philosophical Enlightenment.

A committee appointed by Louis XIV in France in 1693 set out to construct roman letters against a finely meshed grid. Whereas Tory's diagrams were produced as woodcuts, the gridded depictions of the *romain du roi* (king's alphabet) were engraved, made by incising a copper plate with a tool called a graver. The lead typefaces derived from these large-scale diagrams reflect the linear character of engraving as well as the scientific attitude of the king's committee.

Engraved letters—whose fluid lines are unconstrained by the letterpress's mechanical grid—offered an apt medium for formal lettering. Engraved reproductions of penmanship disseminated the work of the great eighteenth-century writing masters. Books such as George Bickham's *The Universal Penman* (1743) featured roman letters—each engraved as a unique character—as well as lavishly curved scripts.

Eighteenth-century typography was influenced by new styles of handwriting and their engraved reproductions. Printers such as William Caslon in the 1720s and John Baskerville in the 1750s abandoned the rigid nib of humanism for the flexible steel pen and the pointed quill, writing instruments that rendered a fluid, swelling path. Baskerville, himself a master calligrapher, would have admired the thinly sculpted lines that appeared in the engraved writing books. He created typefaces of such sharpness and contrast that contemporaries accused him of "blinding all the Readers in the Nation; for the strokes of your letters, being too thin and narrow, hurt the Eye." To heighten the startling precision of his pages, Baskerville made his own inks and hot-pressed his pages after printing.

At the turn of the nineteenth century, Giambattista Bodoni in Italy and Firmin Didot in France carried Baskerville's severe vocabulary to new extremes. Their typefaces—which have a wholly vertical axis, sharp contrast between thick and thin, and crisp, waferlike serifs—were the gateway to an explosive vision of typography unhinged from calligraphy.

The *romain du roi* was designed not by a typographer but by a government committee consisting of two priests, an accountant, and an engineer. —ROBERT BRINGHURST, 1992

P. VIRGILII MARONIS
BUCOLICA

ECLOGA I. cui nomen TITYRUS.

MELIBŒUS, TITYRUS.

- T**ITYRE, tu patulæ recubans sub tegmine fagi
 Silvestrem tenui Musam meditaris avena:
 Nos patriæ fines, et dulcia linquimus arva;
 Nos patriam fugimus: tu, Tityre, lentus in umbra
 5 Formosam resonare doces Amaryllida filvas.
T. O Melibœe, Deus nobis hæc otia fecit:
 Namque erit ille mihi semper Deus: illius aram
 Sæpe tener nostris ab ovilibus imbuet agnus.
 Ille meas errare boves, ut cernis, et ipsum
 10 Ludere, quæ vellem, calamo permittit agresti.
M. Non equidem invideo; miror magis: undique totis
 Usque adeo turbatur agris. en ipse capellas
 Protenus æger ago: hanc etiam vix, Tityre, duco:
 Hic inter densas corylos modo namque gemellos,
 15 Spem gregis, ah! filice in nuda connixa reliquit.
 Sæpe malum hoc nobis, si mens non læva fuisset,
 De cœlo tactas memini prædicere quercus:
 Sæpe sinistra cava prædixit ab ilice cornix.
 Sed tamen, iste Deus qui sit, da, Tityre, nobis.
 20 *T.* Urbem, quam dicunt Romam, Melibœe, putavi
 Stultus ego huic nostræ similem, quo sæpe solemus
 Pastores ovium teneros depellere foetus.
 Sic canibus catulos similes, sic matribus hædos
 A Noram;

LA THÉBAÏDE, OU LES FRÈRES ENNEMIS,

TRAGÉDIE.

ACTE PREMIER.

SCENE I.

JOCASTE, OLYMPE.

JOCASTE.

Ils sont sortis, Olympe? Ah! mortelles douleurs!
Qu'un moment de repos me va coûter de pleurs!
Mes yeux depuis six mois étoient ouverts aux larmes,
Et le sommeil les ferme en de telles alarmes!
Puisse plutôt la mort les fermer pour jamais,
Et m'empêcher de voir le plus noir des forfaits!
Mais en sont-ils aux mains?

VIRGIL (LEFT) Book page, 1757. Printed by John Baskerville. The typefaces created by Baskerville in the eighteenth century were remarkable—even shocking—in their day for their sharp, upright forms and stark contrast between thick and thin elements. In addition to a roman text face, this page utilizes italic capitals, large-scale capitals (generously letterspaced), small capitals (scaled to coordinate with lowercase text), and non-lining or old-style numerals (designed with ascenders, descenders, and a small body height to work with lowercase characters).

RACINE (RIGHT) Book page, 1801. Printed by Firmin Didot. The typefaces cut by the Didot family in France were even more abstract and severe than those of Baskerville, with slablike, unbracketed serifs and a stark contrast from thick to thin. Nineteenth-century printers and typographers called these glittering typefaces “modern.”

Both pages reproduced from William Dana Orcutt, *In Quest of the Perfect Book* (New York: Little, Brown and Company, 1926); margins are not accurate.

440 *Plan for the Improvement of the Art of Paper War.*
whilst a passionate man, engaged in a warm controversy
would thunder vengeance in

French Canon

It follows of course, that writers of great irascibility should
be charged higher for a work of the same length, than most
authors; on account of the extraordinary space their per-
formances must necessarily occupy; for these gigantic, wrath-
ful types, like ranters on the stage, must have sufficient
elbow-room.

For example: Suppose a newspaper quarrel to happen be-
tween * M and L. M begins the attack pretty smartly in

Long Primer.

L replies in

Pica Roman.

M advances to

Great Primer.

L retorts in

Double Pica.

And so the contest swells to

Rascals Villains

* Left some ill-disposed person should misapply these initials,
I think proper to declare, that M signifies Merchant
and L Lawyer.

Gow

Cow- ard,

five line Pica ; which, indeed, is as far as the art of printing, or a modern quarrel can well go. A philosophical reason might be given to prove that large letters will more forcibly affect the optic nerve than those of a smaller size, and are therefore naturally expressive of energy and vigour. But I leave this discussion for the amusement of the gentlemen lately elected into our philosophical society. It is sufficient for me, if my system should be found to be justified by experience and fact, to which I appeal.

I recollect a case in point. Some few years before the war, the people of a western county, known by the name of Paxton, assembled, on account of some discontent, in great numbers, and came down with hostile intentions against the office of government, and with a particular view to some leading men in the city. Sir John St. Clair, who assumed military command for defence of the city, met one of the obnoxious persons in the street, and told him that he had seen the manifesto of the insurgents, and that his name was particularised in the letters as long as his fingers. The gentleman immediately packed up his most valuable effects, and sent them with his family into Jersey for security. Had Sir John only said that he had seen his name in the manifesto, it is probable that he would not have been so seriously alarmed : but the unusual size of the letters was to him a plain indication, that the insurgents were determined to carry their revenge to a proportionable extremity.

I could confirm my system by innumerable instances in fact and practice. The title-page of every book is a proof in point. It announces the subject treated of, in conspicuous characters ; as if the author stood at the door of his edifice, calling

H

PLAN FOR THE IMPROVEMENT OF THE ART OF PAPER WAR Satirical essay by Francis Hopkinson, *The American Museum*, Volume 1 (1787). Courtesy of the Boston Public Library. This eighteenth-century essay is an early example of expressive typography. The author, poking fun at the emerging news media, suggests a "paper war" between a lawyer and a merchant. As the two men toss attacks at each other, the type gets progressively bigger. The terms Long Primer, Pica Roman, Great Primer, Double Pica, and Five Line Pica were used at the time to identify type sizes. The f symbol is an s. Hopkinson was no stranger to design. He created the stars and stripes motif of the American flag.

1825;

At 10 o'Clock in the Morning:

A QUANTITY OF OL
ORDAG

Savile & Co

ing the rem
ck of the Sch

[J. Soulb

FAT FACE is the name given to the inflated, hyperbold type style introduced in the early nineteenth century. These faces exaggerated the polarization of letters into thick and thin components seen in the typographic forms of Bodoni and Didot.

RIDE

EXTRA CONDENSED typefaces are designed to fit in narrow spaces. Nineteenth-century advertisements often combined fonts of varying style and proportion on a single page. These bombastic mixtures were typically aligned, however, in static, centered compositions.

GU
ha
RIE

EGYPTIAN, or slab, typefaces transformed the serif from a refined detail to a load-bearing slab. As an independent architectural component, the slab serif asserts its own weight and mass. Introduced in 1806, this style was quickly denounced by purists as "a typographical monstrosity."

GOthic is the nineteenth-century term for letters with no serifs. Gothic letters command attention with their massive frontality. Although sans-serif letters were later associated with rationality and neutrality, they lent emotional impact to early advertising.

IARE
nune
MEN

My person was hideous, my stature gigantic. What did this mean? Who was I? What was I?...
Accursed creator! Why did you create a monster so hideous that even you turned away from
me in disgust? — MARY SHELLEY, *Frankenstein*, 1831

MONSTER FONTS

Although Bodoni and Didot fueled their designs with the calligraphic practices of their time, they created forms that collided with typographic tradition and unleashed a strange new world, where the structural attributes of the letter—serif and stem, thick and thin strokes, vertical and horizontal stress—would be subject to bizarre experiments. In search of a beauty both rational and sublime, Bodoni and Didot had created a monster: an abstract and dehumanized approach to the design of letters.

With the rise of industrialization and mass consumption in the nineteenth century came the explosion of advertising, a new form of communication demanding new kinds of typography. Type designers created big, bold faces by embellishing and engorging the body parts of classical letters. Fonts of astonishing height, width, and depth appeared—expanded, contracted, shadowed, inlined, fattened, faceted, and floriated. Serifs abandoned their role as finishing details to become independent architectural structures, and the vertical stress of traditional letters canted in new directions.



Type historian Rob Roy Kelly studied the mechanized design strategies that served to generate a spectacular variety of display letters in the nineteenth century. This diagram shows how the basic square serif form—called Egyptian or slab—was cut, pinched, pulled, and curled to spawn new species of ornament. Serifs were transformed from calligraphic end-strokes into independent geometric elements that could be freely adjusted.

Lead, the material for casting metal type, is too soft to hold its shape at large sizes under the pressure of the printing press. In contrast, type cut from wood can be printed at gigantic scales. The introduction of the combined pantograph and router in 1834 revolutionized wood-type manufacture. The pantograph is a tracing device that, when linked to a router for carving, allows a parent drawing to spawn variants with different proportions, weights, and decorative excrescences.

This mechanized design approach treated the alphabet as a flexible system divorced from calligraphy. The search for archetypal, perfectly proportioned letterforms gave way to a new view of typography as an elastic system of formal features (weight, stress; stem, crossbars, serifs, angles, curves, ascenders, descenders). The relationships among letters in a typeface became more important than the identity of individual characters.

For extensive analysis and examples of decorated types, see Rob Roy Kelly, *American Wood Type: 1828–1900, Notes on the Evolution of Decorated and Large Letters* (New York: Da Capo Press, 1969). See also Ruari McLean, “An Examination of Egyptians,” in *Texts on Type: Critical Writings on Typography*, ed. Steven Heller and Philip B. Meggs (New York: Allworth Press, 2001), 70–76.



DURYEAS' IMPORTED CORNSTARCH (LEFT)
Lithographic trade card, 1878. The rise of advertising in the nineteenth century stimulated demand for large-scale letters that could command attention in urban space. Here, a man is shown posting a bill in flagrant disregard for the law, while a police officer approaches from around the corner.

FULL MOON (RIGHT)
Letterpress poster, 1875. A dozen different fonts are used in this poster for a steamship cruise. A size and style of typeface has been chosen for each line to maximize the scale of the letters in the space allotted. Although the typefaces are exotic, the centered layout is as static and conventional as a tombstone.

Printing, having found in the book a refuge in which to lead an autonomous existence, is pitilessly dragged out into the street by advertisements.... Locust swarms of print, which already eclipse the sun of what is taken for intellect in city dwellers, will grow thicker with each succeeding year. — **WALTER BENJAMIN, 1925**

FULL MOON.

ST. MICHAEL'S TEMPERANCE BAND !

Prof. V. Yeager, Leader, will give a

GRAND MOONLIGHT

EXCURSION

On the Steamer

BELLE !

To Osbrook and Watch Hill,
On Saturday Evening, July 17th,

Leaving Wharf at 7½ o'clock. Returning to Westerly
at 10½ o'clock. Kenneth will be at Osbrook.

TICKETS, - FORTY CENTS.

G. B. & J. H. Utter, Steam Printers, Westerly, R. I.

THEO VAN DOESBURG, founder and chief promoter of the Dutch De Stijl movement, designed this alphabet with perpendicular elements in 1919. Applied here to the letterhead of the Union of Revolutionary Socialists, the hand-drawn characters vary in width, allowing them to fill out the overall rectangle. The De Stijl movement called for the reduction of painting, architecture, objects, and letters to elemental units.

BOND VAN
REVOLUTIONNAIR-
SOCIALISTISCHE
INTELLECTUEELEN

DE STIJL

VILMOS HUSZÁR designed this logo for the magazine De Stijl in 1917. Whereas van Doesburg's characters are unbroken, Huszár's letters consist of pixel-like modules.

abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
a d d

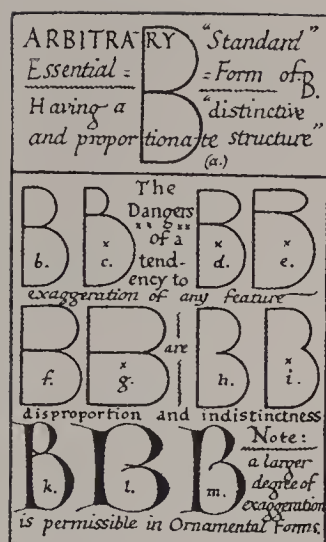
HERBERT BAYER created this typeface design, called universal, at the Bauhaus in 1925. Consisting only of lowercase letters, it is built from straight lines and circles.

FETTE FUTURA

GOETH
STOFF

PAUL RENNER designed Futura in Germany in 1927. Although it is strongly geometric, with perfectly round Os, Futura is a practical, subtly designed typeface that remains widely used today.

REFORM AND REVOLUTION



EDWARD JOHNSTON based this 1906 diagram of “essential” characters on ancient Roman inscriptions. While deriding commercial lettering, Johnston accepted the embellishment of medieval-inspired forms.

On Futura, see Christopher Burke, *Paul Renner: The Art of Typography* (New York: Princeton Architectural Press, 1998). On the experimental typefaces of the 1920s and 1930s, see Robin Kinross, *Unjustified Texts: Perspectives on Typography* (London: Hyphen Press, 2002), 233–45.

Some designers viewed the distortion of the alphabet as gross and immoral, tied to a destructive and inhumane industrial system. Writing in 1906, Edward Johnston revived the search for an essential, standard alphabet and warned against the “dangers” of exaggeration. Johnston, inspired by the nineteenth-century Arts and Crafts movement, looked back to the Renaissance and Middle Ages for pure, uncorrupted letterforms.

Although reformers like Johnston remained romantically attached to history, they redefined the designer as an intellectual distanced from the commercial mainstream. The modern design reformer was a critic of society, striving to create objects and images that would challenge and revise dominant habits and practices.

The avant-garde artists of the early twentieth century rejected historical forms but adopted the model of the critical outsider. Members of the De Stijl group in the Netherlands reduced the alphabet to perpendicular elements. At the Bauhaus, Herbert Bayer and Josef Albers constructed letters from basic geometric forms—the circle, square, and triangle—which they viewed as elements of a universal language of vision.

Such experiments approached the alphabet as a system of abstract relationships. Like the popular printers of the nineteenth century, avant-garde designers rejected the quest for essential letters grounded in the human hand and body, but they offered austere, theoretical alternatives in place of the solicitous novelty of mainstream advertising.

Assembled like machines from modular components, these experimental designs emulated factory production. Yet most were produced by hand rather than as mechanical typefaces (although many are now available digitally). Futura, completed by Paul Renner in 1927, embodied the obsessions of the avant garde in a multipurpose, commercially available typeface. Although Renner disdained the active movement of calligraphy in favor of forms that are “calming” and abstract, he tempered the geometry of Futura with subtle variations in stroke, curve, and proportion. Renner designed Futura in numerous weights, viewing his type family as a painterly tool for constructing a page in shades of gray.

The calming, abstract forms of those new typefaces that dispense with handwritten movement offer the typographer new shapes of tonal value that are very purely attuned. These types can be used in light, semi-bold, or in saturated black forms. — PAUL RENNER, 1931

new alphabet

une
possibilité
pour
l'he
nou
développement

ren
nouveau
pour
de
nouveau
ont été

une
possibilité
pour
le
développement
nouveau

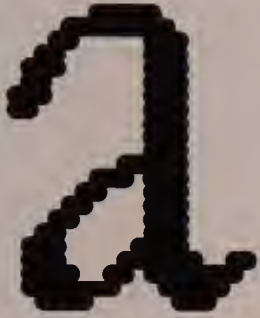
une
possibilité
pour
de
nou
ent

in
Introduction
par
J
programmé
typographie

WIM CROUWEL published his designs for a “new alphabet,” consisting of no diagonals or curves, in 1967. The Foundry (London) began releasing digital editions of Crouwel’s typefaces in 1997.

TYPE AS PROGRAM

Responding in 1967 to the rise of electronic communication, the Dutch designer Wim Crouwel published designs for a “new alphabet” constructed from straight lines. Rejecting centuries of typographic convention, he designed his letters for optimal display on a video screen (CRT), where curves and angles are rendered with horizontal scan lines. In a brochure promoting his new alphabet, subtitled “An Introduction for a Programmed Typography,” he proposed a design methodology in which decisions are rule-based and systematic.



WIM CROUWEL presented this “scanned” version of a Garamond a in contrast with his own new alphabet, whose forms accept the gridded structure of the screen. See Wim Crouwel, *New Alphabet* (Amsterdam: *Total Design*, 1967).

ZUZANA LICKO created coarse-resolution fonts for desktop screens and printers in 1985. These fonts have since been integrated into *Emigre*’s extensive Lo-Res font family, designed for print and digital media.

See Rudy VanderLans and Zuzana Licko, *Emigre: Graphic Design into the Digital Realm* (New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1993) and *Emigre No. 70: The Look Back Issue, Selections from Emigre Magazine, 1984–2009* (Berkeley: Gingko Press, 2009).



In the mid-1980s, personal computers and low-resolution printers put the tools of typography in the hands of a broader public. In 1985 Zuzana Licko began designing typefaces that exploited the rough grain of early desktop systems. While other digital fonts imposed the coarse grid of screen displays and dot-matrix printers onto traditional typographic forms, Licko embraced the language of digital equipment. She and her husband, Rudy VanderLans, cofounders of *Emigre* Fonts and *Emigre* magazine, called themselves the “new primitives,” pioneers of a technological dawn.



By the early 1990s, with the introduction of high-resolution laser printers and outline font technologies such as PostScript, type designers were less constrained by low-resolution outputs. While various signage systems and digital output devices still rely on bitmap fonts today, it is the fascination with programmed, geometric structures that has enabled bitmap forms to continue evolving as a visual ethos in print and digital media.

Living with computers gives funny ideas. — WIM CROUWEL, 1967

CURATOR: JOSEPH WESNER
Linda Ferguson

Steve Handschu

James Hay

Matthew Holland

Gary Laatsch

Brian Liljeblad

Dora Natella

Matthew Schellenberg

Richard String

Michell Thomas

Robert Wilhelm

ED FELLA produced a body of experimental typography that strongly influenced typeface design in the 1990s. His posters for the Detroit Focus Gallery feature damaged and defective forms, drawn by hand or culled from third-generation photocopies or from sheets of transfer lettering. Collection of the Cooper-Hewitt, National Design Museum.

Opening Reception: Friday June 8, 5:30 - 8:30 pm

Detroit Focus Gallery
743 Beaubien, Third Floor

DETROIT, MICHIGAN 48226

WEDNESDAY - SATURDAY
Hours: Noon to 6 pm

ALSO IN THE AREA: THE MARKET PRESENTS Peter Gilleran - Gordon Orear Opening 5 - 7:30 pm. Friday, June 8.

TYPE AS NARRATIVE

In the early 1990s, as digital design tools began supporting the seamless reproduction and integration of media, many designers grew dissatisfied with clean, unsullied surfaces, seeking instead to plunge the letter into the harsh and caustic world of physical processes. Letters, which for centuries had sought perfection in ever more exact technologies, became scratched, bent, bruised, and polluted.

Template Gothic: flawed technology

Barry Deck's typeface Template Gothic, designed in 1990, is based on letters drawn with a plastic stencil. The typeface thus refers to a process that is at once mechanical and manual. Deck designed Template Gothic while he was a student of Ed Fella, whose experimental posters inspired a generation of digital typographers. After Template Gothic was released commercially by Emigre Fonts, its use spread worldwide, making it an emblem of digital typography for the 1990s.

Dead History: feeding on the past

P. Scott Makela's typeface Dead History, also designed in 1990, is a pastiche of two existing typefaces: the traditional serif font Centennial and the Pop classic VAG Rounded. By manipulating the vectors of readymade fonts, Makela adopted the sampling strategy employed in contemporary art and music. He also embraced the burden of history and precedent, which play a role in nearly every typographic innovation.

CcDdEeFfGgHhIiJjKk

The Dutch typographers Erik van Blokland and Just van Rossum have combined the roles of designer and programmer, creating typefaces that embrace chance, change, and uncertainty. Their 1990 typeface Beowulf was the first in a series of typefaces with randomized outlines and programmed behaviors.

The industrial methods of producing typography meant that all letters had to be identical....Typography is now produced with sophisticated equipment that doesn't impose such rules. The only limitations are in our expectations. —ERIK VAN BLOKLAND AND JUST VAN ROSSUM, 2000

BACK TO WORK

Although the 1990s are best remembered for images of chaos and decay, serious type designers continued to build general purpose typefaces designed to comfortably accommodate broad bodies of text. Such workhorse type families provide graphic designers with flexible palettes of letterforms.

Mrs Eaves: **WORKING** *woman* **seeks reliable mate**

Licko produced historical revivals during the 1990s alongside her experimental display faces. Her 1996 typeface Mrs Eaves, inspired by the eighteenth-century types of Baskerville, became one of the most popular typefaces of its time. In 2009, Mrs Eaves was joined by Mr Eaves, a sans-serif version of the feminine favorite.

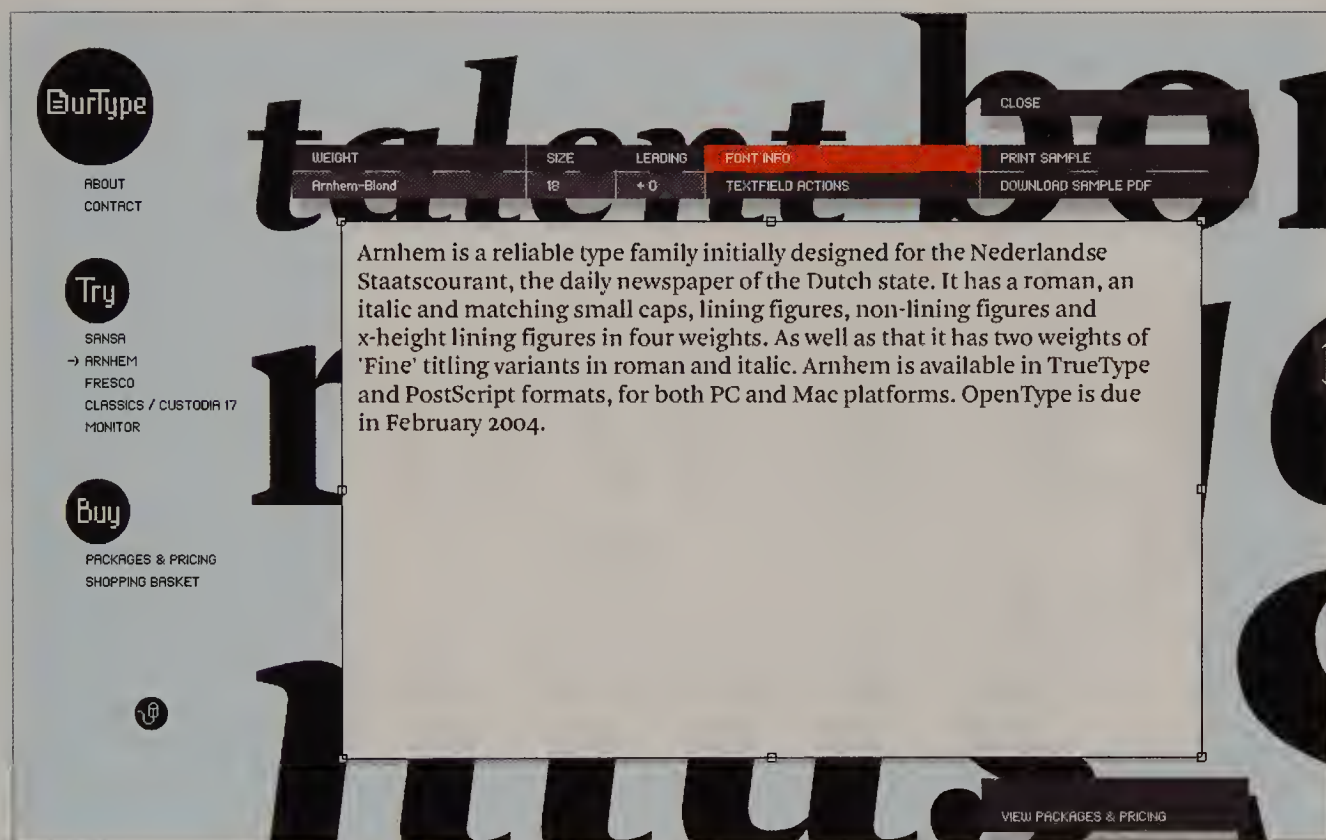
Quadraat: *all-purpose* **hardcore** BAROQUE

Fred Smeijers's Quadraat (above) and Martin Majoor's Scala (used for the text of this book) offer crisp interpretations of typographic tradition. These typefaces look back to sixteenth-century printing from a contemporary point of view, as seen in their simply drawn, decisively geometric serifs. Introduced in 1992, the Quadraat family soon expanded to include sans-serif forms in numerous weights and styles.

Gotham: Blue-Collar **Curves**

In 2000 Tobias Frere-Jones introduced Gotham, derived from letters found at the Port Authority Bus Terminal in New York City. With its distinctive yet utilitarian style, Gotham became the signature typeface of Barack Obama's 2008 presidential campaign. By 2009, typography's First Family had over fifty weights and styles.

When choosing a typeface, graphic designers consider the history of typefaces, their current connotations, as well as their formal qualities. The goal is to find an appropriate match between a style of letters and the specific social situation and body of content that define the project at hand. There is no playbook that assigns a fixed meaning or function to every typeface; each designer must confront the library of possibilities in light of a project's unique circumstances.



OURTYPE.COM Website, 2004. Design: Fred Smeijers and Rudy Geeraerts. This Flash-based website for a digital type foundry allows users to test fonts on the fly. The designers launched their own "label" after creating typefaces such as Quadraat for FontShop International. Shown here is Arnhem.

Can we envision

1. a font that asks more questions than it answers
2. a font that has projective memory that reminds you to remember
3. a font with a limited lifespan
4. a font with an expiration date
5. a font that's gone
6. a font without temporal inflection, without the imprint of its time
7. an apolitical font, a font that doesn't care
8. a font unaffected by the force of gravity and the weight of human history
9. a font without family, without ancestry
10. a Marshall McLuhan font that stubbornly persists in bidding farewell to the future
11. a font that takes advantage of all that promised "processing power"
12. a font that does something other than sit on its ass in a digital museum
13. a font with the capacity to breed with other fonts
14. a recombinant font — every letterform the unruly child of a predictable but random parent
15. a font that sounds as good as it looks
16. a font that writes its own code
17. a font that thickens the air
18. a font that responds and reacts to the meaning it carries and conveys
19. a font that assumes the intelligence of its reader
20. a font that might sense your level of agitation, fear, or aggression
21. a font prone to sudden outbursts and tantrums
22. a font that exceeds the typographic genre
23. a font whose parents are Father Time and the Mother of Invention
24. an ambient font, a font without quotation marks
25. an everyday font, a font of common sense

font that slows the pace of reading for the difficult passages (and skips along through easy bits)

font that writes between the lines

font that refuses to utter imperatives or commands

karaoke font, a lip-synching font, a font without a voice of its own

font that listens while it speaks

font that toggles effortlessly between languages

font for speaking in tongues

font that speaks in dialects

metropolitan font for uptown, the ghetto, and suburbia alike

font that simultaneously translates

font that sings the plaintive songs of lonely whales

font that grows

font that learns

an evolutionary font

an entropic font

“live” font

promiscuous font, a font that fucks fonts, a font-fucking-font

font that emerges, unfolds, performs, evolves, and passes away

font of youth

win fonts, identical but distinct

generative font that renders itself according to behavioral tendencies

font that is something other than a recording

font that is different every time you “play” it

font with the metabolism of a fly

font with a demographic algorithm that projects itself only you, the average reader

311

LIFE STYLE Book, 2000. Design: Bruce Mau. Publisher: Phaidon. Photograph: Dan Meyers. *In this postindustrial manifesto, graphic designer Bruce Mau imagines a typeface that comes alive with simulated intelligence.*



ASCENDER HEIGHT

Some elements may extend slightly above the cap height.

CAP HEIGHT

The distance from the baseline to the top of the capital letter determines the letter's point size.

DESCENDER HEIGHT

The length of a letter's descenders contributes to its overall style and attitude.

skin, Body

X-HEIGHT is the height of the main body of the lowercase letter (or the height of a lowercase x), excluding its ascenders and descenders.

THE BASELINE is where all the letters sit. This is the most stable axis along a line of text, and it is a crucial edge for aligning text with images or with other text.

OVERHANG The curves at the bottom of letters hang slightly below the baseline. Commas and semicolons also cross the baseline. If a typeface were not positioned this way, it would appear to teeter precariously. Without overhang, rounded letters would look smaller than their flat-footed compatriots.

Bone

Although kids learn to write using ruled paper that divides letters exactly in half, most typefaces are not designed that way. The x-height usually occupies more than half of the cap height. The larger the x-height is in relation to the cap height, the bigger the letters appear to be. In a field of text, the greatest density occurs between the baseline and the x-height.

Hey, look!
They supersized
my x-height.

Two blocks of text are often aligned along a shared baseline. Here, 14/18 Scala Pro (14-pt type with 18 pts of line spacing) is paired with 7/9 Scala Pro.

12 points
equal 1 pica

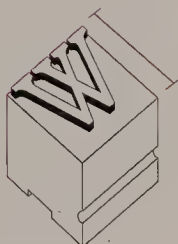
6 picas
(72 points)
equal 1 inch



Big

60-POINT SCALE

A typeface is measured from the top of the capital letter to the bottom of the lowest descender, plus a small buffer space.



In metal type, the point size is the height of the type slug.

HEIGHT Attempts to standardize the measurement of type began in the eighteenth century. The *point system* is the standard used today. One *point* equals 1/72 inch or .35 millimeters. Twelve points equal one *pica*, the unit commonly used to measure column widths. Typography can also be measured in inches, millimeters, or pixels. Most software applications let the designer choose a preferred unit of measure; picas and points are standard defaults.

NERD ALERT:

ABBREVIATING PICAS AND POINTS

8 picas = 8p

8 points = p8, 8 pts

8 picas, 4 points = 8p4

8-point Helvetica with 9 points of line spacing =

8/9 Helvetica

WIDE LOAD

INTERSTATE BLACK

The set width is the body of the letter plus the space beside it.

TIGHT WAD

INTERSTATE BLACK COMPRESSED

The letters in the compressed version of the typeface have a narrower set width.

WIDTH A letter also has a horizontal measure, called its *set width*. The set width is the body of the letter plus a sliver of space that protects it from other letters. The width of a letter is intrinsic to the proportions and visual impression of the typeface. Some typefaces have a narrow set width, and some have a wide one.

You can change the set width of a typeface by fiddling with its horizontal or vertical scale. This distorts the line weight of the letters, however, forcing heavy elements to become thin, and thin elements to become thick. Instead of torturing a letterform, choose a typeface that has the proportions you are looking for, such as condensed, compressed, wide, or extended.

WIDE LOAD

TIGHT WAD

TYPE CRIME

HORIZONTAL & VERTICAL SCALING

The proportions of the letters have been digitally distorted in order to create wider or narrower letters.

32-PT SCALA PRO

32-PT INTERSTATE REGULAR

32-PT BODONI

32-PT MRS EAVES

Do I look fat in this paragraph?

When two typefaces are set in the same point size, one often looks bigger than the other. Differences in x-height, line weight, and set width affect the letters' apparent scale.

Mrs Eaves rejects the twentieth-century appetite for supersized x-heights. This typeface, inspired by the eighteenth-century designs of Baskerville, is named after Sarah Eaves, Baskerville's mistress, housekeeper, and collaborator. The couple lived together for sixteen years before marrying in 1764.

Mr. Big versus Mrs. & Mr. Little

32-PT HELVETICA

32-PT MRS EAVES

32-PT MR EAVES

The x-height of a typeface affects its apparent size, its space efficiency, and its overall visual impact. Like hemlines and hair styles, x-heights go in and out of fashion. Bigger type bodies became popular in the mid-twentieth century, making letterforms look larger by maximizing the area within the overall point size.

12/14 HELVETICA

Because of its huge x-height, Helvetica can remain legible at small sizes. Set in 8 pts for a magazine caption, Helvetica can look quite elegant. The same typeface could look bulky and bland, however, standing 12 pts tall on a business card.

8/10 HELVETICA

The default type size in many software applications is 12 pts. Although this generally creates readable type on screen displays, 12-pt text type usually looks big and horsey in print. Sizes between 9 and 11 pts are common for printed text. This caption is 7.5 pts.

Typefaces with small x-heights, such as MRS EAVES, use space less efficiently than those with big lower bodies. However, their delicate proportions have lyrical charm.

12/14 MRS EAVES

Like his lovely wife, **MR EAVES** has a low waist and a small body. His loose letterspacing also makes him work well with his mate.

12/14 MR EAVES

The size of a typeface is a matter of context. A line of text that looks tiny on a television screen may appear appropriately scaled in a page of printed text. Smaller proportions affect legibility as well as space consumption. A diminutive x-height is a luxury that requires sacrifice.

8/10 MRS AND MR EAVES

All the typefaces shown below were inspired by the sixteenth-century printing types of Claude Garamond, yet each one reflects its own era. The lean forms of Garamond 3 appeared during the Great Depression, while the inflated x-height of ITC Garamond became an icon of the flamboyant 1970s.

Grapes of Wrath

30-PT GARAMOND 3 30-PT ITC GARAMOND

GARAMOND IN THE TWENTIETH CENTURY: VARIATIONS ON A THEME

1930s: Franklin D. Roosevelt, SALVADOR DALÍ, Duke

18-PT GARAMOND 3, *designed by Morris Fuller Benton and Thomas Maitland Cleland for ATF, 1936*

Ellington, *Scarface*, chicken and waffles, shoulder pads, radio.

1970s: Richard Nixon, Claes Oldenburg, Van Halen,

18-PT ITC GARAMOND, *designed by Tony Stan, 1976*

The Godfather, bell bottoms, guacamole, sitcoms.

1980s: Margaret Thatcher, BARBARA KRUGER, Madonna,

18-PT ADOBE GARAMOND, *designed by Robert Slimbach, 1989*

Blue Velvet, shoulder pads, pasta salad, desktop publishing.

2000s: Osama Bin Laden, MATTHEW BARNEY, the White

18-PT ADOBE GARAMOND PREMIERE PRO MEDIUM SUBHEAD, *designed by Robert Slimbach, 2005*

Stripes, *The Sopranos*, mom jeans, heirloom tomatoes, Twitter.

A type family with *optical sizes* has different styles for different sizes of output. The graphic designer selects a style based on context. Optical sizes designed for headlines or display tend to have delicate, lyrical forms, while styles created for text and captions are built with heavier strokes.

OPTICAL SIZES

HEADLINES are slim, *high-strung* prima donnas.

27-PT ADOBE GARAMOND PREMIERE PRO DISPLAY

SUBHEADS are *frisky* supporting characters.

27-PT ADOBE GARAMOND PREMIERE PRO SUBHEAD

TEXT is the *everyman* of the printed stage.

27-PT ADOBE GARAMOND PREMIERE PRO REGULAR

CAPTIONS get *heavy* to play small roles.

27-PT ADOBE GARAMOND PREMIERE PRO CAPTION

10 PT

In the era of METAL TYPE, type designers created a different *punch* for each size of type, adjusting its weight, spacing, and other features. Each size required a unique typeface design.

ADOBE GARAMOND PREMIERE PRO DISPLAY

When the type design process became automated in the NINETEENTH CENTURY, many typefounders economized by simply *enlarging or reducing* a base design to generate different sizes.

ADOBE GARAMOND PREMIERE PRO REGULAR

This MECHANIZED APPROACH to type sizes became the norm for photo and digital type production. When a text-sized letterform is enlarged to poster-sized proportions, its thin features become too heavy (and vice versa).

ADOBE GARAMOND PREMIERE PRO CAPTION

No Job

Too Small

48-PT BODONI

8-PT BODONI

TYPE CRIME

Some typefaces that work well at large sizes look too fragile when reduced.

8 PT

A DISPLAY or *headline* style looks spindly and weak when set at small sizes. Display styles are intended for use at 24 pts. and larger.

80 PT

A

Basic TEXT styles are designed for sizes ranging from 9 to 14 pts. Their features are strong and *meaty* but not too assertive.

A

CAPTION styles are built with the heaviest stroke weight. They are *designed* for sizes ranging from 6 to 8 pts.

A

SCALE

Scale is the size of design elements in comparison to other elements in a layout as well as to the physical context of the work. Scale is relative. 12-pt type displayed on a 32-inch monitor can look very small, while 12-pt type printed on a book page can look flabby and overweight. Designers create hierarchy and contrast by playing with the scale of letterforms. Changes in scale help create visual contrast, movement, and depth as well as express hierarchies of importance. Scale is physical. People intuitively judge the size of objects in relation to their own bodies and environments.

THE WORLD IS FLAT

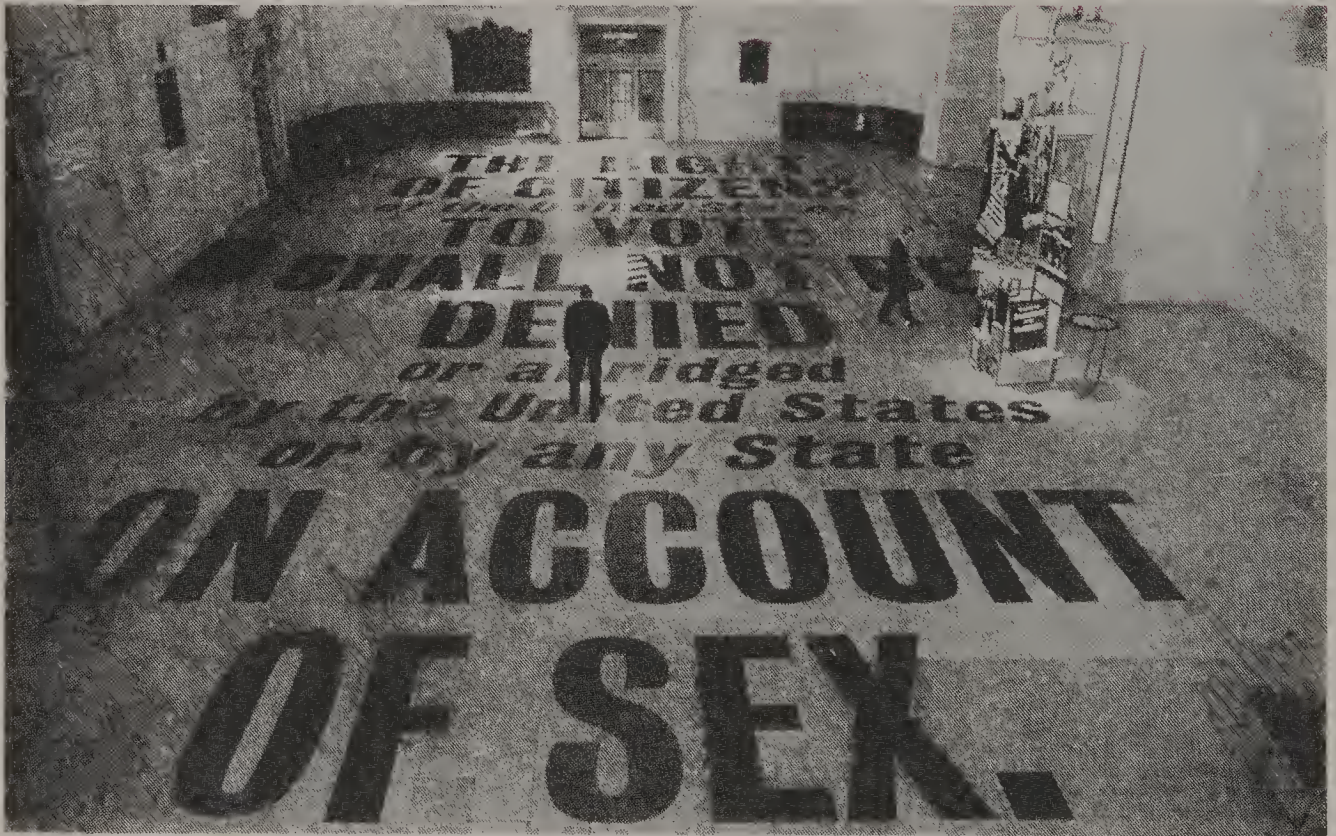
TYPE CRIME

Minimal differences in type size make this design look tentative and arbitrary.

THE WORLD IS FLAT

SCALE CONTRAST

The strong contrast between type sizes gives this design dynamism, decisiveness, and depth.



THE XIX AMENDMENT Typographic installation at Grand Central Station, New York City, 1995. Designer: Stephen Doyle. Sponsors: The New York State Division of Women, the Metropolitan Transportation Authority, Revlon, and Merrill Lynch. *Large-scale text creates impact in this public installation.*

BLOW-UP: PHOTOGRAPHY, CINEMA AND THE BRAIN

(WARREN
NIEDICH)

BLOW-UP: PHOTOGRAPHY, CINEMA, AND THE BRAIN

Book cover, 2003. Designers: Paul Carlos and Urshula

Barbour/Pure + Applied. Author: Warren Niedich. *Cropping the letters increases their sense of scale. The overlapping colors suggest an extreme detail of a printed or photographic process.*



UNITED NATIONS' OFFICE ON DRUGS AND CRIME (UNODC) Maps, 2009. Design: Harry Pearce and Jason Ching/ Pentagram. This series of posters for the United Nations' Office on Drugs and Crime uses typographic scale to compare drug treatment programs, HIV incidence, and other data worldwide. The designers built simple world maps from country abbreviation codes (GBR, USA, RUS, etc.). The posters are aimed specifically at the Russian police, whose country has a poor track record in drug treatment. Note Russia's high incidence of HIV and low availability of addiction rehabilitation programs.



REVOLVER: ZEITSCHRIFT FÜR
FILM (MAGAZINE FOR FILM)
Magazine, 1998–2003.

Designer: Gerwin Schmidt.

*This magazine is created by and
for film directors. The contrast
between the big type and the small
pages creates drama and surprise.*

SABON

Aa

HUMANIST OR OLD STYLE

The roman typefaces of the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries emulated classical calligraphy. Sabon was designed by Jan Tschichold in 1966, based on the sixteenth-century typefaces of Claude Garamond.

BASKERVILLE

Aa

TRANSITIONAL

These typefaces have sharper serifs and a more vertical axis than humanist letters. When the typefaces of John Baskerville were introduced in the mid-eighteenth century, their sharp forms and high contrast were considered shocking.

BODONI

Aa

MODERN

The typefaces designed by Giambattista Bodoni in the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries are radically abstract. Note the thin, straight serifs; vertical axis; and sharp contrast from thick to thin strokes.

A basic system for classifying typefaces was devised in the nineteenth century, when printers sought to identify a heritage for their own craft analogous to that of art history. *Humanist* letterforms are closely connected to calligraphy and the movement of the hand. *Transitional* and *modern* typefaces are more abstract and less organic. These three main groups correspond roughly to the Renaissance, Baroque, and Enlightenment periods in art and literature. Historians and critics of typography have since proposed more finely grained schemes that attempt to better capture the diversity of letterforms. Designers in the twentieth and twenty-first centuries have continued to create new typefaces based on historic characteristics.

CLARENDON

Aa

EGYPTIAN OR SLAB SERIF

Numerous bold and decorative typefaces were introduced in the nineteenth century for use in advertising. Egyptian typefaces have heavy, slablike serifs.

GILL SANS

Aa

HUMANIST SANS SERIF

Sans-serif typefaces became common in the twentieth century. Gill Sans, designed by Eric Gill in 1928, has humanist characteristics. Note the small, tilting counter in the letter a, and the calligraphic variations in line weight.

HELVETICA

Aa

TRANSITIONAL SANS SERIF

Helvetica, designed by Max Miedinger in 1957, is one of the world's most widely used typefaces. Its uniform, upright character makes it similar to transitional serif letters. These fonts are also referred to as "anonymous sans serif."

FUTURA

Aa

GEOMETRIC SANS SERIF

Some sans-serif types are built around geometric forms. In Futura, designed by Paul Renner in 1927, the Os are perfect circles, and the peaks of the A and M are sharp triangles.

CLASSIC TYPEFACES

Sabon

14 PT

This is not a book about fonts. It is a book about how to use them. Typefaces are essential resources for the graphic designer, just as glass, stone, steel, and other materials are employed by the architect.

SABON 9/12

Selecting type with wit and wisdom requires knowledge of how and why letterforms evolved.

7/9

Baskerville

14 PT

This is not a book about fonts. It is a book about how to use them. Typefaces are essential resources for the graphic designer, just as glass, stone, steel, and other materials are employed by the architect.

BASKERVILLE 9/12

Selecting type with wit and wisdom requires knowledge of how and why letterforms evolved.

7/9

Bodoni

14 PT

This is not a book about fonts. It is a book about how to use them. Typefaces are essential resources for the graphic designer, just as glass, stone, steel, and other materials are employed by the architect.

BODONI BOOK 9.5/12

Selecting type with wit and wisdom requires knowledge of how and why letterforms evolved.

7.5/9

Clarendon

14 PT

This is not a book about fonts. It is a book about how to use them. Typefaces are essential resources for the graphic designer, just as glass, stone, steel, and other materials are employed by the architect.

CLARENDON LIGHT 8/12

Selecting type with wit and wisdom requires knowledge of how and why letterforms evolved.

6/9

Gill Sans

14 PT

This is not a book about fonts. It is a book about how to use them. Typefaces are essential resources for the graphic designer, just as glass, stone, steel, and other materials are employed by the architect.

GILL SANS REGULAR 9/12

Selecting type with wit and wisdom requires knowledge of how and why letterforms evolved.

7/9

Helvetica

14 PT

This is not a book about fonts. It is a book about how to use them. Typefaces are essential resources for the graphic designer, just as glass, stone, steel, and other materials are employed by the architect.

HELVETICA REGULAR 8/12

Selecting type with wit and wisdom requires knowledge of how and why letterforms evolved.

6/9

Futura

14 PT

This is not a book about fonts. It is a book about how to use them. Typefaces are essential resources for the graphic designer, just as glass, stone, steel, and other materials are employed by the architect.

FUTURA BOOK 8.5/12

Selecting type with wit and wisdom requires knowledge of how and why letterforms evolved.

6.5/9

TYPE FAMILIES

In the sixteenth century, printers began organizing roman and italic typefaces into matched families. The concept was formalized in the early twentieth century.

ANATOMY OF A TYPE FAMILY

ADOBE GARAMOND PRO, designed by Robert Slimbach, 1988

The roman form is the core or spine from which a family of typefaces derives.

ADOBE GARAMOND PRO REGULAR

The roman form, also called plain or regular, is the standard, upright version of a typeface. It is typically conceived as the parent of a larger family.

Italic letters, which are based on cursive writing, have forms distinct from roman.

ADOBE GARAMOND PRO ITALIC

The italic form is used to create emphasis. Especially among serif faces, it often employs shapes and strokes distinct from its roman counterpart. Note the differences between the roman and italic a.

SMALL CAPS HAVE A HEIGHT THAT IS SIMILAR TO the lowercase x-height.

ADOBE GARAMOND PRO REGULAR (ALL SMALL CAPS)

Small caps (capitals) are designed to integrate with a line of text, where full-size capitals would stand out awkwardly. Small capitals are slightly taller than the x-height of lowercase letters.

Bold (and semibold) typefaces are used for emphasis within a hierarchy.

ADOBE GARAMOND PRO BOLD AND SEMIBOLD

Bold versions of traditional text fonts were added in the twentieth century to meet the need for emphatic forms. Sans-serif families often include a broad range of weights (thin, bold, black, etc.).

Bold (and semibold) typefaces each need to include an italic version, too.

ADOBE GARAMOND PRO BOLD AND SEMIBOLD ITALIC

The typeface designer tries to make the two bold versions feel similar in comparison to the roman, without making the overall form too heavy. The counters need to stay clear and open at small sizes. Many designers prefer not to use bold and semi-bold versions of traditional typefaces such as Garamond, because these weights are alien to the historic families.

Italics are not *slanted* letters.

TRUE

TYPE CRIME:

ITALIC

PSEUDO ITALICS

The wide, ungainly forms of these mechanically skewed letters look forced and unnatural.

Some italics aren't slanted at all.

In the type family Quadraat, the italic form is upright.

QUADRAAT, designed by Fred Smeijers, 1992.

LETTER 49

SUPERFAMILIES

A traditional roman book face typically has a small family—an intimate group consisting of roman, italic, small caps, and possibly bold and semibold (each with an italic variant) styles. Sans-serif families often come in many more weights and sizes, such as thin, light, black, compressed, and condensed. A *superfamily* consists of dozens of related fonts in multiple weights and/or widths, often with both sans-serif and serif versions. Small capitals and non-lining numerals (once found only in serif fonts) are included in the sans-serif versions of Thesis, Scala Pro, and many other contemporary superfamilies.

ANATOMY OF A SUPERFAMILY



Scala

Scala Italic

SCALA CAPS

Scala Bold

SCALA PRO, designed by Martin Majoor, includes *Scala* (1991) and *Scala Sans* (1993). The serif and sans-serif forms have a common spine. *Scala Pro* (OpenType format) was released in 2005.

Scala Sans Light

Scala Sans

Scala Sans Condensed

Scala Sans Cond Bold

Scala Sans Bold

Scala Sans Black

SCALA JEWEL CRYSTAL

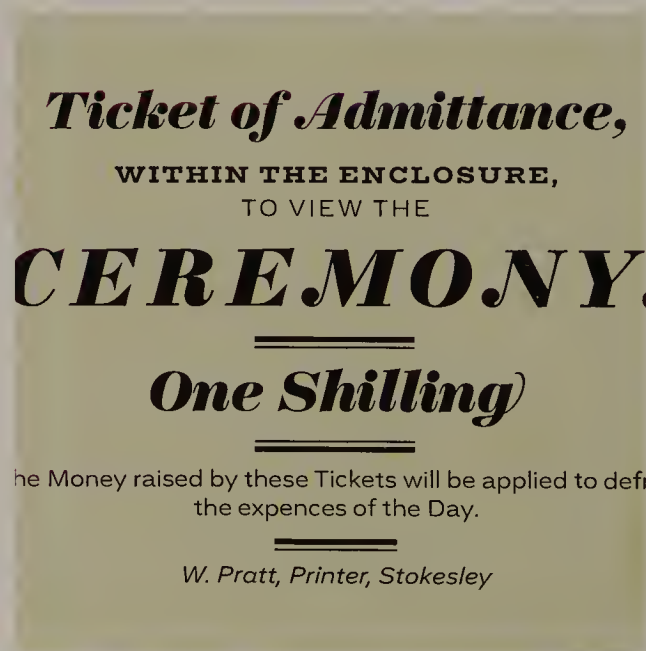
SCALA JEWEL DIAMOND

SCALA JEWEL PEARL

SCALA JEWEL SAPHYR



UNIVERS was designed by the Swiss typographer Adrian Frutiger in 1957. He designed twenty-one versions of Univers, in five weights and five widths. Whereas some type families grow over time, Univers was conceived as a total system from its inception.



TRILOGY, a superfamily designed by Jeremy Tankard in 2009, is inspired by three nineteenth-century type styles: sans serif, Egyptian, and fat face. The inclusion of the fat face style, with its wafer-thin serifs and ultrawide verticals, gives this family an unusual twist.

ANATOMY OF A SUPERFAMILY

This is not a book about fonts. It is a book about how to use them. Typefaces

THE SERIF MEDIUM ROMAN

are essential resources for the graphic designer, just as glass, stone, steel, and

THE SERIF MEDIUM ITALIC

OTHER MATERIALS ARE EMPLOYED BY THE ARCHITECT. SOME DESIGNERS CREATE

THE SERIF MEDIUM SMALL CAPS

their own custom fonts. But most

THE SERIF BLACK ROMAN

graphic designers will tap the vast

THE SERIF EXTRA BOLD ROMAN

store of already existing typefaces,

THE SERIF BOLD ROMAN

choosing and combining each with

THE SERIF SEMI BOLD ROMAN

regard to the audience or situation.

THE SERIF MEDIUM ROMAN

Selecting type with wit and wisdom

THE SERIF SEMI LIGHT

requires knowledge of how and why

THE SERIF LIGHT ROMAN

letterforms have evolved. The history

THE SERIF EXTRA LIGHT ROMAN

of typography reflects a continual tension between the hand and machine, the

THE SANS MEDIUM ROMAN

organic and geometric, the human body and the abstract system. These tensions

THE SANS MEDIUM ITALIC

MARKED THE BIRTH OF PRINTED LETTERS FIVE CENTURIES AGO, AND THEY CONTINUE TO

THE SANS MEDIUM SMALL CAPS

energize typography today. Writing

THE SANS BLACK ROMAN

in the West was revolutionized early

THE SANS EXTRA BOLD ROMAN

in the Renaissance, when Johannes

THE SANS BOLD ROMAN

Gutenberg introduced moveable type

THE SANS SEMI BOLD ROMAN

in Germany. Whereas documents and

THE SANS MEDIUM ROMAN

books had previously been written by

THE SANS SEMI LIGHT ROMAN

hand, printing with type mobilized all

THE SANS LIGHT ROMAN

of the techniques of mass production.

THE SANS EXTRA LIGHT ROMAN

CAPITALS AND SMALL CAPITALS

A word set in ALL CAPS within running text can look big and bulky, and A LONG PASSAGE SET ENTIRELY IN CAPITALS CAN LOOK UTTERLY INSANE. SMALL CAPITALS are designed to match the x-height of lowercase letters. Designers, enamored with the squarish proportions of true SMALL CAPS, employ them not only within bodies of text but for subheads, bylines, invitations, and more. Rather than MIXING SMALL CAPS WITH CAPITALS, many designers prefer to use ALL SMALL CAPS, creating a clean line with no ascending elements. InDesign and other programs allow users to create FALSE SMALL CAPS at the press of a button; these SCRAWNY LETTERS look out of place.

+ CAPITAL
- investment
CAPITAL
punishment
CAPITAL
crime

TYPE CRIME

In this stack of lowercase and capital letters, the spaces between lines appear uneven because caps are tall but have no descenders.

CAPITAL
investment
CAPITAL
punishment
CAPITAL
crime

ADJUSTED LEADING

The leading has been fine-tuned by selectively shifting the baselines of the small capitals to make the space between lines look even.

PSEUDO SMALL CAPS are shrunk versions of FULL-SIZE CAPS.

TYPE CRIME

PSEUDO SMALL CAPS

Helvetica was never meant to include small caps. These automatically generated characters look puny and starved; they are an abomination against nature.

TRUE SMALL CAPS integrate PEACEFULLY with lowercase letters.

SMALL CAPS, SCALA PRO

Only use small caps when they are officially included with the type family. When working with OpenType fonts (labeled Pro), access small caps in InDesign via the Character Options>OpenType menu. Older formats list small caps as a separate file in the Type>Font menu.



Tasty Vagabonds

The two camps of the burgeoning food-truck phenomenon: stable and nomadic.

BY AILEEN GALLAGHER

TRUCKS THAT ROVE

CUPCAKE STOP

The inevitable cupcakes-only truck rolled out in May. [twitter.com/cupcakestop](#).

TREATS TRUCK

Cookies, crispy treats,

NEW YORK MAGAZINE

Design: Chris Dixon, 2009. This page detail mixes serif types from the Miller family (including true Small Caps) with the sans-serif family Verlag.

AMUSEMENT x SIMS 3

« JE FINIRAI PAR METTRE LE BAZAR UN PEU PARTOUT ! » SARA FORESTIER CASSE LA BARAQUE DANS LES SIMS 3

Simuler avec une grande finesse ses traits psychologiques, personnaliser son avatar avec tant de possibilités qu'elles le rendent unique, proposer une expérience interactive qui va au-delà du simple jeu, et vous propulse dans les subtilités de nos modes de vie ? Voici un petit aperçu de ce que propose *Les Sims 3*, dernier épisode de la saga culte lancée il y a tout juste dix ans.

Jeune actrice pleine d'énergie et aux réactions imprévisibles, Sara Forestier montre dans chacun de ses rôles une grande créativité qu'elle exprime également depuis plusieurs années dans la réalisation de courts-métrages. À l'affiche à la rentrée dans *Victor*, une comédie de Thomas Gilou sur les relations familiales, Sara était toute trouvée pour casser la baraque dans *Les Sims 3* ! Et elle ne s'est pas gênée !

Photographe François Rousseau

AMUSEMENT N° 360 JUIN 2009

Jean Apc
 Yves Chaz Louis Vuitton
 Bruno et Jean Roulin
 quatre Lund/Christians Pasquale Brual
 Chausson Louis Vuitton
 Simon Sando Plastic Shop Chaz vitres
 Dorian Chaz roulin
 Jean-Mar Roulin
 Dominique/Philippe Chaz
 Chaz/Philippe
 Vitres

AMUSEMENT MAGAZINE

Design: Alice Litscher, 2009.

This French culture magazine employs a startling mix of tightly leaded Didot capitals in roman and italic. Running text is set in Glypha.

« MA PHILOSOPHIE PASSE PAR LE GAMEPLAY » KEITA TAKAHASHI

En cette fin du mois de mars, Keita Takahashi fait escale en France. Quelques jours plus tôt, le game designer japonais était à San Francisco pour la Game Developers Conference, grand rassemblement de la profession où, comme à son habitude, il a sûrement ses confidences de réflexions rafraîchissantes sur le jeu vidéo.

Mais, avant toute chose, il faut le montrer sa nouvelle éclaircie, qu'il porte encore sur lui pour ce mini-séjour parisien. Confectionnée par Madamemo Takahashi mère, celle-ci n'est pas seulement pour permettre au diston d'y glisser ses mains afin de les protéger en cas de grand froid. Ce précieux titot est aussi le premier « produit dérivé » de *Noby Noby Boy*, le dernier jeu en date de Keita Takahashi, disponible depuis le mois de février sur le service de téléchargement de la PS3 pour la somme quasi-rédicible de 3,99 euros. Cette écharpe à l'effigie du souriant Boy se revête même remarquablement en phase avec le jeu qui l'inspire : tranquillement s'agrippant, résolvant artisanalement et conçu pour qu'on se sente bien quand on y met les mains.

Sébastien Ennen Haguenau
 Photographie Sébastien Agazzi

MIXING TYPEFACES

Combining typefaces is like making a salad. Start with a small number of elements representing different colors, tastes, and textures. Strive for contrast rather than harmony, looking for emphatic differences rather than mushy transitions. Give each ingredient a role to play: sweet tomatoes, crunchy cucumbers, and the pungent shock of an occasional anchovy. When mixing typefaces on the same line, designers usually adjust the point size so that the x-heights align. When placing typefaces on separate lines, it often makes sense to create contrast in scale as well as style or weight. Try mixing big, light type with small, dark type for a criss-cross of contrasting flavors and textures.



TYPE CRIME: WHO'S ACCOUNTABLE FOR THIS?

A slightly squeezed variant of the primary font has been used to make the second line fit better (as if we wouldn't notice). Yet another weight appears on the bottom line.

SINGLE-FAMILY MIXES

Creamy and **Extra Crunchy** | *Differences within a single family*

UNIVERS 47 LIGHT CONDENSED AND UNIVERS 67 BOLD CONDENSED

Sweet Child of **MINE** | *Differences within a SUPERFAMILY*

QUADRAAT REGULAR AND ITALIC; QUADRAAT SANS BOLD

Noodles with Potato Sauce | *Bland and blander*

HELVETICA NEUE 56 MEDIUM AND HELVETICA NEUE 75 BOLD

MULTIPLE-FAMILY MIXES

Jack Sprat and his **voluptuous wife** | *Two-way contrast*

THESIS SERIF EXTRA LIGHT AND VAG ROUNDED BOLD

Sweet, SOUR, and **hot** | *THREE-way contrast*

BODONI ROMAN, THESIS SERIF EXTRA LIGHT SMALL CAPS, AND FUTURA BOLD

Mr. Potatohead and Mrs. Pearbutt | *Too close for comfort*

ADOBE GARAMOND PRO BOLD AND ADOBE JENSON PRO BOLD

TYPE CRIME

These typefaces are from the same family, but they are too close in weight to mix well.

TYPE CRIME

These two type styles are too similar to provide a counterpoint to each other.

EGYPTIAN BOLD CONDENSED, a Linotype font based on a typeface from 1820. This quirky, chunky face has been used intermittently at New York Magazine since the publication was first designed by Milton Glaser in the 1970s. Here, the ultra-black type set at a relatively small size makes an incisive bite in the page.

VERLAG, designed by Jonathan Hoefler, 1996. Originally commissioned by Abbott Miller for exclusive use by the Guggenheim Museum, Verlag has become a widely used general-purpose typeface. Its approachable geometric forms are based on Frank Lloyd Wright's lettering for the facade of the Guggenheim.

The Word

EDITED BY EMMA PEARSE

EVENTS

BENOIT DENIZET-LEWIS

The Powerhouse Arena, 37 Main St., nr. Water St., Dumbo
(718-666-3049)

The writer from *The New York Times Magazine* reads from *American Voyage: Dispatches From the Far Reaches of Modern Life*, a collection of his analytical reportage on everything from pro-life summer camps to the clothing company Abercrombie & Fitch; 1/13 at 7.

SOUTHERN WRITERS READING SERIES

Happy Ending Lounge, 302 Broome St., nr. Forsyth St. (212-334-9676)
An open mike for writers from below the Mason-Dixon line, where they'll read and discuss (and drink) all things southern; 1/13 at 8.

SUZE ORMAN

Barnes & Noble, 33 E. 17th St., nr. Broadway (212-253-0810)

The high priestess of financial invincibility presents her latest, *Women and Money: Owning the Power to Control Your Destiny*; 1/14 at 7.

MARY JO BANG

McNally Jackson, 52 Prince St., nr. Mulberry St. (212-274-1160)

Two poets in one room: Susan Wheeler hosts a discussion with the spectacularly named National Book Critics Circle Award winner, whose latest collection is titled *The Bride of E*; 1/14 at 7.

JOYCE CAROL OATES AND ELAINE SHOWALTER

92nd St. Y, 1395 Lexington Ave. (212-415-5500)

What two better authorities to discuss women and writing on the occasion of the publication of Showalter's *A Jury of Her Peers*, a history of American women writers from 1650 to 2000; 1/17 at 11 a.m.

PATTI SMITH

Barnes & Noble, 33 E. 17th St., nr. Broadway (212-253-0810)

The poet queen of punk reads from her book *Just Kids: From Brooklyn to the Chelsea Hotel, a Life of Art and Friendship*, about the fabulous, rocky friendship with Robert Mapplethorpe; 1/19 at 7. Smith will also appear with the playwright Sam Shepard on January 21 at 8 p.m. at 92nd St. Y, 1395 Lexington Ave. (212-415-5500).

COUNTESS LUANN DE LESSEPS

Borders, 10 Columbus Circle, nr. Eighth Ave. (212-825-9775)

The Real Housewife of New York, who says that "class is a state of mind," appears in the glamorous flesh to share her intimate knowledge of sophisticated living; 1/21 at 7.

IN THE FLESH

Happy Ending Lounge, 302 Broome St., nr. Forsyth St.

(212-334-9676)

Former sex columnist, editor of *Best Sex Writing 2010*, and blogger Rachel Kramer Bussel hosts her monthly series of erotic readings, this time with the theme of sex and food (and rumo cupcakes all around); 1/21 at 8.

NICK FLYNN

BookCourt, 163 Court St., nr. Pacific

The cult hit memoirist (an Taylor) reads from his latest hitting work about child obsession with torture, of the Iraqi men depicted; 1/22 at 7.

OZZY OSBOU

Borders, 10

The fil

cr

GLYPHA THIN, designed by Adrian Frutiger, 1979. The large scale of the letters is counterbalanced by the fine line of the stroke.

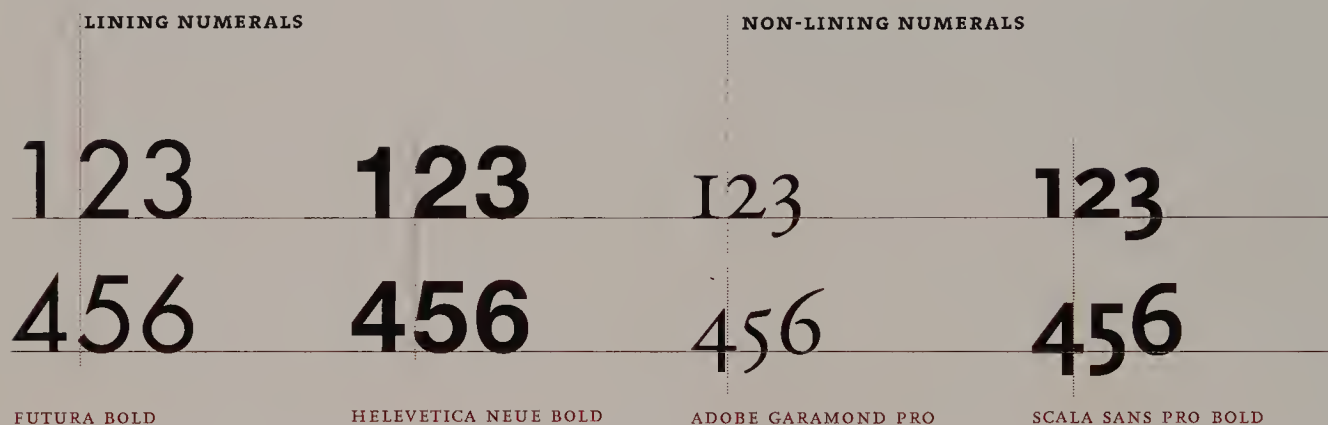
MILLER SMALL CAPS, designed by Matthew Carter with Jonathan Hoefler and Tobias Frere-Jones, 1997–2000. Known as a Scotch Roman typeface, it has crisp serifs and strong contrast between thick and thin.

THE WORD: NEW YORK MAGAZINE Design: Chris Dixon, 2010. This content-intensive page detail mixes four different type families from various points in history, ranging from the early advertising face Egyptian Bold Condensed to the functional contemporary sans Verlag. These diverse ingredients are mixed here at different scales to create typographic tension and contrast.

NUMERALS

Lining numerals take up uniform widths of space, enabling the numbers to line up when tabulated in columns. They were introduced around the turn of the twentieth century to meet the needs of modern business. Lining numerals are the same height as capital letters, so they sometimes look big and bulky when appearing in running text.

Non-lining numerals, also called *text* or *old style* numerals, have ascenders and descenders, like lowercase letters. Non-lining numerals returned to favor in the 1990s, valued for their idiosyncratic appearance and their traditional typographic attitude. Like letterforms, old style numerals are proportional; each one has its own set width.



TEXT SET WITH LINING NUMERALS

What is the cost of *War and Peace*? The cover price of the Modern Library Classics paperback edition is \$15.00, discounted 32% by Amazon to \$10.50. But what about the human cost in terms of hours squandered reading a super-sized work of literary fiction? If you can read 400 words per minute, double the average, it will take you 1,476 minutes (24.6 hours) to read *War and Peace*. Devoting just four hours per day to the task, you could finish the work in a little over six days. If you earn \$7.25 per hour (minimum wage in the U.S.), the cost of reading *War and Peace* will be \$184.50 (€130.4716, £11.9391, or ¥17676.299).

ADOBE GARAMOND PRO includes both lining and non-lining numerals, allowing designers to choose a style in response to the circumstances of the project. The lining numerals appear large, because they have the height of capital letters.

TEXT SET WITH NON-LINING NUMERALS

What is the cost of *War and Peace*? The cover price of the Modern Library Classics paperback edition is \$15.00, discounted 32% by Amazon to \$10.50. But what about the human cost in terms of hours squandered reading a super-sized work of literary fiction? If you can read 400 words per minute, double the average, it will take you 1,476 minutes (24.6 hours) to read *War and Peace*. Devoting just four hours per day to the task, you could finish the work in a little over six days. If you earn \$7.25 per hour (minimum wage in the U.S.), the cost of reading *War and Peace* will be \$184.50 (€130.4716, £11.9391, or ¥17676.299).

Non-lining numerals integrate visually with the text. Different math and currency symbols are designed to match the different numeral styles. Smaller currency symbols look better with non-lining numerals.

99.8	32.3	DOM	DomCasual	...	26	7451	57.0	-
73.8	16.1	EGIZ	Egiziano	...	dd	2789	61.6	+
32.7	18.5	EURO	Eurostile	...	9	1449	99.5	-
69.6	59.4	FKTR	FetteFraktur	...	dd	3944	87.0	+
66.8	2.8	FRNK	FrnklinGthc	...	dd	11712	48.8	+
17	7	FRUT	Frutiger55	...	...	1814	34.5	-
35.8	15	FUTU	FuturaBook	...	18	11325	20.5	+
52.3	10.1	GDY	GoudyOldStyl	...	dd	2685	46.5	-
95.3	26.8	GILL	GillSans	...	dd	10748	72.3	+
96.2	35.4	GLRD	Galliard	...	26	1566	1.1	-
72.7	9.6	GMND	Garamond	...	27	2376	62.3	-
102.3	20.7	GROT	Grotesque9	...	47	6147	8.0	-
87.8	19.1	HLV	Helvetica	...	dd	3009	63.3	+
79.3	35.6	HOBO	Hobo	...	dd	5981	25.2	+
97.3	56.9	HTXT	HoeflerText	5e 1.3	dd	4548	93.7	+
85.1	11.4	INTR	Interstate	.32 2.1	dd	10127	19.3	+
72.7	59.1	JNSN	Janson	...	17	8065	63.2	+
84.8	68.7	KIS	KisJanson	...	dd	4641	80.9	-
65	7.9	KSMK	FFKosmik	...	20	510	26.3	+
35.9	8.9	LTHS	LithosBlack	...	dd	1669	39.8	+
104.7	1.5	LtrG	LetterGothic	...	dd	8091	20.6	+

HLV	Helvetica	...	dd	3009	63.3	+0.35
HOBO	Hobo	...	dd	5981	25.2	+0.79
HTXT	HoeflerText	5e 1.3	dd	4548	93.7	+0.99
INTR	Interstate	.32 2.1	dd	10127	19.3	+1.86
JNSN	Janson	...	17	8065	63.2	+1.11
KIS	KisJanson	...	dd	4641	80.9	-0.29
KSMK	FFKosmik	...	20	510	26.3	+0.92

123

RETINA, designed by Tobias Frere-Jones, 2000, was created for the extreme typographic conditions of the Wall Street Journal's financial pages. The numerals are designed to line up into columns. The different weights of Retina have matching set widths, allowing the newspaper to mix weights while maintaining perfectly aligned columns. The notched forms (called ink traps) prevent ink from filling in the letterforms when printed at tiny sizes.

MONTHLY CALENDAR, 1892
The charming numerals in this calendar don't line up into neat columns, because they have varied set widths. They would not be suitable for setting modern financial data.



{[““„,.,;:””]} {[““„,.,;:””]}

HELVETICA NEUE BOLD

{[““„,.,;:””]} {[““„,.,;:””]}

BODONI BOLD

COMMONLY ABUSED PUNCTUATION MARKS

5'2" eyes of blue

PRIME OR HATCH MARKS INDICATE INCHES AND FEET

It's a dog's life.

APOSTROPHES SIGNAL CONTRACTION
OR POSSESSION

He said, “That’s
what she said.”

QUOTATION MARKS SET OFF DIALOGUE

A well-designed comma carries the essence of the typeface down to its delicious details. Helvetica’s comma is a chunky square mounted to a jaunty curve, while Bodoni’s is a voluptuous, thin-stemmed orb. Designers and editors need to learn various typographic conventions in addition to mastering the grammatical rules of punctuation. A pandemic error is the use of straight prime or hatch marks (often called *dumb quotes*) in place of apostrophes and quotation marks (also known as *curly quotes*, *typographer’s quotes*, or *smart quotes*). Double and single quotation marks are represented with four distinct characters, each accessed with a different keystroke combination. Know thy keystrokes! It usually falls to the designer to purge the client’s manuscript of spurious punctuation.

“The thoughtless overuse” of quotation marks is a disgrace upon literary style—and on typographic style as well.

TYPE CRIME

Quotation marks carve out chunks of white space from the edge of the text.

“Hanging punctuation” prevents quotations and other marks from taking a bite out of the crisp left edge of a text block.

HANGING QUOTATION MARKS

Make a clean edge by pushing the quotation marks into the margin.

NERD ALERT: To create hanging punctuation in InDesign, insert a word space before the quotation mark. Pressing the option key, use the left arrow key to back the quotation mark into the margin. You can also use the Optical Margin Alignment or Indent to Here tools.

See APPENDIX for more punctuation blunders.

TYPE CRIMES**NEW YORK CITY TOUR**

City streets have become a dangerous place. Millions of dollars a year are spent producing commercial signs that are fraught with typographic misdoings. While some of these signs are cheaply made over-the-counter products, others were designed for prominent businesses and institutions. There is no excuse for such gross negligence.

**GETTIN' IT RIGHT**

Apostrophes and quotation marks are sometimes called curly quotes. Here, you can enjoy them in a meat-free environment.

**GETTIN' IT WRONG**

The correct use of hatch marks is to indicate inches and feet. Alas, this pizza is the hapless victim of a misplaced keystroke. In InDesign or Illustrator, use the Glyphs palette to find hatch marks when you need them.

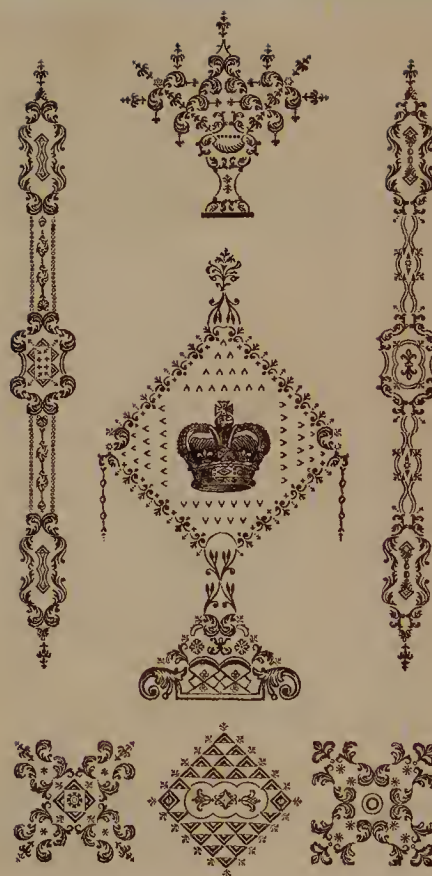


ORNAMENTS

Not all typographic elements represent language. For centuries, ornaments have been designed to integrate directly with text. In the letterpress era, printers assembled decorative elements one by one to build larger forms and patterns on the page. Decorative rules served to frame and divide content. In the nineteenth century, printers provided their customers with vast collections of readymade illustrations that could easily be mixed with text. Today, numerous forms of ornament are available as digital fonts, which can be typed on a keyboard, scaled, and output like any typeface. Some contemporary ornaments are modular systems designed to combine into larger patterns and configurations, allowing the graphic designer to invent new arrangements out of given pieces. Themed collections of icons and illustrations are also available as digital fonts.



SPEAKUP, designed by Supisa Wattanasansanee/Cadson Demak, 2008. Distributed by T26.



TYPOGRAPHIC ORNAMENTS Fry and Steele, London, 1794. Collection of Jan Tholenaar, Reinoud Tholenaar, and Saskia Ottenhoff-Tholenaar.



RESTRAINT Ornaments, 2007. Design: Marian Bantjes.



DANCE INK MAGAZINE Design. Abbott Miller, 1996. The designer repeated a single ornament from the font Whirligigs, designed by Zuzana Licko in 1994, to create an ethereal veil of ink. Whirligigs are modular units that fit together to create an infinite variety of patterns.



WHIRLIGIGS, designed by Zuzana Licko, Emigre, 1994.

GESCHAD. FANTAISIE KAPITALEN

UIT DE

LETTERGIETERIJ VAN JOH. ENSCHEDÉ EN ZONEN TE HAARLEM

Nº 5170. Op 11 Augustijn.

HAARLEM

Nº 5168. Op 11 Augustijn.

ITALIE

Nº 5031. Op 102 Punten.

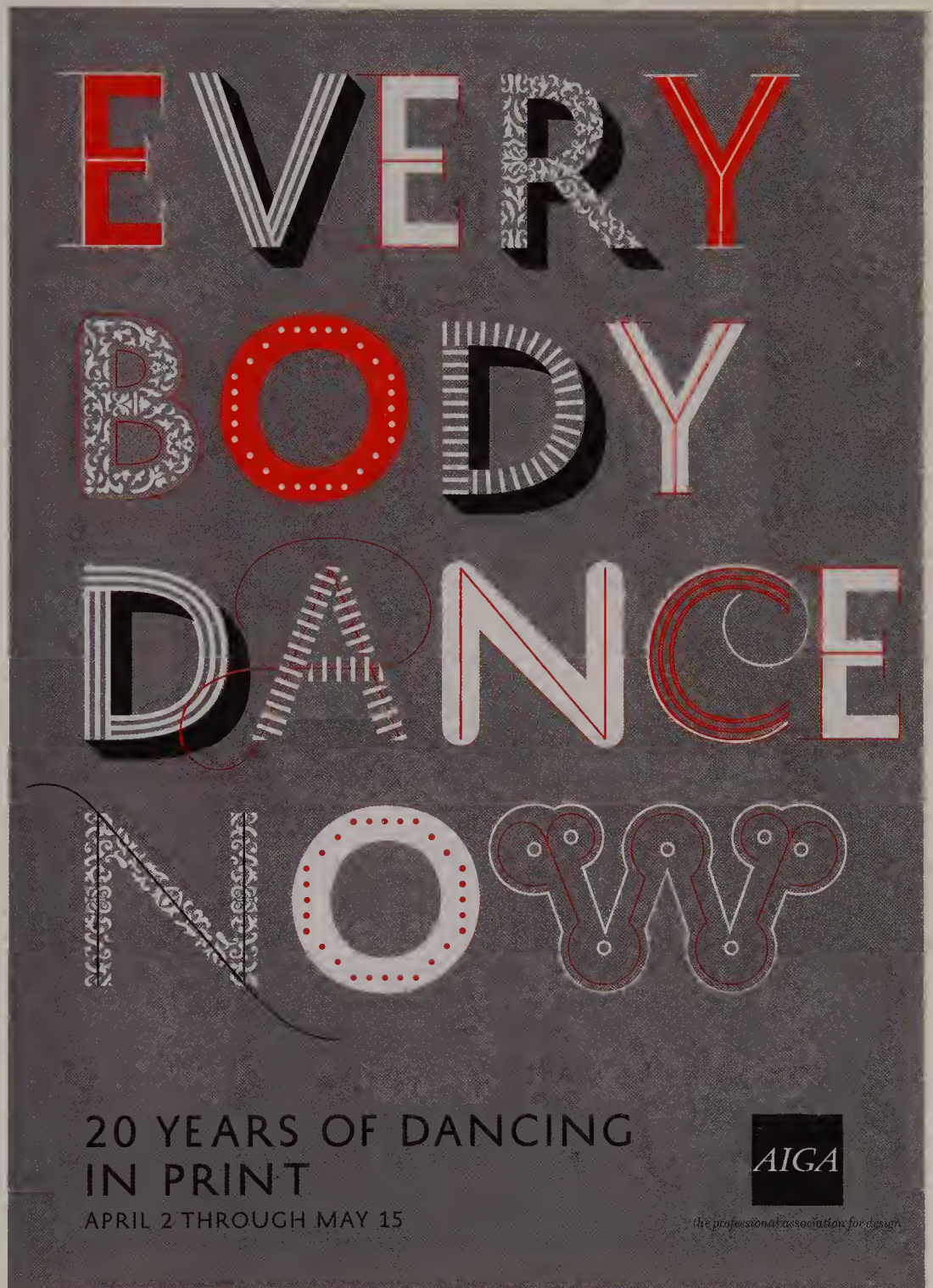
GRAFT

Nº 5040. Op 10½ Augustijn.

MARS

Pl. V. Bl. 129.

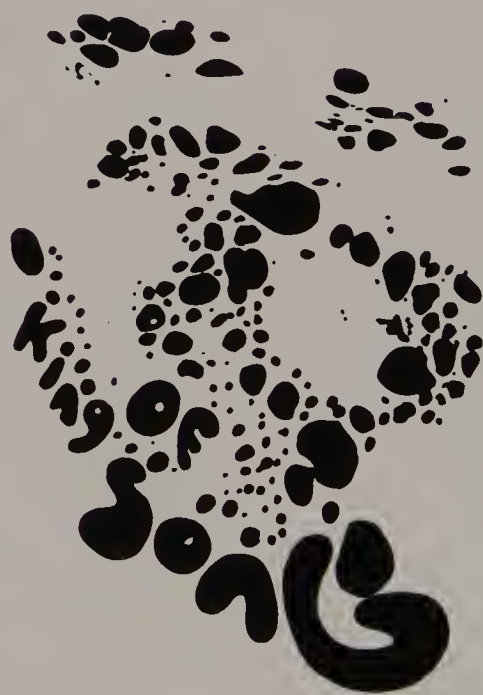
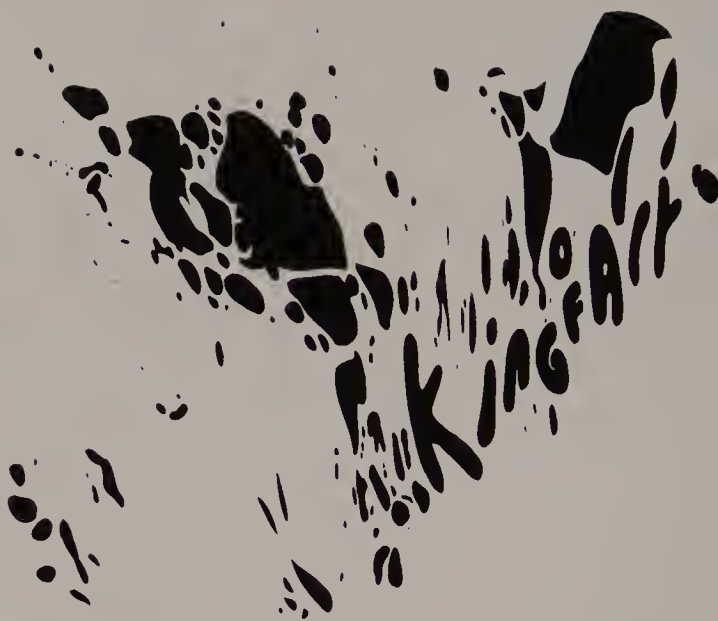
FANTAISIE KAPITALEN Type specimen, 1897. Design: Joh. Enchedé & Zohnen. Collection of Jan Tholenaar, Reinoud Tholenaar, and Saskia Ottenhoff-Tholenaar.

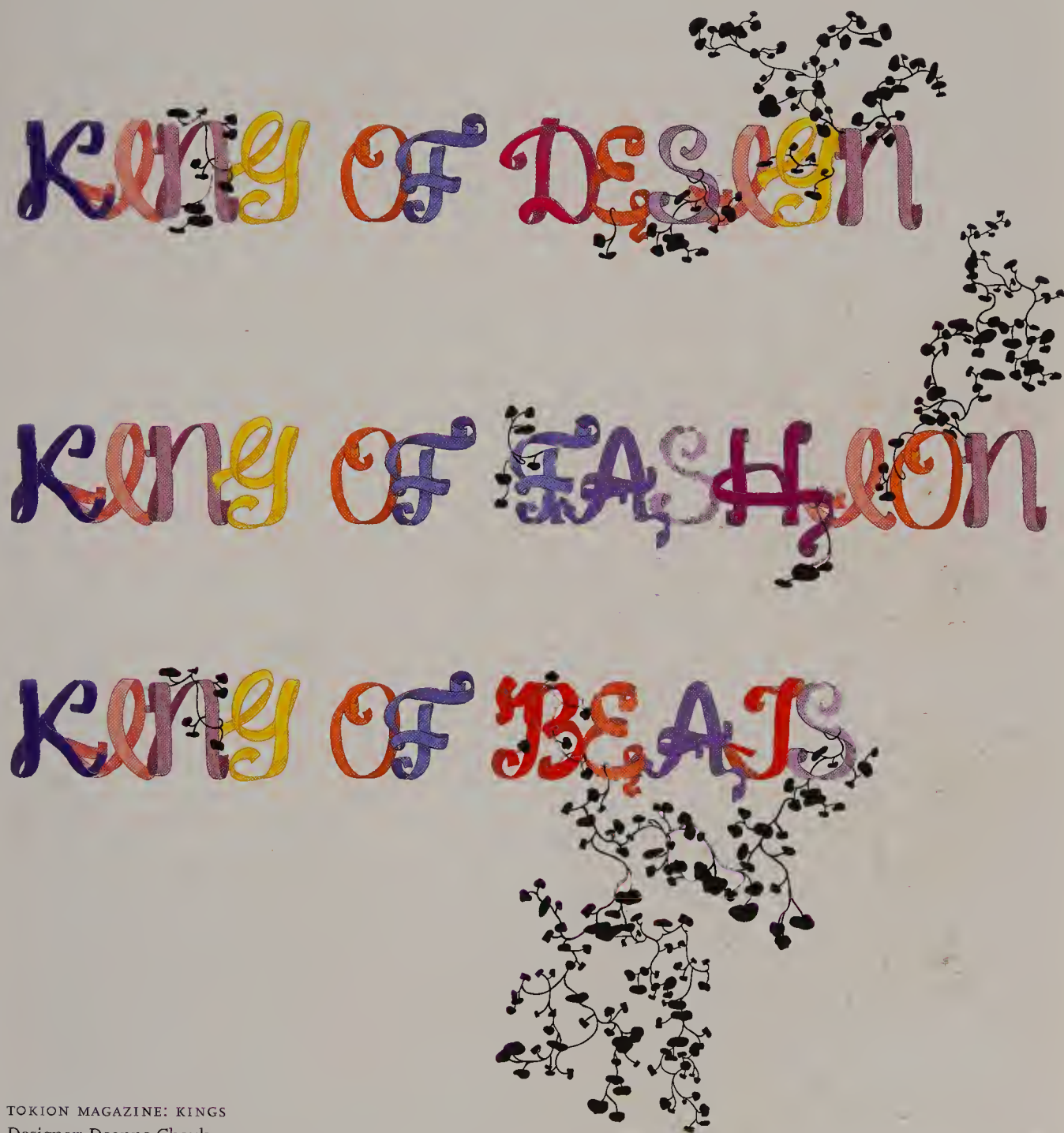


EVERYBODY DANCE NOW Postcard, 2009. Design: Abbott Miller, Kristen Spilman, Jeremy Hoffman/Pentagram. Peter Bilak's typeface *History*, designed in 2008, consists of numerous decorative and structural elements that can be layered into distinctive combinations.

LETTERING

Creating letters by hand allows graphic artists to integrate imagery and text, making design and illustration into fluidly integrated practices. Lettering can emulate existing typefaces or derive from the artist's own drawing or writing style. Designers create lettering by hand and with software, often combining diverse techniques.





TOKION MAGAZINE: KINGS
Designer: Deanne Cheuk,
2002–2003. These magazine
headlines combine drawing and
painting with digital techniques.



THE LOCUST (LEFT) and MELT BANANA (RIGHT) Screenprint posters, 2002. Designer: Nolen Strals. *Hand lettering is a vibrant force in graphic design, as seen in these music posters. Lettering is the basis of many digital typefaces, but nothing is quite as potent as the real thing.*

MONOZINE PRESENTS

MELT BANANA

WITH

STARS

OF THE DOGON
AND DOUBLE
DAGGER

OT TO
BAR

ALL
AGES
SAT
NOV
16



めると
はなな

すた-ず
あぶ+ッ
ちこ-ッ

ふあず

たふ3
て77-

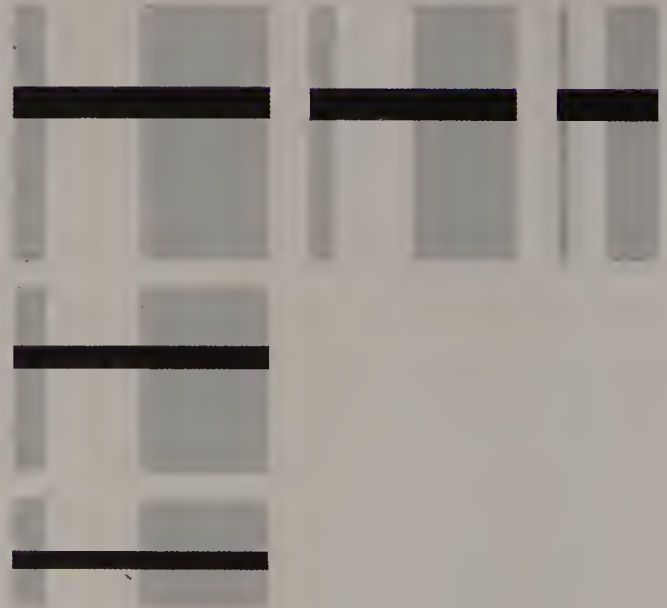
YOU DON'T LOVE ME YOU JUST LOVE MY DINO STYLE

TICKETS: MISSIONMEDIA.NET
WWW.MONOZINE.COM

POSTER: THOMAS STRALS • T-SHIRTS: TIGER • TIGERS © RETNAHL.COM

LOGOTYPES AND BRANDING

A *logotype* uses typography or lettering to depict the name or initials of an organization in a memorable way. Whereas some trademarks consist of an abstract symbol or a pictorial icon, a logotype uses words and letters to create a distinctive visual image. Logotypes can be built with existing typefaces or with custom-drawn letterforms. A logotype is part of an overall visual brand, which the designer conceives as a “language” that lives (and changes) in various circumstances. A complete visual identity can consist of colors, patterns, icons, signage components, and a selection of typefaces. Sometimes a logotype becomes the basis for the design of a complete typeface. Many type designers collaborate with graphic designers to create typefaces that are unique to a given client.



HÜBNER Identity program, 1998. Design: Jochen Stankowski. *This identity for an engineering firm is built around the H, whose proportions change in different contexts.*

STADSSCHOUWBURG UTRECHT



UTRECHT CITY THEATER

Identity, 2009. Design:

Edenspiekermann.

This ambitious visual identity program uses custom letterforms based on the typeface Agenda.

The letters in the custom typeface are designed to split apart into elements that can be mirrored, layered, flipped, and animated for a variety of applications, including signage, posters, printed matter, and web communications.



EL BANCO DE UNO Visual branding, 2007. Agency: Saffron.
Identity design: Joshua Distler, Mike Abbink, Gabor Schreier,
Virginia Sardón. Custom typeface design: Mike Abbink, Paul van
der Laan. *This elaborate identity program for a Mexican bank uses
a custom typeface whose blocky forms are inspired by Mayan glyphs.*



ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
0123456789

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
0123456789



TAKE
BAKE
SLICE & SAVOR
SMILE
ORGANIC

NEW FRENCH BAKERY Visual branding, 2009. Design: Duffy & Partners. A logotype is part of a larger graphic language. Duffy & Partners develop logotypes in concert with a rich range of elements, including colors, patterns, and typefaces. The designers use techniques such as outlining, layering, and framing to create depth, detail, and the sense of a human touch. These elements work together to express the personality of the brand.

During the early years of the World Wide Web, designers were forced to work within the narrow range of typefaces commonly installed on the computers of their end users. Since then, several techniques have emerged for embedding fonts within web content or for delivering fonts to end users when they visit a site. In one approach, specially formatted fonts are hosted on a third-party server and then downloaded by users; designers pay a fee for the service. Another approach implements the @font-face rule in CSS, which can download any kind of digital font hosted on a server; only typefaces licensed for this use can be accessed legally via @font-face.



FONT EMBEDDING Screen shot, detail, 2009. Typefaces: Greta and Fedra, designed by Peter Bilak/Typotheque. In 2009, the digital type foundry Typotheque launched a pioneering service that allows designers to display Typotheque fonts on any website in exchange for a one-time license fee. Typotheque's Open Type fonts, which support global languages including Arabic and Hindi, are hosted by Typotheque and accessed using the CSS @font-face rule.

WEB FONTS 1.0

Verdana was designed by the legendary typographer *Matthew Carter* in 1996 for digital display. Verdana has a large x-height, simple curves, open forms, and loose spacing.

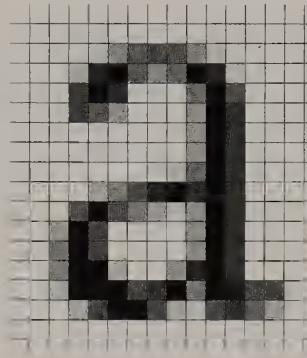
Georgia is a serif screen face built with sturdy strokes, simple curves, open counters, and generous spacing. Designed by Matthew Carter in 1996 for Microsoft, Georgia is widely used on the web.

VERDANA AND GEORGIA, released in 1996 by Microsoft, were designed specifically for the web. Prior to the rise of font embedding, these were among a handful of typefaces that could be reliably used online.

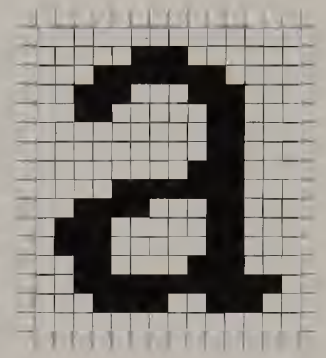


BOBULATE Website, 2009. Designed by Jason Santa Maria for Liz Danzico. Typeface: Skolar, designed by David Brezina/Typetogether. This site design uses Typekit, a third-party service that delivers fonts to end users when they visit a site. Typekit deters piracy by obscuring the origins of the font. Designers or site owners pay a subscription fee to the service.

Anti-aliasing creates the appearance of smooth curves on screen by changing the brightness of the pixels or sub-pixels along the edges of each letterform. Photoshop and other software packages allow designers to select strong or weak anti-aliasing. When displayed at very small sizes, strongly anti-aliased type can look blurry. It also increases the number of colors in an image file.



ANTI-ALIASED LETTER



BITMAPPED LETTER

smooth

ANTI-ALIASED TYPE: SMOOTH SETTING *(simulated screen capture)*

none

ANTI-ALIASING DISABLED: NONE SETTING *(simulated screen capture)*



LETTERSCAPES Website, 2002.

Design: Peter Cho. *Simple bitmapped letters are animated in three-dimensional space.*

BITMAP TYPEFACES

Bitmap typefaces are built out of the *pixels* (picture elements) that structure a screen display or other output device. While a PostScript letter consists of a vector outline, a true bitmap character contains a fixed number of rectilinear units that are displayed either on or off. True bitmap characters are used on devices such as cash registers, signboard displays, and various small-scale screens.

Most contemporary bitmap typefaces are not true bitmaps. They are drawn as outlines on a grid and then output as PostScript, TrueType, or OpenType fonts. Thus they can be easily used with any standard layout software. Many designers like to exploit the visible geometry of pixelated characters.



LO-RES NARRROW, designed by Zuzana Licko, Emigre. Released in 2001, the Lo-Res type family is a collection of outline (PostScript) fonts based on bitmap designs created by Licko in 1985. Lo-Res Narrow consists of a series of different sizes, each one constructed with a one-pixel stroke weight. Thus Lo-ResTwentyEight Narrow has dramatically lighter and tighter forms than Lo-ResNine Narrow, which gets blockier as it is enlarged. Designed for display on screen at low resolutions, a bitmap font should be used at its root size or at integer multiples of that size. (Enlarge 9-pixel type to 18, 27, 36, and so on).

BOEKHANDEL NIJHOF & LEE
STAALSTRAAT 13-A
1011 JK AMSTERDAM

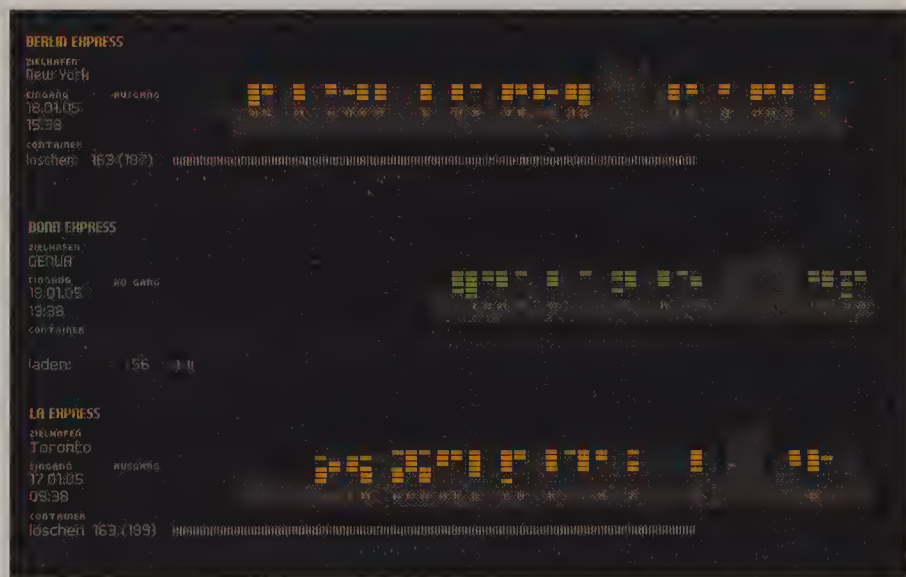
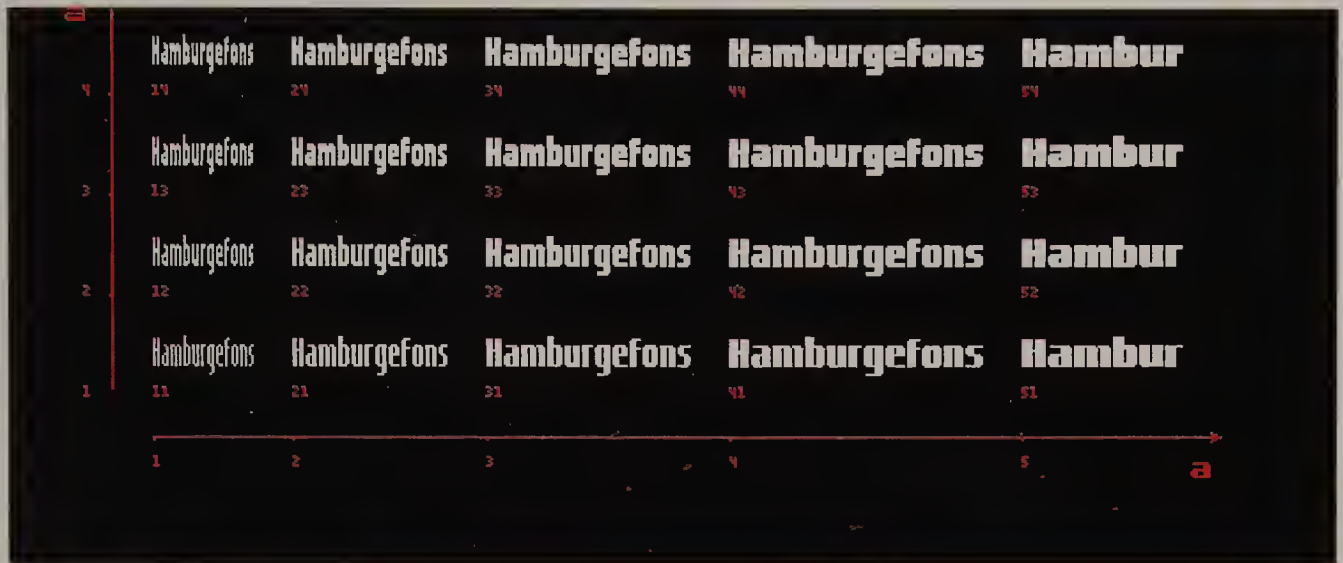
22/05/03 13:12 01
000000 #0094 BED.1

VERZENDKOST.	42.50
TYPOGRAFIE	6.00
TYPOGRAFIE	16.50
TYPOGRAFIE	19.50
TYPOGRAFIE	33.95
TYPOGRAFIE	55.35
TYPOGRAFIE	32.00
TYPOGRAFIE	59.00
TYPOGRAFIE	40.00
TYPOGRAFIE	50.40
TYPOGRAFIE	47.25
TYPOGRAFIE	80.00
TYPOGRAFIE	37.70
SUBTOTAL	520.15
BTW LAAG	29.44

STUKS 130
CREDIT 520.15

BOEK ANTIQUARIAAT
TEL:020-6203980
FAX:020-6393294

NIJHOF & LEE Receipt, 2003. This cash register receipt, printed with a bitmap font, is from a design and typography bookstore in Amsterdam.



ELEMENTAR, designed by Gustavo Ferreira in 2009 and distributed by Typotheque. Elementar is a bitmap type family consisting of dozens of weights and styles made by manipulating common parameters such as height, width, and the degree of contrast between horizontal and vertical elements. Elementar is suitable for print, screen, and interfaces. It is inspired by Adrian Frutiger's Univers type family.

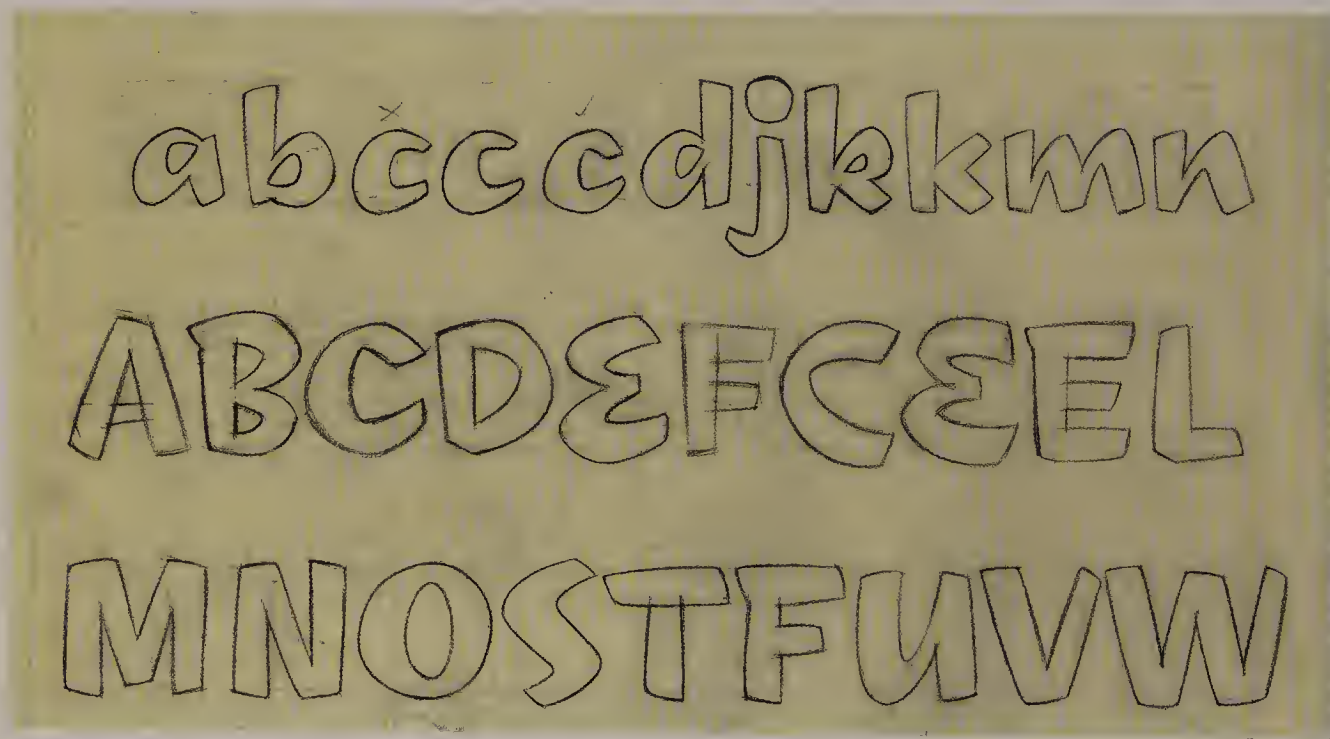
Fontlab and other applications allow designers to create functional fonts that work seamlessly with standard software programs such as InDesign and Photoshop.

The first step in designing a typeface is to define a basic concept. Will the letters be serif or sans serif? Will they be modular or organic? Will you construct them geometrically or base them on handwriting? Will you use them for display or for text? Will you work with historic source material or invent the characters more or less from scratch?

The next step is to create drawings. Some designers start with pencil before working digitally, while others build their letterforms directly with font

design software. Begin by drawing a few core letters, such as *o*, *u*, *h*, and *n*, building curves, lines, and shapes that will reappear throughout the font. All the letters in a typeface are distinct from each other, yet they share many attributes, such as x-height, line weight, stress, and a common vocabulary of forms and proportions.

You can control the spacing of the typeface by adding blank areas next to each character as well as creating kerning pairs that determine the distance between particular characters. Producing a complete typeface is an enormous task. However, for people with a knack for drawing letterforms, the process is hugely rewarding.



Castaways

CASTAWAYS Drawing and finished type, 2001. Art and type direction: Andy Cruz. Typeface design: Ken Barber/House Industries. Font engineering: Rich Roat. *House Industries* is a digital type foundry that creates original typefaces inspired by popular culture and design history. Designer Ken Barber makes pencil drawings by hand and then digitizes the outlines. *Castaways* is from a series of typefaces based on commercial signs from Las Vegas. The shapes of the letters recall the handpainted strokes made by traditional sign painters and lettering artists.

MERCURY BOLD Page proof and screen shot, 2003. Design: Jonathan Hoefler/Hoefler & Frere-Jones. Mercury is a typeface designed for modern newspapers, whose production demands fast, high-volume printing on cheap paper. The typeface's bullet-proof letterforms feature chunky serifs and sturdy upright strokes. The notes marked on the proof below comment on everything from the width or weight of a letter to the size and shape of a serif. Many such proofs are made during the design process. In a digital typeface, each letterform consists of a series of curves and lines controlled by points. In a large type family, different weights and widths can be made automatically by interpolating between extremes such as light and heavy or narrow and wide. The designer then adjusts each variant to ensure legibility and visual consistency.



JH 12/3/3

the hairline flare is a little too apparent @ small sizes.

MercuryNews-HTF1-BoldSC.10/jmr 11/26/03 JMR 1

A B C D E F

G H I J K L M

N O P Q R S

T U V W X Y Z

the hairline flare is a little too apparent @ small sizes.

← a little

wide!

See how E adjustment affects the F.

heavy!

you know, our program text has a real shortage of Js appearing in the middle of words. Hm!

heavy, thinks, but let's see more form.

thicker

maybe a little narrow!

see note on S

← 2 LOTS

the whole PERFECT

aligned? yes, as in cap R. (well done!)

(I keep thinking)

the tail should descend further

to widen

heavy? not sure...

thin out a little from the inside

emphasize broke a little more: X → X

RGB tight?

See if you can make the lower counter a bit smaller, and the upper one a bit larger. Subtly, though - this is a VERT (small more).

EXERCISE: MODULAR LETTERFORMS

Create a prototype for a bitmap typeface by designing letters on a grid of squares or a grid of dots. Substitute the curves and diagonals of traditional letterforms with gridded and rectilinear elements. Avoid making detailed “staircases,” which are just curves and diagonals in disguise. This exercise looks back to the 1910s and 1920s, when avant-garde designers made experimental typefaces out of simple geometric parts. The project also speaks to the structure of digital technologies, from cash register receipts and LED signs to on-screen font display, showing that a typeface is a system of elements.



Wendy Neese



Brendon McClean

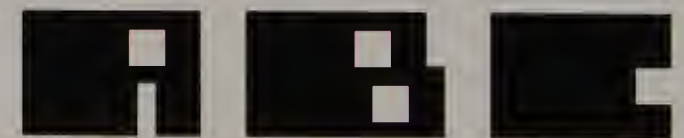


Bruce Willen



James Alvarez

*Examples of student work from
Maryland Institute College of Art*



Joey Potts

READ

Becky Slogeris

PUSH

Bryan Connor

LOOK

Virginia Sasser

SPAM

Julia Kim

COUP

Michelle Ghiotti

FONT FORMATS

Where do fonts come from, and why are there so many different formats? Some come loaded with your computer's operating system, while others are bundled with software packages. A few of these widely distributed typefaces are of the highest quality, such as Adobe Garamond Pro and Hoefler Text, while others (including *Comic Sans*, *Apple Chancery*, and Papyrus) are reviled by design snobs everywhere.

If you want to expand your vocabulary beyond this familiar fare, you will need to purchase fonts from digital type foundries. These range from large establishments like Adobe and FontShop, which license thousands of different typefaces, to independent producers that distribute just a few, such as Underware in the Netherlands or Jeremy Tankard Typography in the U.K. You can also learn to make your own fonts as well as find fonts that are distributed for free online.

The different font formats reflect technical innovations and business arrangements developed over time. Older font formats are still generally usable on modern operating systems.

POSTSCRIPT/TYPE 1 was developed for desktop computer systems in the 1980s by Adobe. Type 1 fonts are output using the PostScript programming language, created for generating high-resolution images on paper or film. A Type 1 font consists of two files: a screen font and a printer font. You must install both files in order to fully use these fonts.

TRUETYPE is a later font format, created by Apple and Microsoft for use with their operating systems. TrueType fonts are easier to install than Type 1 fonts because they consist of a single font file rather than two.

OPENTYPE, a format developed by Adobe, works on multiple platforms. Each file supports up to 65,000 characters, allowing multiple styles and character variations to be contained in a single font file. In a TrueType or Type 1 font, small capitals, alternate ligatures, and other special characters must be contained in separate font files (sometimes labelled "Expert"); in an OpenType font they are part of the main font. These expanded character sets can also include accented letters and other special glyphs needed for typesetting a variety of languages. OpenType fonts with expanded character sets are commonly labeled "Pro." OpenType fonts also automatically adjust the position of hyphens, brackets, and parentheses for letters set in all-caps.

{[(HALF-BAKED?)]}

SCALA, *PostScript/Type 1 font format*

{[(HALF-BAKED?)]}

SCALA PRO, *OpenType font format*

SMALL CAPS AND OLD-STYLE
NUMERALS, WHERE ARE YOU
HIDING?

NERD ALERT: Access small caps and numerals quickly through the Type>OpenType options menu or other OpenType layout tool in your design software. Small caps will not appear as a style variant in the Font menu, because OpenType treats them as part of the main font. With any font, you can view all the special characters through the Type and Tables>Glyphs menu. You will find many unexpected elements, including swashes, ligatures, ornaments, fractions, and more. Double click a glyph to insert it into your text frame.

£ § ¥ ¼ ½ ¾ É Ê Ì Å
Ã Â Á Ý Ø å ë ð ñ ò þ
ÿ Ạ ạ ẽ ę ğ ğ dž z ž ž
Ŏ Ğ Ğ į ĺ ĩ † ‡ ➤ ➤

SCALA PRO, *OpenType font, designed by Martin Majoor, 2005. Scala Pro has numerous special characters for typesetting diverse European languages. You can access these characters using the Glyphs palette in InDesign.*

SAVE YOURSELF SOME EMBARRASSMENT AND LEARN TO USE THESE COMMONLY ABUSED TERMS CORRECTLY.



typeface or font?

A *typeface* is the design of the letterforms; a *font* is the delivery mechanism. In metal type, the design is embodied in the punches from which molds are made. A font consists of the cast metal printing types. In digital systems, the typeface is the visual design, while the font is the software that allows you to install, access, and output the design. A single typeface might be available in several font formats. In part because the design of digital typefaces and the production of fonts are so fluidly linked today, most people use the terms interchangeably. Type nerds insist, however, on using them precisely.



character or glyph?

Type designers distinguish *characters* from *glyphs* in order to comply with Unicode, an international system for identifying all of the world's recognized writing systems. Only a symbol with a unique function is considered a character and is thus assigned a code point in Unicode. A single character, such as a lowercase *a*, can be embodied by several different glyphs (*a*, *a*, *A*). Each glyph is a specific expression of a given character.



Roman or roman?

The Roman Empire is a proper noun and thus is capitalized, but we identify roman letterforms, like italic ones, in lowercase. The name of the Latin alphabet is capitalized.

Who is the user of a typeface? In the end, the user is the reader. But before a set of letters can find their way onto the cover of a book or the back of a cereal box, they must pass through the hands of another user: the graphic designer.

Digital fonts are easy to copy, alter, and distribute, but when you purchase a font, you accept an *end user license agreement* (EULA) that limits how you can use it. Intellectual property law in the United States protects the font as a piece of software (a unique set of vector points), but it does not protect the visual design of the typeface. Thus it is a violation of standard EULAs to copy a digital font and share it with other people (your friends, your clients, or your Uncle Bob). It is also illegal to open a font file in FontLab, add new glyphs or alter some of its characters, and save the font under a new name or under its trademarked name. In addition to having economic concerns, typeface designers worry about their work being corrupted as users edit their fonts and then share them with other people.

Most EULAs do allow you to alter the outlines of a font for use in a logo or headline, however, as long as you do not alter the software itself. It is also legal to create new digital versions of printed type specimens. For example, you could print out an alphabet in Helvetica, redraw the letters, digitize them with font design software, and release your own bespoke edition of Helvetica. If nothing else, this laborious exercise would teach you the value of a well-designed typeface. A broadly usable typeface includes numerous weights, styles, and special characters as well as a strong underlying design. Fonts are expensive because they are carefully crafted products.

FREE FONTS

Most of the FREE FONTS found on the Internet have poor spacing and incomplete character sets. Many are *stolen property* distributed without CONSENT. The fonts displayed here, however, are freely given by their creators. A typeface comes to life and finds a voice as people begin to use it.

FONTIN, designed by Jos Buivenga/Ex Ljbris, 2004

DESIGNERS have long sought to CONTROL the behavior of users, clients, manufacturers, retailers, and the press. How will a work be interpreted? Will it survive over time in its DESIRED STATE of completion? An architect succeeds when the occupants of his house behave ACCORDING TO PLAN. The rise of online tools has challenged designers' sense of CONTROL in every discipline: the user has become a designer.

AUDIMAT, designed by Jack Usine/SMeltery.net, 2003

Some fonts are *distributed freely* in order to preserve UNFAMILIAR traditions. Disseminating a historic revival at no cost to users encourages a broader understanding of history. Reviving typefaces is a DEEP-ROOTED practice. Why should one creator *claim ownership* of another's work? Who controls the past?

ANTYKWA POLTAWSKIEGO, designed by Adam Półtawski, 1920s–1930s; digitized by Janusz Marian Nowacki, 1996

SOME FREE FONTS are produced for *underserved linguistic communities* for whom few typefaces are available. Still others are created by people who want to participate in the *open source movement*. The OFL (Open Font License) permits users to alter a typeface and contribute to its ongoing evolution.

GENTIUM Open Font License, designed by Victor Gaultney, 2001

TO PARTICIPATE IN a viable, diverse *ecology of content* (journalism, design, art, typography, and more), *everyone has to pay*. BUT PERHAPS everyone shouldn't have to *pay for everything*. If some resources are willingly given away, the result is a RICHER WORLD.

OFL SORTS MILL GOUDY, revival of Frederic W. Goudy's Goudy Old Style, 1916, designed by Barry Schwartz, 2010; distributed by the League of Moveable Type

EVERY OBJECT IN THE WORLD CAN PASS FROM A

LEAGUE GOTHIC, designed by the League of Moveable Type, 2009; revival of Morris Fuller Benton's

CLOSED, SILENT EXISTENCE TO AN ORAL STATE,

ALTERNATE GOTHIC NO.1., released by American Type Founders Company (ATF) in 1903.

OPEN TO APPROPRIATION BY SOCIETY, FOR THERE

DOWNCOME, designed by Eduardo Recife/ Misprinted Type, 2002

IS NO LAW, WHETHER NATURAL OR NOT, WHICH

FORBIDS TALKING ABOUT **THINGS**. A TREE IS A

SHORTCUT, designed by Eduardo Recife, 2003

TREE. YES, OF COURSE. BUT A TREE AS EXPRESSED BY

Minou Drouet
was a French
child poet
and composer
widely derided
by intellectuals
in the 1950s.

MINOU DROUET IS NO LONGER QUITE A TREE, IT IS A

DIRTY EGO, designed by Eduardo Recife, 2001

TREE WHICH IS DECORATED, ADAPTED TO A CERTAIN

TYPE OF CONSUMPTION, **LADEN** WITH LITERARY SELF-

MISPROJECT, designed by Eduardo Recife, 2001

INDULGENCE, REVOLT, IMAGES, IN SHORT WITH A TYPE

OF SOCIAL USAGE WHICH IS ADDED TO PURE MATTER.

TEXT: Roland Barthes, "Myth Today," 1957; translated by Annette Lavers.





{TEXT}

TEXT

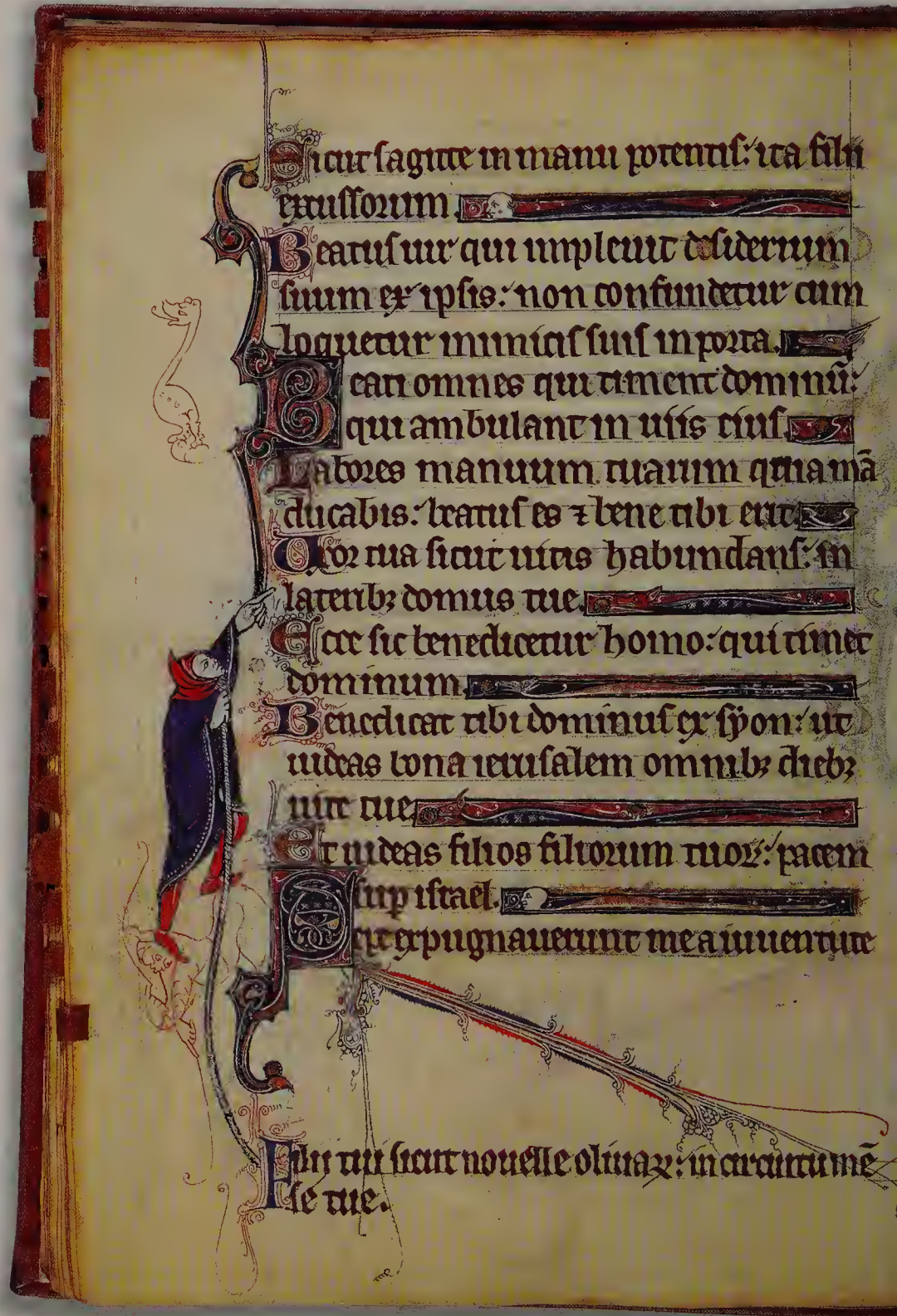
LETTERS GATHER INTO WORDS, WORDS BUILD INTO SENTENCES. In typography, “text” is defined as an ongoing sequence of words, distinct from shorter headlines or captions. The main block is often called the “body,” comprising the principal mass of content. Also known as “running text,” it can flow from one page, column, or box to another. Text can be viewed as a thing—a sound and sturdy object—or a fluid poured into the containers of page or screen. Text can be solid or liquid, body or blood.

As body, text has more integrity and wholeness than the elements that surround it, from pictures, captions, and page numbers to banners, buttons, and menus. Designers generally treat a body of text consistently, letting it appear as a coherent substance that is distributed across the spaces of a document. In digital media, long texts are typically broken into chunks that can be accessed by search engines or hypertext links. Contemporary designers and writers produce content for various contexts, from the pages of print to an array of software environments, screen conditions, and digital devices, each posing its own limits and opportunities.

Designers provide ways into—and out of—the flood of words by breaking up text into pieces and offering shortcuts and alternate routes through masses of information. From a simple indent (signaling the entrance to a new idea) to a [highlighted link](#) (announcing a jump to another location), typography helps readers navigate the flow of content. The user could be searching for a specific piece of data or struggling to quickly process a volume of content in order to extract elements for immediate use. Although many books define the purpose of typography as enhancing the readability of the written word, one of design’s most humane functions is, in actuality, to help readers *avoid* reading.

nobilis. Regode
iam:que spaciola
diger. filias eoz
nras illis dabim
tantu bonu. Si ci
nostros. rium ge
bandia eoz 7 pecor
nostra erit. Tanti
et habitates siml.
Assensiq; lnt om
maribz. Et ecce di
mus vulneru dol
filij iacob. timon
dñs. ingressi sunt
interfectisq; omni
schem parit in cau
de domo schem. I
egressis. irruerut li
iacob. 7 depopula
onem supri: que
asmos. cunctaq; i
mibz 7 i agris exal.
et uxores duxerut captiuas. I
perpetrans audader: iacob i
timon et leui. Turbatis in:
sum fecistis me chananeis 7
habitantibus in terra huius. Gen. 34

PSALTER-HOURS English manuscript, thirteenth century. Walters Ms. W.102, fol. 33v. Collection of the Walters Art Museum, Baltimore. The monk is climbing up the side of the page to replace a piece of faulty text with the corrected line in the bottom margin.



ERRORS AND OWNERSHIP

Typography helped seal the literary notion of “the text” as a complete, original work, a stable body of ideas expressed in an essential form. Before the invention of printing, handwritten documents were riddled with errors. Copies were copied from copies, each with its own glitches and gaps. Scribes devised inventive ways to insert missing lines into manuscripts in order to salvage and repair these laboriously crafted objects.

Printing with movable type was the first system of mass production, replacing the hand-copied manuscript. As in other forms of mass production, the cost of manufacturing (setting type, insuring its correctness, and running a press) drops for each unit as the size of the print run increases. Labor and capital are invested in tooling and preparing the technology, rather than in making the individual unit. The printing system allows editors and authors to correct a work as it passes from handwritten manuscript to typographic galley. “Proofs” are test copies made before final production begins. The proofreader’s craft ensures the faithfulness of the printed text to the author’s handwritten original.

Yet even the text that has passed through the castle gates of print is inconstant. Each edition of a book represents one fossil record of a text, a record that changes every time the work is translated, quoted, revised, interpreted, or taught. Since the rise of digital tools for writing and publishing, manuscript originals have all but vanished. ~~Electronic redlining is replacing the hieroglyphics of the editor.~~ Online texts can be downloaded by users and reformatted, repurposed, and recombined.

Print helped establish the figure of the author as the owner of a text, and copyright laws were written in the early eighteenth century to protect the author’s rights to this property. The digital age is riven by battles between those who argue, on the one hand, for the fundamental liberty of data and ideas, and those who hope to protect—sometimes indefinitely—the investment made in publishing and authoring content.

A classic typographic page emphasizes the completeness and closure of a work, its authority as a finished product. Alternative design strategies in the twentieth and twenty-first centuries reflect the contested nature of authorship by revealing the openness of texts to the flow of information and the corrosiveness of history.

Marshall McLuhan,
The Gutenberg Galaxy
(Toronto: University of
Toronto Press, 1962).

On the future of
intellectual property, see
Lawrence Lessig, *Free
Culture: How Big Media
Uses Technology and the Law
to Lock Down Culture and
Control Creativity* (New
York: Penguin, 2004).

Typography tended to alter language from a means of perception and exploration to a portable commodity. —MARSHALL MCLUHAN, 1962

THE TELEPHONE BOOK:
TECHNOLOGY, SCHIZO-
PHRENIA, ELECTRIC SPEECH
Book, 1989. Designer:
Richard Eckersley. Author:
Avital Ronell. Compositor:
Michael Jensen. Publisher:
University of Nebraska Press.
Photograph: Dan Meyers.
*This book, a philosophical study
of writing as a material
technology, uses typography
to emphasize the rhetorical
argument of the text. This
spread, for example, is fractured
by typographic "rivers," spaces
that connect vertically through
the page. Rivers violate the
even, unified texture that is a
sacred goal within traditional
typographic design.*

"How indeed could I aim my argument at some singular destination, at one or another among you whose proper name I might for example know? And then, is knowing a proper name tantamount to knowing someone?" (MC, 2). Derrida demonstrates for his part that the most general structure of the mark participates in a speech destined in advance to addressees (*destinataires*) who are not easily determinable or who, as far as any possible calculation is concerned, in any case command a great reserve of indetermination. This involves a language operating as a system of marks: "Language, however, is only one among those systems of marks that claim this curious tendency as their property: they simultaneously incline towards increasing the reserves of random indetermination as well as the capacity for coding and over-coding or, in other words, for control and self-regulation" (MC, 2). We begin to discern how the simultaneity of determining, coding, and even supercoding forms a deep cooperation with the inclination in language toward anticoding, or what Derrida sees as the inflated reserves of random indeterminateness. This double-edged coding, we must remember, regards, as it were, nonschizophrenic language, if such a thing there be. "Such competition between randomness and code disrupts the very systematicity of the system while it also, however, regulates the restless, unstable interplay of the system. Whatever its singularity in this respect, the linguistic system of these traces or marks would merely be, it seems to me, just a particular example of the law of destabilization" (MC, 2). It may be useful to note that Derrida understands language in terms primarily of traces and marks, where Language concerns signs in the first place, and in particular the broken rapport of that which is signifying to what ostensibly lies hidden behind it, or the disconnection between signs and signs or signs and referents. Laing is led to assume the latency of a single, unique, localizable but timid presence—rather than trace or residual mark—from where it could be securely determined who speaks, and to whom. This all too brief excursion into "My Chances," which may unwittingly reproduce the effect and trauma of a chance encounter, means to engage a dialogue between the question of address raised by Laing and the ones raised in turn by Derrida. For it now appears that Laing places his bets on the sustained systematicity of the system which Derrida shows always already to fall under a law of destabilization.⁸⁹ Moreover, Derrida does not suggest lan-

guage to be so
seems to want
translation of
light of an aud
been saying as
make contact v
stract or terror
touch. In fact
that I throw, c
come across to
and Laing had
part, that, thro
whose destination
the case with their
muteness was
guage were arr
release-controls
structurally ma
ratus. The Other
fully retrievable
is there to be given,
agement begins wit
or alive, traversing
fort slashing into the
as self or Other
telephone to raise
the telephone speak
sound waves: "she"
tem as though it was
be hallucinated" (D
"Anything she want
one time. Reality dic
or fear. Every wish
and every dread
tom way. Thus
203). He reads
The case history
weed garden. Is
taneity of omn

SPACING

Design is as much an act of spacing as an act of marking. The typographer's art concerns not only the positive grain of letterforms, but the negative gaps between and around them. In letterpress printing, every space is constructed by a physical object, a blank piece of metal or wood with no raised image. The faceless slugs of lead and slivers of copper inserted as spaces between words or letters are as physical as the relief characters around them. Thin strips of lead (called "leading") divide the horizontal lines of type; wider blocks of "furniture" hold the margins of the page.

Although we take the breaks between words for granted, spoken language is perceived as a continuous flow, with no audible gaps. Spacing has become crucial, however, to alphabetic writing, which translates the sounds of speech into multiple characters. Spaces were introduced after the invention of the Greek alphabet to make words intelligible as distinct units. Try reading a line of text without spacing to see how important it has become.

With the invention of typography, spacing and punctuation ossified from gap and gesture to physical artifact. Punctuation marks, which were used differently from one scribe to another in the manuscript era, became part of the standardized, rule-bound apparatus of the printed page. The communications scholar Walter Ong has shown how printing converted the word into a visual object precisely located in space: "Alphabet letterpress printing, in which each letter was cast on a separate piece of metal, or type,

marked a psychological breakthrough of the first order.... Print situates words in space more relentlessly than writing ever did. Writing moves words from the sound world to the world of visual space, but print locks words into position in this space." Typography made text into a thing, a material object with known dimensions and fixed locations.

Walter Ong, *Orality and Literacy: The Technologizing of the Word* (London and New York: Methuen, 1981). See also Jacques Derrida, *Of Grammatology*, trans. Gayatri Chakravorty Spivak (Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1976).

The French philosopher Jacques Derrida, who devised the theory of deconstruction in the 1960s, wrote that although the alphabet represents sound, it cannot function without silent marks and spaces. Typography manipulates the silent dimensions of the alphabet, employing habits and techniques—such as spacing and punctuation—that are seen but not heard. The Latin alphabet, rather than evolve into a transparent code for recording speech, developed its own visual resources, becoming a more powerful technology as it left behind its connections to the spoken word.

That a speech supposedly alive can lend itself to spacing in its own writing is what relates to its own death. —JACQUES DERRIDA, 1976

LINEARITY

In his essay “From Work to Text,” the French critic Roland Barthes presented two opposing models of writing: the closed, fixed “work” versus the open, unstable “text.” In Barthes’s view, the work is a tidy, neatly packaged object, proofread and copyrighted, made perfect and complete by the art of printing. The text, in contrast, is impossible to contain, operating across a dispersed web of standard plots and received ideas. Barthes pictured the text as “woven entirely with citations, references, echoes, cultural languages (what language is not?), antecedent and contemporary, which cut across and through in a vast stereophony.... The metaphor of the Text is that of the *network*.” Writing in the 1960s and 1970s, Barthes anticipated the Internet as a decentralized web of connections.

Roland Barthes, “From Work to Text,” in *Image/Music/Text*, trans. Stephen Heath (New York: Hill and Wang, 1977), 155–64.

Barthes was describing literature, yet his ideas resonate for typography, the visual manifestation of language. The singular body of the traditional text page has long been supported by the navigational features of the book, from page numbers and headings that mark a reader’s location to such tools as the index, appendix, abstract, footnote, and table of contents. These devices were able to emerge because the typographic book is a fixed sequence of pages, a body lodged in a grid of known coordinates.

All such devices are attacks on linearity, providing means of entrance and escape from the one-way stream of discourse. Whereas talking flows in a single direction, writing occupies space as well as time. Tapping that spatial dimension—and thus liberating readers from the bonds of linearity—is among typography’s most urgent tasks.

Although digital media are commonly celebrated for their potential as nonlinear potential communication, linearity nonetheless thrives in the electronic realm, from the “CNN crawl” that marches along the bottom of the television screen to the ticker-style LED signs that loop through the urban environment. Film titles—the celebrated convergence of typography and cinema—serve to distract the audience from the inescapable tedium of a contractually decreed, top-down disclosure of ownership and authorship. Basic electronic book readers, such as Amazon’s Kindle (2007), provide a highly sequential, predominantly linear experience; flipping back or skipping ahead is more cumbersome in some electronic books than in paper ones.

Linearity dominates many commercial software applications. Word processing programs, for example, treat documents as a linear stream.

A text...is a multi-dimensional space in which a variety of writings, none of them original, blend and clash. —ROLAND BARTHES, 1971

On the linearity of word processing, see Nancy Kaplan, "Blake's Problem and Ours: Some Reflections on the Image and the Word," *Readerly/Writerly Texts*, 3.2 (Spring/Summer 1996), 125. On PowerPoint, see Edward R. Tufte, "The Cognitive Style of PowerPoint," (Cheshire, Conn.: Graphics Press, 2003).

On the aesthetics of the database, see Lev Manovich, *The Language of New Media* (Cambridge: MIT Press, 2002).

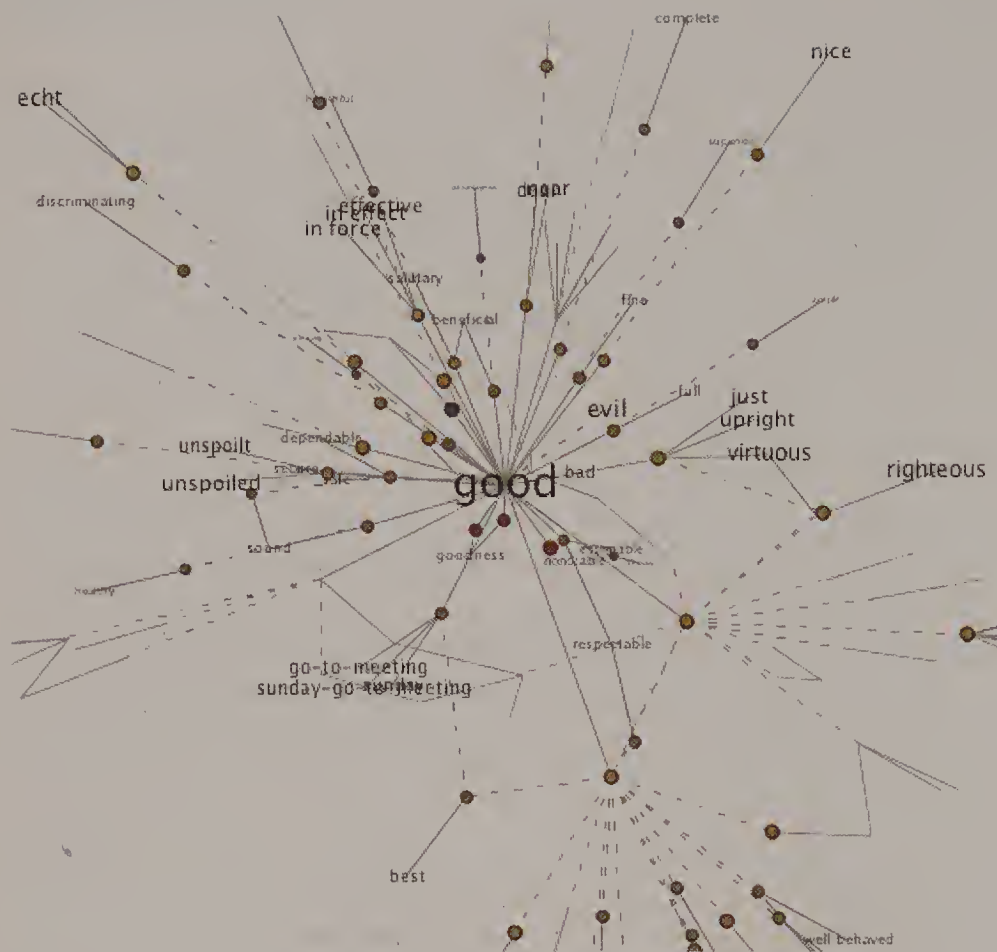
(In contrast, page layout programs such as Quark XPress and Adobe InDesign allow users to work spatially, breaking up text into columns and pages that can be anchored and landmarked.) PowerPoint and other presentation software programs are supposed to illuminate the spoken word by guiding the audience through the linear unfolding of an oral address. Typically, however, PowerPoint enforces the one-way flow of speech rather than alleviating it. While a single sheet of paper could provide a map or summary of an oral presentation, a PowerPoint show drags out in time across numerous screens.

Not all digital media favor linear flow over spatial arrangement, however. The database, one of the defining information structures of our time, is a nonlinear form. Providing readers and writers with a simultaneous menu of options, a database is a system of elements that can be arranged in countless sequences. Page layouts are built on the fly from chunks of information, assembled in response to user feedback. The web is pushing authors, editors, and designers to work inventively with new modes of microcontent (page titles, key words, alt tags) that allow data to be searched, indexed, tagged, or otherwise marked for recall.

Databases are the structure behind electronic games, magazines, and catalogues, genres that create an information *space* rather than a linear *sequence*. Physical stores and libraries are databases of tangible objects found in the built environment. Media critic Lev Manovich has described language itself as a kind of database, an archive of elements from which people assemble the linear utterances of speech. Many design projects call for the emphasis of space over sequence, system over utterance, simultaneous structure over linear narrative. Contemporary design often combines aspects of architecture, typography, film, wayfinding, branding, and other modes of address. By dramatizing the spatial quality of a project, designers can foster understanding of complex documents or environments.

The history of typography is marked by the increasingly sophisticated use of space. In the digital age, where characters are accessed by keystroke and mouse, not gathered from heavy drawers of manufactured units, space has become more liquid than concrete, and typography has evolved from a stable body of objects to a flexible system of attributes.

Database and narrative are natural enemies. Competing for the same territory of human culture, each claims an exclusive right to make meaning of the world. —LEV MANOVICH, 2002



VISUAL THESAURUS 2.0. Interactive media, 2003. Designers: Plumb Design Inc. This digital thesaurus presents words within a dynamic web of relationships. The central term is linked to nodes representing that word's different senses. The more connections each of these satellite nodes contain, the bigger and closer it appears on the screen. Clicking on a satellite word brings it to the center.

IMAGE/MUSIC/TEXT

Concordance and text stats for Roland Barthes's book *Image/Music/Text*. Publisher: Amazon.com, 2010. Amazon presents automated analyses of a book's text in order to give readers an idea of what is inside. The concordance feature lists the book's one hundred most commonly used words in alphabetical order and sizes them according to their frequency.

Concordance [\(learn more\)](#)

These are the 100 most frequently used words in this book.

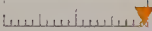


according action again always analysis another art author between body
cannot case certain characters code comes connotation different
discourse does elements even example fact first form functions given
historical however idea image itself know language least
level linguistic longer may meaning message moment music
must name narrative nature new nothing now object once order
own part perhaps person photograph place point possible precisely reader
reading relation say see seen sense sentence sequence set signified
signifier signs simply since social society speech still story structural
structure subject system term text though thus time two units voice
whole without word work writing

Text Stats

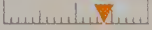


These statistics are computed from the text of this book. [\(learn more\)](#)

Readability [\(learn more\)](#)



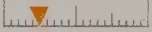
Compared with other books

Fog Index:	22.1	98% are easier		2% are harder
Flesch Index:	24.3	93% are easier		7% are harder
Flesch-Kincaid Index:	18.8	98% are easier		2% are harder

Complexity [\(learn more\)](#)

Complex Words:	19%	70% have fewer		30% have more
Syllables per Word:	1.7	67% have fewer		33% have more
Words per Sentence:	36.1	99% have fewer		1% have more

Number of

Characters:	396,905	48% have fewer		52% have more
Words:	64,614	49% have fewer		51% have more
Sentences:	1,791	25% have fewer		75% have more

Succeeding the Author, the scriptor no longer bears within him passions, humours, feelings, impressions, but rather this immense dictionary from which he draws a writing that can know no halt.

—ROLAND BARTHES, 1968

KATHERINE McCoy
MICHAEL McCoy

ART science

Nothing pulls you into the territory between art and science quite so quickly as design. It is the borderline where contradictions and tensions exist between the quantifiable and the poetic. It is the field between desire and necessity. Designers thrive in those conditions, moving between land and water. A typical critique at Cranbrook can easily move in a matter of minutes between a discussion of the object as a validation of being to the precise mechanical proposal for actuating the object. The discussion moves from Heidegger to the "strange material of the week" or from Lyotard to printing technologies without missing a beat. The free flow of ideas, and the leaps from the technical to the mythical, stem from the attempt to maintain a studio platform that supports each student's search to find his or her own voice as a designer. The studio is a hothouse that enables students

the and faculty to encounter their own visions of the world and act on them — a new process that is at times chaotic, conflicting, and occasionally inspiring.

Watching the process of students absorbing new ideas and influences, and the incredible range of interpretations of those ideas into design, is an annual experience that is always amazing. In recent years, for example, the

discourse department has had the experience of watching wood craftsmen metamorphose into high technologists, and graphic designers into software humanists. Yet it all seems consistent. They are bringing a very personal vision to an area that desperately needs it. The messiness of human experience is warming up the cold precision of technology to make it livable, and lived in.

Unlike the Bauhaus, Cranbrook never embraced a singular teaching method or philosophy, other than Saarinen's exhortation to each student to find his or her own way, in the company of other artists and designers who were engaged in the same search. The energy at Cranbrook seems to come from the fact of the mutual search, although not the mutual conclusion. If design is about life, why shouldn't it have all the complexity, variety, contradiction, and sublimity of life?

Much of the work done at Cranbrook has been dedicated to changing the status quo. It is polemical, calculated to ruffle designers' feathers. And DANGEROUS rigorous

BIRTH OF THE USER

Barthes's model of the text as an open web of references, rather than a closed and perfect work, asserts the importance of the reader over the writer in creating meaning. The reader "plays" the text as a musician plays an instrument. The author does not control its significance: "The text itself plays (like a door, like a machine with 'play') and the reader plays twice over, playing the Text as one plays a game, looking for a practice which reproduces it." Like an interpretation of a musical score, reading is a performance of the written word.

Graphic designers embraced the idea of the readerly text in the 1980s and early 1990s, using layers of text and interlocking grids to explore Barthes's theory of the "death of the author." In place of the classical model of typography as a crystal goblet for content, this alternative view assumes that content itself changes with each act of representation. Typography becomes a mode of interpretation.

Redefining typography as "discourse," designer Katherine McCoy imploded the traditional dichotomy between seeing and reading. Pictures can be read (analyzed, decoded, taken apart), and words can be seen (perceived as icons, forms, patterns). Valuing ambiguity and complexity, her approach challenged readers to produce their own meanings while also trying to elevate the status of designers within the process of authorship.

Another model, which undermined the designer's new claim to power, surfaced at the end of the 1990s, borrowed not from literary criticism but from human-computer interaction (HCI) studies and the fields of interface and usability design. The dominant subject of our age has become neither reader nor writer but *user*, a figure conceived as a bundle of needs and impairments—cognitive, physical, emotional. Like a patient or child, the user is a figure to be protected and cared for but also scrutinized and controlled, submitted to research and testing.

How texts are *used* becomes more important than what they mean. Someone clicked here to get over there. Someone who bought this also bought that. The interactive environment not only provides users with a degree of control and self-direction but also, more quietly and insidiously, it gathers data about its audiences. Barthes's image of the text as a game to be played still holds, as the user responds to signals from the system. We may play the text, but it is also playing us.

Design a human-machine interface in accordance with the abilities and foibles of humankind, and you will help the user not only get the job done, but be a happier, more productive person. —JEFF RASKIN, 2000

CRANBROOK DESIGN:
THE NEW DISCOURSE
Book, 1990. Designers:
Katherine McCoy, P. Scott
Makela, and Mary Lou
Kroh. Publisher: Rizzoli.
Photograph: Dan Meyers.
*Under the direction of
Katherine and Michael
McCoy, the graduate program
in graphic and industrial
design at Cranbrook Academy
of Art was a leading center
for experimental design from
the 1970s through the early
1990s. Katherine McCoy
developed a model of
"typography as discourse," in
which the designer and reader
actively interpret a text.*

Graphic designers can use theories of user interaction to revisit some of our basic assumptions about visual communication. Why, for example, are readers on the web less patient than readers of print? It is commonly believed that digital displays are inherently more difficult to read than ink on paper. Yet HCI studies conducted in the late 1980s proved that crisp black text on a white background can be read just as efficiently from a screen as from a printed page.

The impatience of the digital reader arises from culture, not from the essential character of display technologies. Users of websites have different expectations than users of print. They expect to feel “productive,” not contemplative. They expect to be in search mode, not processing mode. Users also expect to be disappointed, distracted, and delayed by false leads. The cultural habits of the screen are driving changes in design for print, while at the same time affirming print’s role as a place where extended reading can still occur.

Another common assumption is that icons are a more universal mode of communication than text. Icons are central to the GUIs (graphical user interfaces) that routinely connect users with computers. Yet text can often provide a more specific and understandable cue than a picture. Icons don’t actually simplify the translation of content into multiple languages, because they require explanation in multiple languages. The endless icons of the digital desktop, often rendered with gratuitous detail and depth, function more to enforce brand identity than to support usability. In the twentieth century, modern designers hailed pictures as a “universal” language, yet in the age of code, text has become a more common denominator than images—searchable, translatable, and capable of being reformatted and restyled for alternative or future media.

Perhaps the most persistent impulse of twentieth-century art and design was to physically integrate form and content. The Dada and Futurist poets, for example, used typography to create texts whose content was inextricable from the concrete layout of specific letterforms on a page. In the twenty-first century, form and content are being pulled back apart. Style sheets, for example, compel designers to think globally and systematically instead of focusing on the fixed construction of a particular surface. This way of

On screen readability, see John D. Gould *et al.*, “Reading from CRT Displays Can Be as Fast as Reading from Paper,” *Human Factors*, 29, 5 (1987): 497–517.

On the restless user, see Jakob Nielsen, *Designing Web Usability* (Indianapolis: New Riders, 2000).

On the failure of interface icons, see Jef Raskin, *The Humane Interface: New Directions for Designing Interactive Systems* (Reading, Mass.: Addison-Wesley, 2000).

**Web users don’t like to read....They want to keep moving and clicking.
—JAKOB NIELSEN, 2000**

thinking allows content to be reformatted for different devices or users, and it also prepares for the afterlife of data as electronic storage media begin their own cycles of decay and obsolescence.

In the twentieth century, modern artists and critics asserted that each medium is specific. They defined film, for example, as a constructive language distinct from theater, and they described painting as a physical medium that refers to its own processes. Today, however, the medium is not always the message. Design has become a “transmedia” enterprise, as authors and producers create worlds of characters, places, situations, and interactions that can appear across a variety of products. A game might live in different versions on a video screen, a desktop computer, a game console, and a cell phone, as well as on t-shirts, lunch boxes, and plastic toys.

The beauty and wonder of “white space” is another modernist myth that is subject to revision in the age of the user. Modern designers discovered that open space on a page can have as much physical presence as printed areas. White space is not always a mental kindness, however. Edward Tufte, a fierce advocate of visual density, argues for maximizing the amount of data conveyed on a single page or screen. In order to help readers make connections and comparisons, as well as to find information quickly, a single surface packed with well-organized information is sometimes better than multiple pages with a lot of blank space. In typography as in urban life, density invites intimate exchange among people and ideas.

In our much-fabled era of information overload, a person can still process only one message at a time. This brute fact of cognition is the secret behind magic tricks: sleights of hand occur while the attention of the audience is drawn elsewhere. Given the fierce competition for their attention, users have a chance to shape the information economy by choosing what to look at. Designers can help them make satisfying choices.

Typography is an interface to the alphabet. User theory tends to favor normative solutions over innovative ones, pushing design into the background. Readers usually ignore the typographic interface, gliding comfortably along literacy’s habitual groove. Sometimes, however, the interface should be allowed to fail. By making itself evident, typography can illuminate the construction and identity of a page, screen, place, or product.

On transmedia design thinking, see Brenda Laurel, *Utopian Entrepreneur* (Cambridge: MIT Press, 2001).

Jef Raskin talks about the scarcity of human attention as well as the myth of white space in *The Humane Interface: New Directions for Designing Interactive Systems*, cited on p. 74.

If people weren’t good at finding tiny things in long lists, the *Wall Street Journal* would have gone out of business years ago. —JEF RASKIN, 2000

Typography, invented in the Renaissance, allowed text to become a fixed and stable form. Like the body of the letter, the body of text was transformed into an industrial commodity that gradually became more open and flexible.

Critics of electronic media have noted that the rise of networked communication did not lead to the much feared destruction of typography (or even to the death of print), but rather to the burgeoning of the alphabetic empire. As Peter Lunenfeld points out, the computer has revived the power and prevalence of writing: “Alphanumeric text has risen from its own ashes, a digital phoenix taking flight on monitors, across networks, and in the realms of virtual space.” The computer display is more hospitable to text than the screens of film or television because it offers physical proximity, user control, and a scale appropriate to the body.

The printed book is no longer the chief custodian of the written word. Branding is a powerful variant of literacy that revolves around symbols, icons, and typographic standards, leaving its marks on buildings, packages, album covers, websites, store displays, and countless other surfaces and spaces. With the expansion of the Internet, new (and old) conventions for displaying text quickly congealed, adapting metaphors from print and architecture: window, frame, page, banner, menu. Designers working within this stream of multiple media confront text in myriad forms, giving shape to extended bodies but also to headlines, decks, captions, notes, pull quotes, logotypes, navigation bars, alt tags, and other prosthetic clumps of language that announce, support, and even eclipse the main body of text.

The dissolution of writing is most extreme in the realm of the web, where distracted readers safeguard their time and prize function over form. This debt of restlessness is owed not to the essential nature of computer monitors, but to the new behaviors engendered by the Internet, a place of searching and finding, scanning and mining. The reader, having toppled the author’s seat of power during the twentieth century, now ails and lags, replaced by the dominant subject of our own era: the *user*, a figure whose scant attention is our most coveted commodity. Do not squander it.

On electronic writing, see Peter Lunenfeld, *Snap to Grid: A User's Guide to Digital Arts, Media, and Cultures* (Cambridge: MIT Press, 2001); Jay David Bolter, *Writing Space: Computers, Hypertext, and the Remediation of Print* (Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, 2001), and Stuart Moulthrop, “You Say You Want a Revolution? Hypertext and the Laws of Media,” in *The New Media Reader*, ed. Noah Wardrip-Fruin and Nick Monfort (Cambridge: MIT Press, 2003), 691–703.

Hypertext means the end of the death of literature. —STUART MOULTHROP, 1991

Subscribe to Email | Subscribe to RSS | Follow on Twitter | Join Facebook Page | Suggest a Link

Admin: [Search] SEARCH

THE DESIGN OBSERVER GROUP DESIGN, CULTURE, CHANGE

DESIGN OBSERVER

Archive
Books + Store
Job Board
Comments
About
Contact

OBSERVATORY

Resources
Submissions
About
Contact

CHANGE OBSERVER

Resources
Submissions
About
Contact

PLACES

About
Journal Archive
Partner Schools
Foundation
Submissions
Call for Articles
Contact

OBSERVER MEDIA

Submissions
About
Contact

DESIGNOBSERVER

Design B.S. | Littermania | West Magazine

DESIGNOBSERVER

ARCHITECTURE | CHANGING DESIGN | PLACES | OBSERVER MEDIA

DESIGN OBSERVER

Archive
Books + Store
Job Board
Comments
About
Contact

OBSERVATORY

Resources
Submissions
About
Contact

CHANGE OBSERVER

Resources
Submissions
About
Contact

PLACES

About
Journal Archive
Partner Schools
Foundation
Submissions
Call for Articles
Contact

OBSERVER MEDIA

Submissions
About
Contact

RECENT COMMENTS

Howling at the Moon (1)
Today, 01:30:10 (4)
GeobalTap (1)
Howling at the Moon: The Poetics of Amateur Product Reviews (5)
Dams Across America (2)

OBSERVED

Over 650 Philip K. Dick book covers. [16]

The sign true Olivetti Lettera 32 typewriter on which Cormac McCarthy wrote 5 million words in over 45 years, has been auctioned off for \$254,500. Previously on DO, Rick Paynor eulogizes his own manual typewriter. [16]

The book (cover) that changed my life: *Age in Peace*, J. D. Salinger. [16]

With every new day, the phrase "I'm just not the target demographic" seems to be more relevant for me. "Aunt Catherine on Diesel's Studio campaign." [16]

You really know media ad dollars are hard to come by when the Super Bowl gets so noisy. [16]

Tugboat: House on sale radio, this week the Diane Benin show features a fascinating discussion of *The Glass Room*, the new novel by Simon Mawr inspired by the complex history of Meyer's glass and steel villa in prewar Czechoslovakia. Participants include the National Building Museum curator Susan Probst and Princeton. [16]

"What really knocks me out is a book that, when you've all done reading it, you wish the author that wrote it was a terrific friend of yours and you could call him up on the phone whenever you felt like it." — Holden Caulfield from the book *The Catcher in the Rye* by J. D. Salinger. Salinger dies yesterday at the age of 91. [16]

Design Observer's Job Board has new jobs in NYC, Chicago, Las Vegas, Pittsburgh, Toronto, Durham, LA, Cincinnati and DC. Companies hiring include: Tronco, V Agency, Timberland, Burt's Bees, LA Collaborative, Adobe, Hestio, Salient and Easton Laundry. Post your job today. [16]

Luke Hayman on how wars the iPad will change magazine design. [16]

Mapping the Axis Invasion of the United States, *Life* magazine, 1942. Amazing. (Via Meki.) [16]

Alissa Walker on the calamity of a product called iPad, why Apple should have known better and what you really ought to be thinking of when you hear that word. [16]

"In every dream home, a heartache." [16]

"Print, I thought you were dead!" (Thanks to Laura Stone.) [16]

"The Third & The Seventh," a 12 minute film by Alex Hansen, is being screened as the most extraordinary example of computer-generated imagery ever. Unbelievably, its haunting views of comic architecture by Hest, Yahn, Caccava and others were created by a single person using what he describes as "very low budget" equipment. [16]

An interactive video of *Port-au-Prince*, Haiti, taped on January 18, is this the future of reporting? (Thanks to Paul Kimball.) [16]

Irish Magazine-Daniel's project Gravity is a force to be reckoned with in 30 minutes, but it will scale and update down. [16]

A hands-on class at MoMA that evokes the early Bauhaus workshops, taught by the designer of *Water Drops*. [16]

OBSERVATORY

Today, 01:30:10

LOOK OUT FOR CARS

By Eric Baker
Here are Today's images.

READ MORE | COMMENTS (1)

OBSERVATORY

Howling at the Moon: The Poetics of Amateur Product Reviews

By Alice Twinn
An Amazon reviewer called N.A. Cat Lover, who turns out to be a doctor from Tampa, Florida, bought a self-wasting, self-flushing cat toilet. His review is not just hilarious; it can also be seen as an example of a democratizing impulse in design criticism.

READ MORE | COMMENTS (5)

OBSERVATORY

Moshe Safdie

By Sarah Williams Goldhagen
In judging any urban development, one must consider what it replaced, what it is and what it might have been instead. As to the first and the second: Moshe Safdie's nearly completed Mamilla Atrium Center in Jerusalem, the last portion of a 28-acre mixed-use development, is superb.

READ MORE | COMMENTS (1)

PLACES

The Public Works

By Nancy Levinson
The Great Depression of the 1930s inspired FDR's New Deal, which built thousands of public works that remain vital to this day. Our Great Recession has so far failed to spur a new New Deal, even as essential American infrastructure decays and collapses. Why? Certainly there's no shortage of innovative thinking. The real dilemma is that we confront our crisis in a market-driven culture that's suspicious of public sector solutions — and messy, of the very idea of the public.

DESIGN OBSERVER JOBS

House Creative
Interior Manager
Field Trip Factory — Chicago, IL

House Agency
Interior Manager
Field Trip Factory — Chicago, IL

Post and find jobs on the Design Observer Job Board

PLACES: FROM THE ARCHIVE

Recovering Spring 2009
Reflecting Atlanta
Reclaiming the Run
Out of Ashes and Rubble: The First Tower

CHANGE OBSERVER: RESOURCES

Academic Programs >>
Competitions >>
Conferences & Events >>
Fellowships & Prizes >>
Organizations >>
Programs & Initiatives >>
Publications & Websites >>
Site & Networks >>

AUDIO: DESIGN MATTERS ARCHIVE

Andrea Dezo
Andrea Dezo is a designer, artist and educator. Listen >>
More Design Matters Archive >>

OBSERVATORY ARCHIVE

Michael Bierut's Portfolio
Mad Men
The Kindness of Strangers
Littermania
West Magazine
On Decorum
Film & Design
Barbara Kruger
Blast Dear Art

BOOKS + STORE: BOOKS RECEIVED

Architecture: *Architecture* by Frances D. Ching
This Is Not a Book
Kari Smith
Provisional: Emerging Modes of Architectural Practice USA
Elise Kadan
Taxis Forum on Design and Critical Practice: The Reader
Martin Freidner & Magnus Enck
Unsung Heroes of Anonymous Design
George Tscherny & Nadia Tscherny
Winfield Light: The Visual Language of ECH
Lars Müller, editor
Limited Language: Rethinking Design
Cain Davies & Monika Perrenod
Andrea Cochran: Landscapes
Mary Myers
The Wall Street Journal: Guide to Information Graphics
Donna M. Wong
Konstantin Grcic: Decisive Design
Zoe Hyde

DESIGNOBSERVER.COM Website, 2010.

Design: Jessica Helfand, William Drenttel, Michael Bierut, and Betsy Vardell. *Packing an enormous volume of content onto its home page, this design discourse supersite brings print-quality typography to the screen.*

Kerning is an adjustment of the space between two letters. The characters of the Latin alphabet emerged over time; they were never designed with mechanical or automated spacing in mind. Thus some letter combinations look awkward without special spacing considerations. Gaps occur, for example, around letters whose forms angle outward or frame an open space (W, Y, V, T). In metal type, a kerned letter extends past the lead slug that supports it, allowing two letters to fit more closely together. In digital fonts, the space between letter pairs is controlled by a *kerning table* created by the type designer, which specifies spaces between problematic letter combinations.

Working in a page layout program, a designer can choose to use *metric kerning* or *optical kerning* as well as adjusting the space between letters manually where desired. A well-designed typeface requires little or no additional kerning, especially at text sizes.

METRIC KERNING uses the kerning tables that are built into the typeface. When you select metric kerning in your page layout program, you are using the spacing that was intended by the type designer. Metric kerning usually looks good, especially at small sizes. Cheap novelty fonts often have little or no built-in kerning and will need to be optically kerned.

OPTICAL KERNING is executed automatically by the page layout program. Rather than using the pairs addressed in the font's kerning table, optical kerning assesses the shapes of all characters and adjusts the spacing wherever needed. Some graphic designers apply optical kerning to headlines and metric kerning to text. You can make this process efficient and consistent by setting kerning as part of your character styles.

Takes Two

SCALA PRO, WITH KERNING SUPPRESSED

Spacing appears uneven, with gaps around T/a, T/w, and w/o.

Takes Two

SCALA PRO, WITH METRIC KERNING

Spacing appears more even between T/a and T/w.

Takes Two

SCALA PRO, WITH OPTICAL KERNING

Spacing seems more even between T/a, T/w, and w/o.

Warm Type

SCALA PRO ITALIC, WITH KERNING SUPPRESSED

Spacing appears uneven between W/a and T/y.

Warm Type

SCALA PRO ITALIC, WITH METRIC KERNING

Spacing appears more even between W/a and T/y.

Warm Type

SCALA PRO ITALIC, WITH OPTICAL KERNING

Spacing is comparable to metric kerning.

LOVE LETTERS

SCALA PRO ALL CAPITALS, WITH KERNING SUPPRESSED

Spacing is tight between T/T.

LOVE LETTERS

SCALA PRO ALL CAPITALS, WITH METRIC KERNING

Improved spacing between T/T.

LOVE LETTERS

SCALA PRO ALL CAPITALS, WITH OPTICAL KERNING

Improved spacing between T/T and O/V.

KERNING HEADLINES The subtle differences between metric and optical kerning become more apparent at larger sizes. Most problems occur between capital and lowercase letters. The spacing between *H/a*, *T/a*, and *T/o* improves with optical kerning. The optical kerning applied here in InDesign has created tighter spacing for large text and looser spacing for small text. Look at both effects before choosing a kerning method.

Ha

METRIC KERNING

Ha

OPTICAL KERNING

METRIC VERSUS OPTICAL KERNING

Books And Harlots Have Their Quarrels In Public.

Books And Harlots
Can Be Taken To Bed.

Books and harlots—
footnotes in one are
as banknotes in the
stockings of the other.

—WALTER BENJAMIN, 1925

QUADRAAT SANS, WITH METRIC KERNING

Books And Harlots Have Their Quarrels In Public.

Books And Harlots
Can Be Taken To Bed.

Books and harlots—
footnotes in one are
as banknotes in the
stockings of the other.

—WALTER BENJAMIN, 1925

QUADRAAT SANS, WITH OPTICAL KERNING

NERD ALERT: In addition to using optical kerning, the text above has word spacing reduced to 80 percent. With large type, normal word spacing often looks too wide. Adjust word spacing in the Paragraph > Justification menu in InDesign.

TRACKING

Adjusting the overall spacing of a group of letters is called *tracking* or *letterspacing*. By expanding the tracking across a word, line, or entire block of text, the designer can create a more airy, open field. In blocks of text, tracking is usually applied in small increments, creating a subtle effect not noticeable to the casual reader. Occasionally, a single word or phrase is tracked for emphasis, especially when CAPS or SMALL CAPS are used within a line. Negative tracking, rarely desirable in text sizes, can be used sparingly to help bring up a short line of text. White type on a black background is considered more legible when it is tracked.

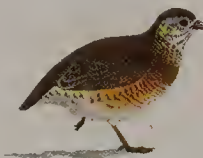
TRACKING TEXT TYPE

NORMAL TRACKING

Letters do love one another. However, due to their anatomical differences, some letters have a hard time achieving intimacy. Consider the letter V, for example, whose seductive valley makes her limbs stretch out above her base. In contrast, L solidly holds his ground yet harbors a certain emptiness above the waist. Capital letters, being square and conservative, prefer to keep a little distance from their neighbors.

POSITIVE TRACKING (+20)

Letters do love one another. However, due to their anatomical differences, some letters have a hard time achieving intimacy. Consider the letter V, for example, whose seductive valley makes her limbs stretch out above her base. In contrast, L solidly holds his ground yet harbors a certain emptiness above the waist. Capital letters, being square and conservative, prefer to keep a little distance from their neighbors.



SCALY-BREASTED PARTRIDGE
Arborophila chloropus
12 in (30 cm)
Southeast Asia



CRIMSON-HEADED PARTRIDGE
Haematorityx sanguiniceps
10 in (25 cm)
Borneo

BIRDS OF THE WORLD Book, 2007. Author: Les Beletsky. Publisher: The Johns Hopkins University. Art Director: Charles Nix. Designers: Charles Nix, Whitney Grant, and May Jampathom. *This book, set in Adobe Caslon and Caslon 540, uses tracked small capitals for caption headings.*

NEGATIVE TRACKING (-20)

Letters do love one another. However, due to their anatomical differences, some letters have a hard time achieving intimacy. Consider the letter V, for example, whose seductive valley makes her limbs stretch out above her base. In contrast, L solidly holds his ground yet harbors a certain emptiness above the waist. Capital letters, being square and conservative, prefer to keep a little distance from their neighbors.

TYPE CRIME

TIGHTLY TRACKED TEXT

Letters are tracked too close for comfort.

Books and harlots—both have their
type of man, who both lives off and
harasses them. In the case of books,
critics. WALTER BENJAMIN, 1925

REVERSED TYPE, NO TRACKING

Books and harlots—both have their
type of man, who both lives off and
harasses them. In the case of books,
critics. WALTER BENJAMIN, 1925

REVERSED TYPE, TRACKED +25

Designers most commonly apply tracking to headlines and logos (where kerning adjustments are also frequently required). As text gets bigger, the space between letters expands, and some designers use tracking to diminish overall spacing in large-scale text. Loose or open tracking is commonly applied to capitals and small capitals, which appear more regal standing slightly apart.

TRACKING HEADLINES AND LOGOTYPES

LOVE LETTERS

CAPITALS: NORMAL TRACKING

LOVE LETTERS

CAPITALS: LOOSE TRACKING (+75)

LOVE LETTERS, LOVE LETTERS

SMALL CAPS: NORMAL VS. LOOSE TRACKING (+75)

love letters, love letters

LOWER CASE: NORMAL TRACKING

love letters, love letters

LOWER CASE: LOOSE TRACKING (+75)

TYPE CRIME: TRACKING LOWERCASE LETTERS

Loosely spaced lowercase letters—especially italics—look awkward because these characters are designed to sit closely together on a line.

EROS

EROS Logotype, 1962. Design: Herb Lubalin. *Ultra-tight letterspacing was a hallmark of progressive commercial graphics in the 1960s and 1970s. Here, the letters cradle each other with an intimacy appropriate to the subject matter.*



CRUET & WHISK and THYMES Logotypes, 2006. Design: Duffy & Partners. *The generously tracked capitals in these logotypes give them an affable, antiquarian flavor while imparting an overall lightness to the designs.*

EXERCISE: SPACE AND MEANING

You can express the meaning of a word or an idea through the spacing, sizing, and placement of letters on the page. Designers often think this way when creating logotypes, posters, or editorial headlines. The compositions shown here express physical processes such as disruption, expansion, and migration through the spacing and arrangement of letters. The round Os in Futura make it a fun typeface to use for this project.

*Examples of student work from
Maryland Institute College of Art*

sition

transiti

Johnschen Kudos

dis^ruption

c o m p r e s s i o n

Johnschen Kudos

Johnschen Kudos

e x **pexpansion** i o n

Marcos Kolthar

ion

t

a

ig

m
migrat^{ion}

Jason Hogg

repetition

Heather Williams

elimina^{tion}

Heather Williams

LINE SPACING

The distance from the baseline of one line of type to another is called *line spacing*. It is also called *leading*, in reference to the strips of lead used to separate lines of metal type. The default setting in most layout and imaging software is 120 percent of the type size. Thus 10-pt type is set with 12 pts of line spacing. Designers play with line spacing in order to create distinctive typographic arrangements. Reducing the standard distance creates a denser typographic color, while risking collisions between ascenders and descenders.

Expanding the line spacing creates a lighter, more open text block. As leading increases, lines of type become independent graphic elements rather than parts of an overall visual shape and texture.

VARIATIONS IN LINE SPACING

The distance from the baseline of one line of type to another is called *line spacing*. It is also called *leading*, in reference to the strips of lead used to separate lines of metal type. The default setting in most layout and imaging software is 120 percent of the type size. Thus 10-pt type is set with 12 pts of line spacing. Designers play with line spacing in order to create distinctive layouts. Reducing the standard distance creates a denser typographic color—while risking collisions between ascenders and descenders.

The distance from the baseline of one line of type to another is called *line spacing*. It is also called *leading*, in reference to the strips of lead used to separate lines of metal type. The default setting in most layout and imaging software is 120 percent of the type size. Thus 10-pt type is set with 12 pts of line spacing. Designers play with line spacing in order to create distinctive layouts. Reducing the standard distance creates a denser typographic color—while risking collisions between ascenders and descenders.

The distance from the baseline of one line of type to another is called *line spacing*. It is also called *leading*, in reference to the strips of lead used to separate lines of metal type. The default setting in most layout and imaging software is 120 percent of the type size. Thus 10-pt type is set with 12 pts of line spacing. Designers play with line spacing in order to create distinctive layouts. Reducing the standard distance creates a denser typographic color—while risking collisions between ascenders and descenders.

The distance from the baseline of one line of type to another is called *line spacing*. It is also called *leading*, in reference to the strips of lead used to separate lines of metal type. The default setting in most layout and imaging software is 120 percent of the type size. Thus 10-pt type is set with 12 pts of line spacing. Designers play with line spacing in order to create distinctive layouts. Reducing the standard distance creates a denser typographic color—while risking collisions between ascenders and descenders.

6/6 SCALA PRO
(6 pt type with 6 pts line
spacing, or “set solid”)

6/7.2 SCALA PRO
(Auto spacing; 6 pt type
with 7.2 pts line spacing)

6/8 SCALA PRO
(6 pt type with
8 pts line spacing)

6/12 SCALA PRO
(6 pt type with
12 pts line spacing)

different
folks
different
strokes

TYPE CRIME
*Here, auto spacing yields
an uneven effect.*

different
folks
different
strokes

*Adjusting line spacing with
the baseline shift tool helps create
an even appearance.*

Aa **NERD ALERT:** A *baseline shift* is a manual adjustment of the horizontal position of one or more characters. Baseline shifts are often used when mixing different sizes or styles of type. The baseline shift tool can be found in the Type tool bar of standard software applications.

Ancient maps of the world

An

when the world was flat

Avid

inform us, concerning the void

Dream

where America was waiting

Of

to be discovered,

Trans-

Here Be Dragons. James Baldwin

for-

O to be a dragon. Marianne Moore

mation Adrienne Kennedy, *People Who Led to My Plays*

MARGO JEFFERSON

DANCE INK: AN AVID DREAM
OF TRANSFORMATION

Magazine page, 1992.

Designer: Abbott Miller.

Publisher: Patsy Tarr. *The
extreme line spacing allows two
strands of text to interweave.*

Designers experiment with extreme line spacing to create distinctive typographic textures. Open spacing allows designers to play with the space between the lines, while tight spacing creates intriguing, sometimes uncomfortable, collisions.

interminável do embarque, decido respirar um pouco e procurar o sr. Cresco com mais calma, outra hora.

PISO OCIDENTAL – EMBARQUE

A área de embarque é chamada de "aquário": um longo corredor com paredes e portas de vidro que separam o pré-embarque das plataformas. O ônibus estaciona nas baias, lá fora, e um funcionário abre as tais portas de vidro, chamando os passageiros. Só então eles passam à região do embarque. Protegem-se, assim, os demais usuários da fumaça emitida pelos veículos, em parte absorvida por um enorme tubo exaustor pintado de amarelo.

Em pé, na plataforma 1, enxerga-se o corredor inteiro, até o fim. Em primeiro plano, um relógio de ponteiros e uma larga escada em caracol que leva ao piso superior. No vão abaixo da escada, algumas lanchonetes e lojas de miudezas encaixam-se com perfeição. De ambos os lados, indicados ao longo do corredor, sucedem-se os números das plataformas 1 a 50, pintados de branco dentro de quadrados verdes, sobrepondo-se ligeiramente uns aos outros como em uma agenda telefônica.

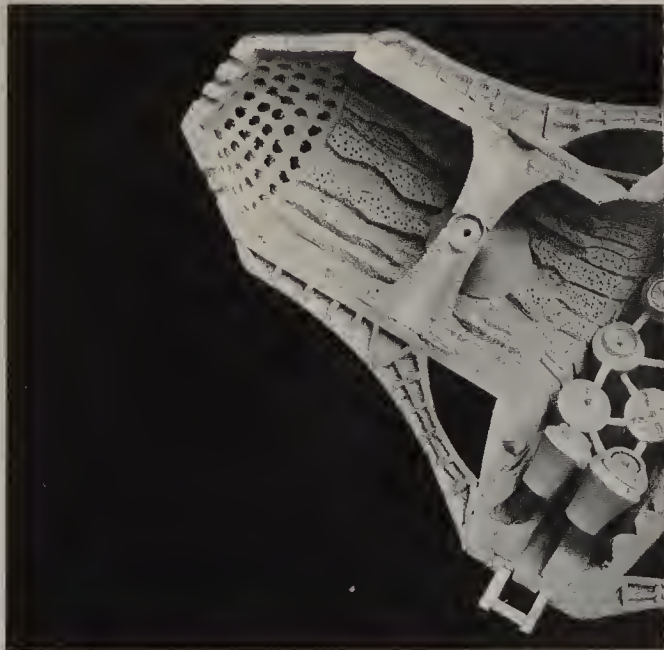
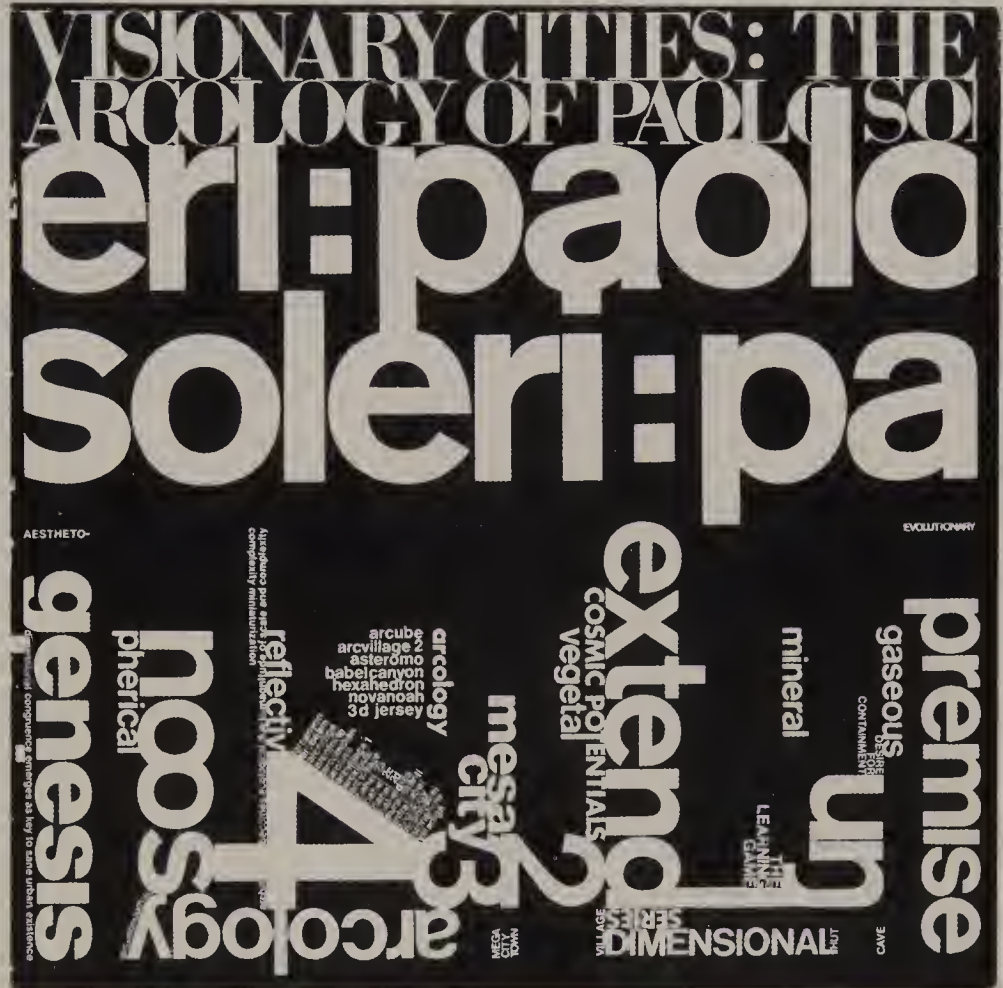
Há poucas crianças vagando pela área. Em compensação, são muitos os seguranças, funcionários de limpeza e vendedores de bebidas caminhando com seus carrinhos. A maioria dos passageiros é compos-

ta de adultos que esperam em pé, pois não há lugar para sentar (apenas quatro cadeiras de plástico laranja diante de cada plataforma). Consegue-se escutar remotamente o som dos alto-falantes que tocam "Ovelha negra" em versão acústica e diversas músicas instrumentais, para dar a impressão de que o terminal é calmo. "Mas só pra dar a impressão, mesmo", brinca um dos fiscais da Socicam.

Antes da primeira plataforma par, ergue-se uma sala VIP, como a dos aeroportos. É um espaço envidraçado voltado exclusivamente para o bem-estar dos passageiros das empresas Cometa, 1001 e Catarinense, em viagens a Santa Catarina, Paraná, Rio de Janeiro e Minas Gerais. A abertura das portas é automática e o usuário é recebido por duas moças de saia azul, salto alto e lençinho amarelo, que conferem os bilhetes e aconselham os passageiros a se sentir em casa. Nas paredes, pôsteres de capitais: Curitiba, Florianópolis, São Paulo e Belo Horizonte. No teto, a pintura de um céu azul-escuro com estrelas e o cometa Halley, símbolo da Viação Cometa. Há longas fileiras que somam ao todo 160 cadeiras estofadas em dois tons: marrom-terra e azul-marinho, sob o piso limpíssimo e brilhante. Há duas TVs sintonizadas no canal Globo News, duas máquinas de café e chocolate, uma máquina de refrigerante, quatro aparelhos de ar-condicionado e um galão de água gelada ou natural, "vestido" com um pano branco onde

O LIVRO AMARELO DO TERMINAL Book spread, 2008.
Designer: Vanessa Barbara with Elaine Ramos and Maria Carolina Sampaio. Publisher: Cosac Naify. Here, pages of text are set with loose line spacing and printed on thin paper. The vertical placement of the text block varies from spread to spread, allowing text to show through between the lines.

VISIONARY CITIES: THE ARCOLOGY OF PAOLO SOLERI Book, 1970. Design: Paolo Soleri. This classic work of postmodern design uses ultra-tight line spacing to create dramatic density on the page. Produced long before the era of digital page layout, this book exploited the possibilities of phototypesetting and dry transfer lettering.



of parts one to another, s
uitability and distribution
.michelangelo.the chinese
scorn this way.their great
st reach of imagination is
employed in contriving fi
gures where the beauty sh
all be great, and strike the
eye, but without any orde
r, or disposition of the par
ts that shall be commonly
or, easily observed:and th

ALIGNMENT

Choosing to align text in justified, centered, or ragged columns is a fundamental typographic act. Each mode of alignment carries unique formal qualities, cultural associations, and aesthetic risks.

Centered text is symmetrical,
like the facade of a classical building.

Centered type often appears on
invitations, title pages, certificates, and tomb stones.

The edges of a centered column
are often dramatically uneven.

Centered lines should be broken to emphasize a key phrase
(such as the name of the bride
or the date of her wedding)

or to allow a new thought to begin on its own line.

Breaking lines in this manner is called
breaking for sense.

Justified text, which has even edges on both the left and right sides of the column, has been the norm since the invention of printing with movable type, which enabled the creation of page after page of straight-edged columns. In metal type setting, the printer justifies each line by hand, using small metal spacers to alter the spaces between words and letters and thus make all the lines the same length. Digital typesetting performs the same labor automatically. Justified type makes efficient use of space. It also creates a clean, compact shape on the page. Ugly gaps can occur, however, when the line length is too short in relation to the size of type used. Hyphenation breaks up long words and helps keep the lines of text tightly packed. Designers often use negative tracking to fit additional characters on a line, or positive tracking to even out a line of type that looks too loose.

CENTERED

Lines of uneven length on a central axis

Centered text is formal and classical. It invites the designer to break a text for sense and create elegant, organic shapes. Centering is often the simplest and most intuitive way to place a typographic element. Used without care, centered text can look staid and mournful, like a tombstone.

JUSTIFIED

Left and right edges are both even

Justified text makes a clean shape on the page. Its efficient use of space makes it the norm for newspapers and books. Ugly gaps can occur, however, as text is forced into lines of even measure. Avoid this by using a line length that is long enough in relation to the size of type. As type gets smaller, more words will fit on each line.

THIS DREARY SHAPE
HAS RANDOM LINE
BREAKS THAT DON'T
RESPOND TO THE
RHYTHM OF THE
WRITTEN TEXT.

TYPE CRIME

POORLY SHAPED
TEXT BLOCK *In most
uses, centered text
should be broken into
phrases with a variety
of long and short lines.*

Ugly gaps appear when
the designer has made
the line length too
short, or the author
has selected words that
are too long.

TYPE CRIME

FULL OF HOLES
*A column that is too
narrow is full of gaps.*

In *flush left/ragged right* text, the left edge is hard and the right edge soft. Word spaces do not fluctuate, so there are never big holes inside the lines of text. This format, which was used primarily for setting poetry before the twentieth century, respects the flow of language rather than submitting to the law of the box. Despite its advantages, however, the flush left format is fraught with danger. Above all, the designer must work hard to control the appearance of the *rag* that forms along the right edge. A good rag looks pleasantly uneven, with no lines that are excessively long or short, and with hyphenation kept to a minimum. A rag is considered “bad” when it looks too even (or too uneven), or when it begins to form regular shapes, like wedges, moons, or diving boards.

FLUSH LEFT/RAGGED RIGHT

Left edge is hard; right edge is soft

Flush left text respects the organic flow of language and avoids the uneven spacing that plagues justified type. A bad rag can ruin the relaxed, organic appearance of a flush left column. Designers must strive vigilantly to create the illusion of a random, natural edge without resorting to excessive hyphenation.

A bad rag will fall into weird shapes along the right edge, instead of looking random.

TYPE CRIME

BAD RAG

An ugly wedge shape spoils the ragged edge.

Flush right/ragged left is a variant of the more familiar flush left setting. It is common wisdom among typographers that flush right text is hard to read, because it forces the reader's eye to find a new position at the start of each line. This could be true, or it could be an urban legend.

That being said, the flush right setting is rarely employed for long bodies of text. Used in smaller blocks, however, flush right text forms effective marginal notes, sidebars, pull quotes, or other passages that comment on a main body or image.

A flush or ragged edge can suggest attraction (or repulsion) between chunks of information.

FLUSH RIGHT/RAGGED LEFT

Right edge is hard; left edge is soft

Flush right text can be a welcome departure from the familiar. Used for captions, side bars, and other marginalia, it can suggest affinities among elements. Because flush right text is unusual, it can annoy cautious readers. Bad rags threaten flush right text just as they afflict flush left, and punctuation can weaken the hard right edge.

Lots of punctuation (at the ends of lines) will attack, threaten, and generally weaken the flush right edge.

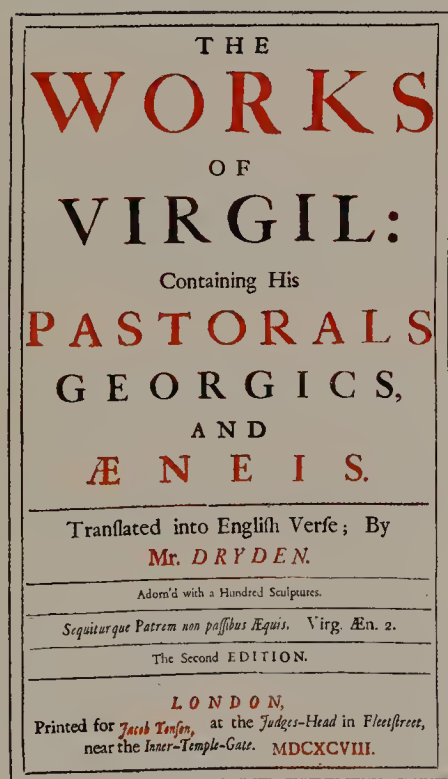
TYPE CRIME

PUNCTUATION EATS

THE EDGE Excessive punctuation weakens the right edge.

The four modes of alignment (centered, justified, flush left, and flush right) form the basic grammar of typographic composition. Each one has traditional uses that make intuitive sense to readers.

CENTERED



THE WORKS OF VIRGIL Printed for Jacob Tonson, 1698. Title pages are traditionally set centered. This two-color title page was printed in two passes of the press (note the off-kilter registration of the two colors of ink). Large typefaces were created primarily for use on title pages or in hymn books.

JUSTIFIED

for Coppet. But when the eighty days had passed and the bugaboo was safely on board the *Bellerophon*, she came back to the scenes she loved so well and to what for her was the only heaven: Paris. ¶ She has been called a philosopher and a literary light. But she was only socio-literary. Her written philosophy does not represent the things she felt were true—simply those things she thought it would be nice to say. She cultivated literature, only that she might shine. Love, wealth, health, husband, children—all were sacrificed that she might lead society and win applause. No one ever feared solitude more: she must have those about her who would minister to her vanity and upon whom she could shower her wit. As a type her life is valuable, and in these pages that traverse the entire circle of feminine virtues and foibles she surely must have a place. ¶ In her last illness she was attended daily by those faithful subjects who had all along recognized her sovereignty—in Society she was Queen. She surely now had won her heart's desire, for to that bed from which she was no more to rise, courtiers came and kneeling kissed her hand, and women by the score whom she had befriended paid her the tribute of their tears. ¶ She died in Paris at the age of fifty-one.

217

THE COMPLETE WRITINGS OF ELBERT HUBBARD, VOLUME TWO Printed by the Roycroft Shop, 1908. This neo-Renaissance book page harkens back to the first century of printing. Not only is the block of text perfectly justified, but paragraph symbols are used in place of indents and line breaks to preserve the solidity of the page.

FLUSH LEFT

L'ENNEMI

Ma jeunesse ne fut qu'un ténébreux orage,
 Traversé çà et là par de brillants soleils;
 Le tonnerre et la pluie ont fait un tel ravage,
 Qu'il reste en mon jardin bien peu de fruits vermeils.

Voilà que j'ai touché l'automne des idées,
 Et qu'il faut employer la pelle et les râteaux
 Pour rassembler à neuf les terres inondées,
 Où l'eau creuse des trous grands comme des tombeaux.

Et qui sait si les fleurs nouvelles que je rêve
 Trouveront dans ce sol lavé comme une grève
 Le mystique aliment qui ferait leur vigueur?

— O douleur! ô douleur! Le Temps mange la vie,
 Et l'obscur Ennemi qui nous ronge le cœur
 Du sang que nous perdons croît et se fortifie!

17

CHARLES BAUDELAIRE/LES FLEURS DU MAL Printed by Bill Lansing, 1945. Traditionally, poetry is set flush left, because the line breaks are an essential element of the literary form. Poetry is not usually set centered, except in greeting cards.

FLUSH RIGHT

132

Technique

things that could not have been done at all had he stuck to his original idea.

No shields Trade-markery is a country cousin of heraldry; it can claim that kin, but native good taste will keep it from trying to ape its noble relative. I mean that trade-marks in the form of shields are a joke—as comical as those mid-Victorian trade devices surrounded by the Garter. Things like that, in first instances (they are now meaningless survivals), were efforts on the part of Trade to sit in the same pew with Race. Under the modern dispensation, with kings at a discount, the feudal touch may be dispensed with. One makes this comment about shields as trade-marks because a cosmic law operates to convince every expectant proprietor of a new trade-mark that he wants his device in the shape of a shield.

Flexible A good trade-mark is the thing that lives inside a boundary line—not the boundary line itself. It should be possible for the device to step outside its circle, or triangle, or what not, and still be the same—an unmistakable emblem. In other words, marks that depend for their individuality upon triangular frames, circles, squares, etc., are weak brethren; they are of a low order of trade-mark vitality.

Typographic flavor For the greater number of advertising uses a trade-mark design needs to be given a typographic flavor. It will stand in close relation to type in the usual advertisement and its stance will be more comfortable if it is brought into sympathy with type. This means that the proprietor will have to relax the rigor of his rule and allow his design (originally rendered in soft lithographic grays and stipples) to be redrawn in positive line, with considerable paper showing. It is not necessary to ape the style of a woodcut in this effort after typographic flavor; but it is necessary to echo, to a certain extent, the crisp black lines and

LAYOUT IN ADVERTISING Designed and written by W. A. Dwiggins, 1928. In this classic guide to commercial art practices, Dwiggins has placed callouts or subject cues in the margins. On the left-hand (verso) page shown here, the cues are set flush right, drawing them closer to the content they identify.

Designers sometimes use the archetypal modes of alignment in ways that emphasize their visual qualities. Combining different types of alignment can yield dynamic and surprising layouts.

"Grandma! Grandma! Look at me! I did it!"
Oval yelled from the water, her youth taut
as a syllogism.

"I saw you darling!" Mother waved. Then she sat
back and smiled, nature on her side after all.

"Well sure," Square began—
He heard the suck of Circle's chest cavity, speech
lobes echoing the startle of her brain's emotive
region to vibrate vocal chords so that the up-rush
of breath through her body would come out as,

"What?!"

She pushed her sunglasses up onto her head
to reveal that her eyes had widened to the size
of an animal's before it pounces. And in response,
an electro-chemical jolt contracted his muscles
to quickly voice "But it's more complicated than
that" (*accelerando*) as he tried to recover.

Tried and failed, he saw, realizing that Mother
would take his words as confirmation of Circle's
phobia of conceiving. Circle's eyes remained
trained on him. "Sometimes more kids just
aren't in the cards," he tried.

"What he means," Circle said, emotion beginning to
raise veins, "is that we've decided to limit our family."

"Limit your?—"

"It's not like when you and dad were raising
a family. Kids cost a lot. The public schools are
worthless so you can't even think about sending
them there. And anyway, who's going to watch a
baby while I'm at work? Square doesn't have time.
He can't even figure out the ending to his dumb...
Dumb?"
"...story, watching Oval after school like he does
and I don't have time to be around them.
Not like you were with us."

a common story

"Well, things have certainly changed," Mother
sighed in that exhausted victim tone she adopted
whenever she was about to play her "tired blood"
card. "In my day, children just came or they
didn't. We were just the organ they did it through."

of a common man

"Geez, that's what you want me to go back to?"

Circle laughed, her smile an incipient "fear
grin" primates often exhibited just before
tension broke into fight or flight. "A crap
shoot?" This last was meant for him. He decided
to let pass the crack about his "dumb" story.

Homo being common to all men

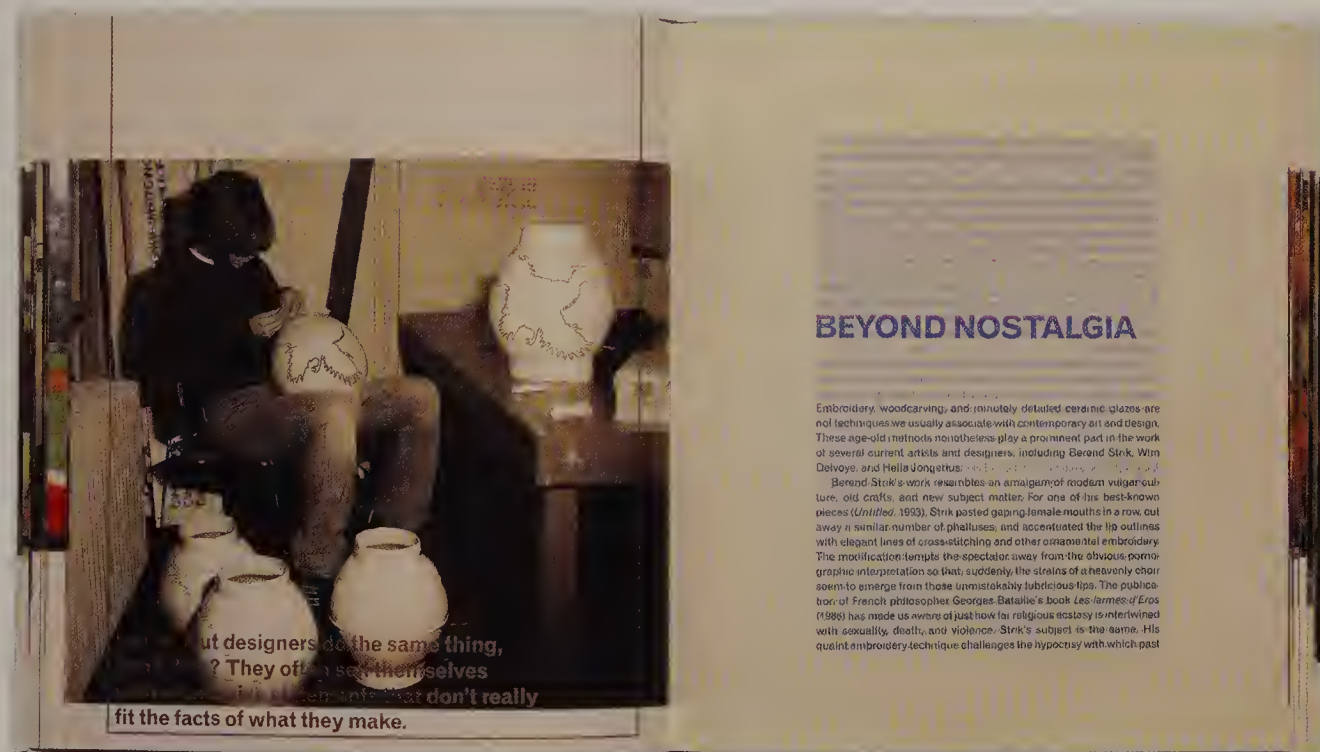
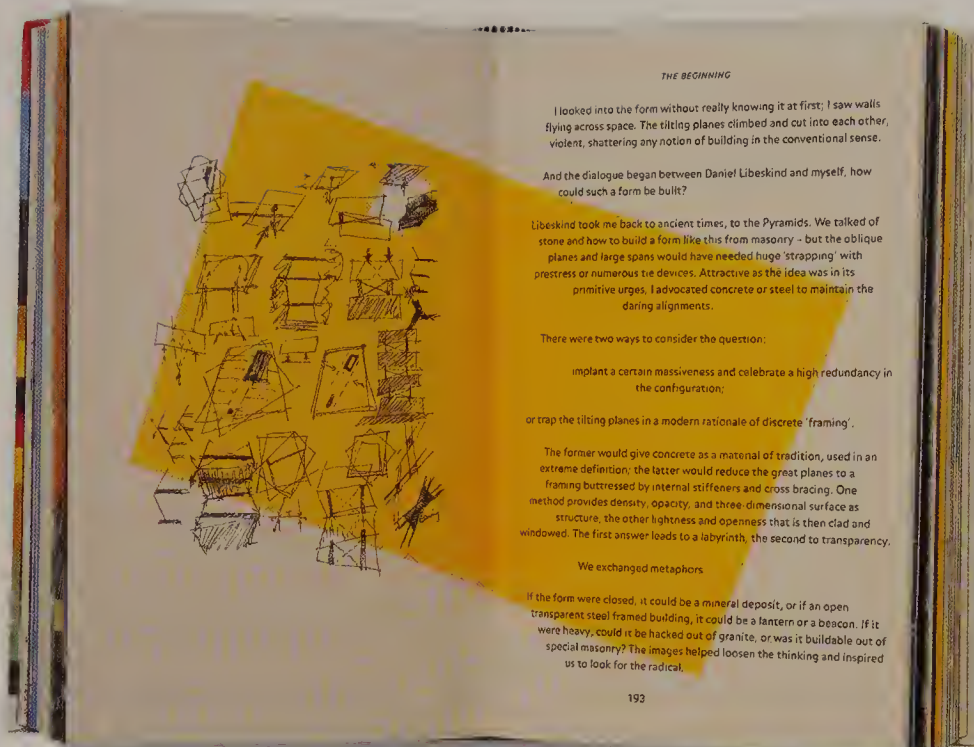
"I only meant—"
and women [obviously]

"Mother, I can't not know what I know!" Her
exasperated tone left a pregnant silence at the table.

"Excuse me," she said, "I need a refill on my ice."
She stood up and there was the shock of her body:
a flat athletic torso, muscular shoulders and arms
in a cheetah-print swimsuit (a legacy of African,
i.e. savage sexuality) that made him want her.
"Anybody else want anything?"

FLUSH LEFT AND FLUSH RIGHT: VAS: AN OPERA IN
FLATLAND Book spread, 2002. Designer: Stephen Farrell.
Author: Steve Tomasula. *In this typographic novel, texts and
images align left and right against a series of thin rules. Hanging
punctuation and boldface letters emphasize the flush edges.*

FLUSH LEFT AND FLUSH RIGHT: INFORMAL Book, 2002. Designer: Januzzi Smith. Author: Cecil Balmond. Photograph: Dan Meyers. *This book is a manifesto for an informal approach to structural engineering and architecture. The text columns juxtapose flush right against flush left alignments, creating a tiny but insistent seam or fissure inside the text and irregular rags along the outer edges.*



JUSTIFIED: HELLA JONGERIUS Book, 2003. Designers: COMA. Photograph: Dan Meyers. *Transparent paper emphasizes the justified text block. Images hang from a consistent horizontal point, creating a throughline that is visible along the edge of the book.*

EXERCISE: ALIGNMENT

Use modes of alignment (flush left, flush right, justified, and centered) to actively interpret a passage of text. The passage here, from Walter Ong's book *Orality and Literacy: The Technologizing of the Word*, explains how the invention of printing with movable type imposed a new spatial order on the written word, in contrast with the more organic pages of the manuscript era. The solutions shown here comment on the conflicts between hard and soft, industrial and natural, planning and chance, that underlie all typographic composition.

*Examples of student work from
Maryland Institute College of Art*

PRINT
situates words in space more relentlessly
than writing ever did. Control of position
is everything in print. Printed texts look
machine-made, as they are. Typographic
control typically impresses most by its
tidiness and invisibility: the lines perfectly
regular, all justified on the right side,
everything coming out even visually, and
without the aid of guidelines or ruled
borders that often occur in manuscripts.
This is an insistent world of cold,
non-human, facts.

WRITING
moves words from the sound world
to a world of visual space,
but print locks words
into position in this space.
In handwriting, control of space
tends to be ornamental, ornate,
as in calligraphy.

Passages of flush left and flush right text hinge from a central axis.
Johnschen Kudos

PRINT SITUATES WORDS IN SPACE
MORE RELENTLESSLY THAN WRITING
EVER DID. WRITING MOVES WORDS FROM THE SOUND WORLD
BUT PRINT LOCKS WORDS INTO POSITION IN THIS SPACE. CONTROL
OF POSITION IS EVERYTHING IN
PRINT. PRINTED TEXTS LOOK
MACHINE-MADE, AS THEY ARE.
IN HANDWRITING, CONTROL OF SPACE TENDS TO BE ORNAMENTAL,
TYPOGRAPHIC CONTROL TYPICALLY
IMPRESSES MOST BY ITS TIDINESS
AND INVISIBILITY: THE LINES
PERFECTLY REGULAR, ALL JUSTIFIED
ON THE RIGHT SIDE, EVERYTHING
COMING OUT EVEN VISUALLY, AND
WITHOUT THE AID OF GUIDELINES OR
RULED BORDERS THAT OFTEN
OCCUR IN MANUSCRIPTS. THIS IS AN
INSISTENT WORLD OF COLD, NON-
HUMAN, FACTS.

Randomly spaced words break free from a rigidly justified column.
Lu Zhang

Print situates words
in space more
relentlessly than
writing ever did.
Writing moves words from the sound world to a world of visual space,
but print locks
words into position
in this space.
Control of position
is everything in
print. Printed texts
look machine-made,
as they are.
In handwriting, control of space tends to be ornamental, ornate.

Typographic control
typically impresses
most by its tidiness
and invisibility: the
lines perfectly regular,
all justified on the
right side, everything
coming out even
visually, and without
the aid of guidelines
or ruled borders that
often occur in
manuscripts.

This is an insistent
world of cold,
non-human, facts.

Long, centered lines are bridges between narrow, ragged columns.
Benjamin Lutz

relentlessly than writing ever did. Writing moves words from the sound world to a world of visual space, but print locks words into position in this space. Control of position is everything in print. Printed texts look machine-made, as they are. In handwriting, control of space tends to be ornamental, ornate, as in calligraphy. Typographic control typically impresses most by its tidiness and invisibility: the lines perfectly regular, all justified on the right side, everything coming out even visually, and without the aid of guidelines or ruled borders that often occur in manuscripts. This is an insistent world of cold, non-human, facts.

Print situates words in space more

Print situates words in space more relentlessly than writing ever did. Writing moves words from the sound world to a world of visual space, but print locks words into position in this space.

Control of position is everything in print.

Printed texts look machine-made, as they are. In handwriting, control of space tends to be ornamental, ornate, as in calligraphy. Typographic control typically impresses most by its tidiness and invisibility: the lines perfectly regular, all justified on the right side, everything coming out even visually, and without the aid of guidelines or ruled borders that often occur in manuscripts. THIS IS AN INSISTENT WORLD OF COLD, NON-HUMAN, FACTS.

The beginning of the paragraph is moved to the end.
Daniel Arbello

A single line slides out of a justified block.
Kapila Chase

*Writing moves words
from the sound world
to a world of*

V I S U A L S P A C E

but print locks words into position in this space. Control of position is everything in print. Printed texts look machine-made, as they are.

*In handwriting, control of
space tends to be ornamental,
ornate, as in calligraphy.*

Typographic control typically impresses most by its tidiness and invisibility: the lines perfectly regular, all justified on the right side, everything coming out even visually, and without the aid of guidelines or ruled borders that often occur in manuscripts.

This is an insistent world of cold, non-human, facts.

Print situates words in space more relentlessly than writing ever did. Writing moves words from the

sound world to a world of visual space, but print locks words into position in this space.

Control of position is everything in print. Printed texts look

ornamental, ornate, as in calligraphy. Typographic control typically impresses most

by its tidiness and invisibility: the lines perfectly regular, all justified on the right side,

everything coming out even visually, and without the aid of guidelines or ruled borders that often occur

machine-made, as they are. In handwriting, control of space tends to be

in manuscripts. This is an insistent world of cold, non-human, facts.

Elements break away from a justified column.
Efrat Levush

Text is forced into a grid of ragged squares.
Kim Bender

VERTICAL TEXT

Roman letters are designed to sit side by side, not on top of one another. Stacks of lowercase letters are especially awkward because the ascenders and descenders make the vertical spacing appear uneven, and the varied width of the characters makes the stacks look precarious. (The letter *I* is a perennial problem.) Capital letters form more stable stacks than lowercase letters. Centering the column helps to even out the differences in width. Many Asian writing systems, including Chinese, are traditionally written vertically; the square shape of the characters supports this orientation. The simplest way to make a line of Latin text vertical is to rotate the text from horizontal to vertical. This preserves the natural affinity among letters sitting on a line while creating a vertical axis.



BOOK SPINES Stacked letters sometimes appear on the spines of books, but vertical baselines are more common. Starting from the top and reading down is the dominant direction in the United States.

v
e
r
t
i
g
o

v
e
r
t
i
g
o

V
E
R
T
I
G
O

V
E
R
T
I
G
O

TYPE CRIME
STACKED LOWERCASE

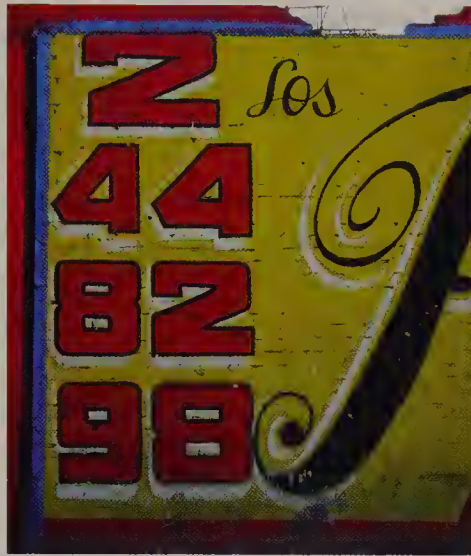
SMALL CAPS, STACKED

A FILM BY ALFRED HITCHCOCK
VERTIGO
A FILM BY ALFRED HITCHCOCK

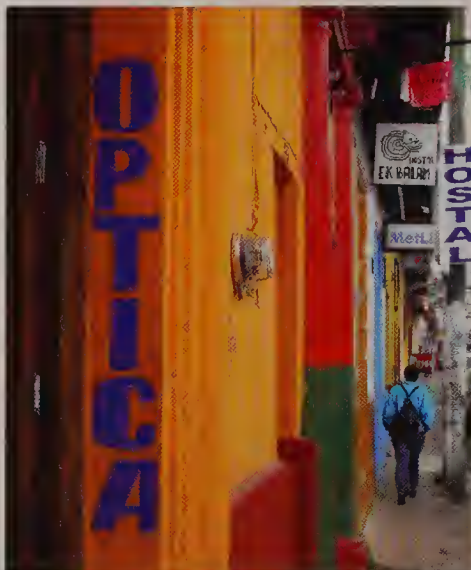
A FILM BY ALFRED HITCHCOCK
VERTIGO
A FILM BY ALFRED HITCHCOCK

top to bottom bottom to top both directions

VERTICAL BASELINES There is no fixed rule determining whether type should run from top to bottom or from bottom to top. It is more common, however, especially in the United States, to run text on the spines of books from top to bottom. (You can also run text up and down simultaneously.)



MEXICAN STREET SIGNS
Photographs by Andrea Marks. Stacked letters often appear on commercial street signs, which often employ thin, vertical slices of space. The letters in these signs were drawn by hand. Wide characters and squared-off Os stack better than narrow letters with traditional rounded forms. In some instances, the letters have been specially aligned to create vertical relationships, as in the "Optica" sign at right, painted on a sliver of flat molding inside a door frame.



SIMPATICO

BEVERLY D'ANGELO

JAMES GAMMON

MARCIA GAY HARDEN

ED HARRIS

FRED WARD

WELKER WHITE

STARTS
NOVEMBER 1
PUBLIC
THEATER

425 LAFAYETTE STREET
(212) 598-7150

WRITTEN AND
DIRECTED BY
SAM SHEPARD

122 | THINKING WITH TYPE

SIMPATICO Poster for the Public Theater, 1994. Designer: Paula Scher/Pentagram. *Type set on a vertical baseline creates movement across the poster. The theater's logo, which also employs a vertical baseline, can be easily placed on street banners.*

PARALLELEN IM
SCHNITTPUNKT
(CROSSING PARALLELS)
Poster, 1997. Designer:
Gerwin Schmidt. Publisher:
Art-Club Karlsruhe. *The axes
of type and landscape intersect
to create posters that are simple,
powerful, and direct. The text
is mirrored in German and
French.*





IN THE BEGINNING of a text, the reader needs an invitation to come inside. Enlarged capitals, also called *versals*, commonly mark the entrance to a chapter in a book or an article in a magazine. Many medieval manuscripts are illuminated with elaborately painted rubrics. This tradition continued with the rise of the printing press. At first, initials were hand-painted onto printed pages, making mass-

produced books resemble manuscripts, which were more valuable than printed books. Initials soon became part of typography. A printer could set them together with the main text in wood blocks or cast lead characters, or add them with a separate process such as engraving. Today, enlarged caps are easily styled as part of a publication's typographic system.



A
VIEW of the MONUMENTS.

In order to take this solemn Survey, it is necessary we should enter in at the Door of the South-Croft, as being most convenient for the better disposing the Plates; where the first Tomb you come at is a rough one, of coarse Marble, and looks, by the Moisture and Injury of the Weather, and the Nature of the Stone, much older than it is. This, which Poem is here exhibited, together with its Inscription, was erected to the Memory of Mr. Edmund Spenser, a Man of great Learning, and such a Justified Fancy, that his Works abound with as great Variety of Images (and curious, tho' small Paintings) as either our own, or any Language can afford in any Author. He dy'd, as you see by the Inscription, in the Year 1596. By what Mr. Camden and others say of this Monument, the Original was in Latin; which take in Camden's Words, as follows:

Edmundus Spenser Londinensis Angliarum pictorum, vestri Jovis foelicis Principis, quod etiam personam juvenilibus mactis et cultura genio conscriptis emendat. Obiit immatura morte, non saluti 1596. Et prope Colledium Chaucerum conditus, qui scripsit Perfora Augusti licet primus illustravit, in quem hoc scriptum fuit Epitaphium.

Hic prope Chaucerum fuit off Spenserius illi Proximus insignis, proximus Et tumulo.

Hic prope Chaucerum Spenserius posuit potum, Conditus Et rursus quoniam tumulo propter,

Anglica te vivo, vivit plausque postis, Nunc mortuam tunc te memento noxia.

In English thus:

"EDMUND SPENSER, born in London, and chief Poet of our Age; which his Works, written with a happy Spirit, and masterly Genius, testify. He died by a too early Death in the Year 1596, and lies buried near Chaucer, who was the first that successfully wrote Poetry in the English Language, over whom are written these Epitaphs."

Here

A VIEW OF THE MONUMENTS Book page, eighteenth century. This page was printed in two passes: letterpress type with engraved illustrations.

CROSSROADS **DREW WILPIN FAUST**

The University's Crisis of Purpose

This is the fifth in a series of essays exploring dominant themes and currents of thought in particular areas of American life. The next essay is in the series, which will continue in this space over the coming months, is scheduled to appear Sept. 20. An archive can be found at nymonline.com/crossroads.

THE world economic crisis and the election of Barack Obama will change the future of higher education. Even as universities, both public and private, face unanticipated financial constraints, both public and private, face unanticipated financial constraints. And in the past decade and a half, such conflicting and unbounded expectations have yielded a wave of criticism on issues ranging from the cost of college to universities' intellectual quality to their supposed decline into unflattering political correctness. A steady stream of books—among them "Degrading Degrees: Higher Education at Risk" (also a PBS special), edited by Richard H. Hersh and John Merrow; Anthony T. Kronman's "Education's End: Why Our Colleges and Universities Have Given Up on the Meaning of Life"; and Daniel D'Souza's "Villains of Education: The Politics of Race and Sex on Campus"—have delineated what various authors have seen as the failings of higher education.

At the same time, American colleges and universities have remained the envy of the world. A 2002 international ranking included 17 American educational institutions in the top 20, and a recent survey of American critics revealed that 83 percent of respondents considered our universities one of the country's "most valuable resources."

Such a widespread perception of the value of universities derives in no small part from very pragmatic realities: college education yields significant rewards. The median earnings for individuals with a B.A. are 74 percent higher than for workers who possess only a high school diploma.

In some respects, this is not new. Education has been central to the American Dream since the time of the nation's founding. But in the years since World War II, it was higher education, not just instruction at the elementary or high school levels, that emerged as necessary for a technologically skilled work force as well as fundamental to the overall value of opportunity. As late as the 1920s, one student in the United States would be one of five percent of the college-age population. They rose to about 15 percent by 1960, in part as a result of the G.I. Bill. They have now reached nearly 60 percent. The United States has pioneered a new postwar era of mass higher education that has become global in reach.

But today, for all its importance to individual and social prosperity, higher education threatens to become less broadly available. By the end of the 20th century, as Claudia Goldin and Lawrence F. Katz document in "The Race Between Education and Technology," the race of increases in educational attainment had significantly slowed, and the United States had fallen behind a number of other nations in the percentage of its youth attending college. Goldin and Katz demonstrate how this slowdown is creating a work force with inadequate technological abilities, as well as cost-cutting in rising levels of American inequality.

Escalating college costs have played a significant role in this slowdown, even as universities have substantially expanded their programs of financial aid. So, too, have declining levels of government support.

After World War II, the country witnessed the establishment of a new partnership between colleges and the federal government. This Republic of Learning, as it was called, was the product of a new partnership between colleges and the federal government.

When Washington and the nation's institutions of higher learning, with the federal government investing in universities as the primary locus for the nation's scientific research, this model now faces significant challenges. Deep federal deficits and combine with diminished university resources to intensify what a 2007 report by the National Academies declared to be a "gathering storm," one that threatened the future of scientific education and research in America. The Obama administration has set a goal of devoting more than 3 percent of gross domestic product to research. One hopes the highly ambitious aspiration can become a reality. The economic downturn has had what is perhaps as even more worrisome impact. It has reinforced America's deep-seated notion that a college degree serves largely instrumental purposes. The federal government's first effort to support higher education, the Morrill Act of 1862, which established land grant colleges, was intended to advance the "practical education of the industrial classes." A Department of Education report from 2004, "A Test of Leadership: Charting the Future of Higher Education," concentrated on creating a competitive American work force and advancing "our collective prosperity." But even as we as a nation have embraced education as critical to economic growth and opportunity, we should remember that colleges and universities are about as great a deal more than measurable utility. Unlike perhaps any other institutions in the world, they embrace the long view and nurture the kind of critical perspectives that look far beyond the present.

Higher education is not about results in the next quarter but about discoveries that may take — and last — decades or even centuries. Neither the abiding questions of humanistic inquiry nor the winding paths of scientific research that leads ultimately to innovation and discovery can be neatly fitted within a predictable budget and timetable.

In an assessment of the condition of higher education in the Anglo-American world, "Multiversities, Ideas, and Democracy" George Follis, a former dean at York University in Toronto, explores the growing dominance of economic justifications for universities. They conflict, he argues, "with other parts of the university's mission, with... narratives of liberal learning, disinterested scholarship and social citizenship." University leaders, he observes, have embraced a market model of university purpose to justify themselves to the society that supports them with philanthropy and tax dollars. Higher education, Follis insists, has the responsibility to serve not just as a source of economic growth, but as society's critic and conscience.

Universities are meant to be producers not just of knowledge but also of (often inconvenient) doubt. They are creative and surely places, homes to a polyphony of voices. But at this moment in our history, universities might well ask if they have in fact done enough to raise the deep and unsettling questions necessary in any society.

Should universities have presented a firmer counterweight to economic irresponsibility?

As the world indulged in a bubble of false prosperity and excessive materialism, should universities — their research, teaching and writing — have made greater efforts to expose the patterns of risk and denial? Should universities have presented a firmer counterweight to economic irresponsibility? Have universities become too captive to the immediate and worldly purposes they serve? Has the market model become the fundamental and defining identity of higher education?

Since the 1970s there has been a steep decline in the percentage of students majoring in the liberal arts and sciences, and an accompanying increase in pre-professional undergraduate degrees. Business is now far the most popular undergraduate major, with twice as many bachelor's degrees awarded in this area than in any other field of study. In the era of economic decline before us, the pressure toward vocational pursuits is likely to intensify.

As a nation, we need to ask more than that from our universities. Higher learning can offer individuals and societies a depth and breadth of vision absent from inevitably myopic present. Human beings need meaning, understanding and perspective as well as jobs. The question should not be whether we can afford to believe in such purposes in these times, but whether we can afford not to.

NEW YORK TIMES BOOK REVIEW Newspaper page, 2009. Art director: Nicholas Blechman. Illustrator: Ellen Lupton. The dropped capital is a separate illustration placed in the layout.

IN THIS PARAGRAPH, the enlarged capital sits on the same baseline as the text that follows. This simple solution is easy to implement on both page and screen. Setting the first few words of the text block in SMALL CAPITALS helps smooth the transition between the initial and the text.

AN ENLARGED LETTER cut into the text block is called a *dropped capital* or *drop cap*. This example was produced using the Drop Caps feature in InDesign. The software automatically creates a space around one or more characters and drops them the requested number of lines. The designer can adjust the size and tracking of the capital to match it to the surrounding text. Similar solutions can be implemented on the web in CSS. The space around the capital is rectangular, which can be visually awkward, as seen here with the sloping silhouette of the letter A.

WAS IT THE BEST OF TIMES, the worst of times, or just Times New Roman? The dropped capital used here (The Serif Bold) was positioned as a separate element. A text wrap was applied to an invisible box sitting behind the capital, so that the text appears to flow around the intruding right prow of the W. Likewise, the left prow extends out into the margin, making the character feel firmly anchored in the text block. Hand-crafted solutions like this one cannot be applied systematically.

GRAB YOUR
READER BY
THE CAHUNAS
AND NEVER
EVER LET GO

DESIGNERS SOMETIMES ADAPT the drop cap convention for other purposes. An illustration or icon can appear in place of a letterform. Purely typographic alternatives are also possible, such as inserting a title or subtitle into space carved from the primary text block. Such devices mobilize a familiar page structure for diverse and sometimes unexpected uses.


MARKING PARAGRAPHS

Paragraphs do not occur in nature. Whereas sentences are grammatical units intrinsic to the spoken language, paragraphs are a literary convention designed to divide masses of content into appetizing portions.

Indents have been common since the seventeenth century. Adding space between paragraphs (*paragraph spacing*) is another standard device. On the web, a paragraph is a semantic unit (the `<p>` tag in html) that is typically displayed on screen with space inserted after it.

A typical indent is an *em space*, or a *quad*, a fixed unit of space roughly the width of the letter's cap height. An em is thus proportional to the size of the type; if you change the point size or column width, the indents will remain appropriately scaled. Alternatively, you can use the tab key to create an indent of any depth. A designer might use this technique in order to align the indents with a vertical grid line or other page element. Avoid indenting the very first line of a body of text. An indent signals a break or separation; there is no need to make a break when the text has just begun.

Despite the ubiquity of indents and paragraph spacing, designers have developed numerous alternatives that allow them to shape content in distinctive ways.

 **NERD ALERT:** Use the Space After Paragraph feature in your page layout program to insert a precise increment of space between paragraphs. Skipping a full line often creates too open an effect and wastes a lot of space. Get in the habit of inserting a full paragraph return (Enter key) only at the end of paragraphs; insert a line break when you don't want to add additional space (Shift + Enter).

The table is covered with a table cloth which itself is protected by a plastic table cloth. Drapes and double drapes are at the windows. We have carpets, slipcovers, coasters, wainscoting, lampshades. Each trinket sits on a doily, each flower in its pot, and each pot in its saucer.

Everything is protected and surrounded. Even in the garden, each cluster is encircled with wire netting, each path is outlined by bricks, mosaics, or flagstones.

This could be analyzed as an anxious sequestration, as an obsessional symbolism: the obsession of the cottage owner and small capitalist not only to possess, but to underline what he possesses two or three times. There, as other places, the unconscious speaks in the redundancy of signs, in their connotations and overworking.

— Jean Baudrillard, 1969

INDENT AND LINE BREAK

The table is covered with a table cloth which itself is protected by a plastic table cloth. Drapes and double drapes are at the windows. We have carpets, slipcovers, coasters, wainscoting, lampshades. Each trinket sits on a doily, each flower in its pot, and each pot in its saucer.

Everything is protected and surrounded. Even in the garden, each cluster is encircled with wire netting, each path is outlined by bricks, mosaics, or flagstones.

This could be analyzed as an anxious sequestration, as an obsessional symbolism: the obsession of the cottage owner and small capitalist not only to possess, but to underline what he possesses two or three times. There, as other places, the unconscious speaks in the redundancy of signs, in their connotations and overworking.

— Jean Baudrillard, 1969

LINE BREAK AND 1/2 LINE SPACE (PARAGRAPH SPACING)

The table is covered with a table cloth which itself is protected by a plastic table cloth. Drapes and double drapes are at the windows. We have carpets, slipcovers, coasters, wainscoting, lampshades. Each trinket sits on a doily, each flower in its pot, and each pot in its saucer.

Everything is protected and surrounded. Even in the garden, each cluster is encircled with wire netting, each path is outlined by bricks, mosaics, or flagstones.

This could be analyzed as an anxious sequestration, as an obsessional symbolism: the obsession of the cottage owner and small capitalist not only to possess, but to underline what he possesses two or three times. There, as other places, the unconscious speaks in the redundancy of signs, in their connotations and overworking.

— Jean Baudrillard, 1969

OUTDENT (HANGING INDENTATION) AND LINE BREAK

The table is covered with a table cloth which itself is protected by a plastic table cloth. Drapes and double drapes are at the windows. We have carpets, slipcovers, coasters, wainscoting, lampshades. Each trinket sits on a doily, each flower in its pot, and each pot in its saucer. ■ Everything is protected and surrounded. Even in the garden, each cluster is encircled with wire netting, each path is outlined by bricks, mosaics, or flagstones. ■ This could be analyzed as an anxious sequestration, as an obsessional symbolism: the obsession of the cottage owner and small capitalist not only to possess, but to underline what he possesses two or three times. There, as other places, the unconscious speaks in the redundancy of signs, in their connotations and overworking.

— Jean Baudrillard, 1969

SYMBOL, WITHOUT INDENT OR LINE BREAK

The table is covered with a table cloth which itself is protected by a plastic table cloth. Drapes and double drapes are at the windows. We have carpets, slipcovers, coasters, wainscoting, lampshades. Each trinket sits on a doily, each flower in its pot, and each pot in its saucer. Everything is protected and surrounded. Even in the garden, each cluster is encircled with wire netting, each path is outlined by bricks, mosaics, or flagstones. This could be analyzed as an anxious sequestration, as an obsessional symbolism: the obsession of the cottage owner and small capitalist not only to possess, but to underline what he possesses two or three times. There, as other places, the unconscious speaks in the redundancy of signs, in their connotations and overworking.

— Jean Baudrillard, 1969

EXTRA SPACE INSIDE LINE, WITHOUT LINE BREAK

The table is covered with a table cloth which itself is protected by a plastic table cloth. Drapes and double drapes are at the windows. We have carpets, slipcovers, coasters, wainscoting, lampshades. Each trinket sits on a doily, each flower in its pot, and each pot in its saucer.

Everything is protected and surrounded. Even in the garden, each cluster is encircled with wire netting, each path is outlined by bricks, mosaics, or flagstones.

This could be analyzed as an anxious sequestration, as an obsessional symbolism: the obsession of the cottage owner and small capitalist not only to possess, but to underline what he possesses two or three times. There, as other places, the unconscious speaks in the redundancy of signs, in their connotations and overworking.

— Jean Baudrillard, 1969

TYPE CRIME: TOO MANY SIGNALS *Using paragraph spacing and indents together squanders space and gives the text block a flabby, indefinite shape.*

*Dominus Salomoni secundo apprens, iubet
sua seruire precepta, addita commina-
tione nisi seruata fuerint, Salomon
plures adificat ciuitates, gen-
tes sibi facit tributarias,
& classe in Ophir
missa plurimum
auri reci-
pit.*

CAP. IX.

E A C T V M est autem cum perfec-
cisset Salomon ædificium domus
Domini, & ædificium regis, &
omne quod optauerat & volue-
rat facere, ² apparuit ei Dominus
secundo || sicut apparuerat ei in
Gabaon. ³ Dixitque Dominus ad eum, Exaudiui
orationem tuam & deprecationem tuam, quam de-
precatus es coram me: sanctificauī domū hanc quam
ædificasti, vt ponerem nomen meum ibi in sempiternum,
& erunt oculi mei & cor meum ibi cunctis diebus.
⁴ Tu quoque si ambulaueris coram me, sicut ambulauit
* pater tuus, in simplicitate cordis & in æquitate:
& feceris omnia quæ præcepi tibi, & legitima mea
& iudicia mea seruaueris, ⁵ ponam thronum regni tui
super Israel in sempiternum, || sicut locutus sum
Dauid patri tuo, dicens, Non auferetur vir de genere tuo
de folio Israel. ⁶ Si autem auersione auerſi fueritis vos
& filij vestri, non sequentes me, nec custodientes
mandata mea, & ceremonias meas quas propofui vobis,
sed abieritis & colueritis deos alienos, & adoraueritis
eos: ⁷ auferam Israel de superficie terræ quam dedi eis,
& templum quod sanctificauī nomini meo proiciam à cōspectu meo,
eritque Israel in prouerbium, & in fabulam cunctis populis.
⁸ Et domus hæc erit in exemplum: omnis qui transferit
per eam, stupebit & sibilabit, & dicet, || Quare fecit
Dominus sic terræ huic & domui huic? ⁹ Et respondebunt,
Quia dereliquerunt Dominum Deum suum, qui eduxit
patres eorum de terra Ægypti, & secuti sunt deos alienos,
& adorauerunt eos, & coluerunt eos: idcirco induxit
Dominus super eos omne malum hoc. ¹⁰ || Expletis autem
annis viginti postquam ædificauerat Salomon duas domos,
id est, domum Domini & domum regis. ¹¹ (Hiram rege
Tyri præbente Salomoni ligna cedrina & abiegna,
& aurum iuxta omne quod opus habuerat:) tunc dedit
* Salomon Hiram viginti oppida in terra Galilææ.
¹² Et egressus est Hiram de Tyro, vt videret oppida
quæ dederat ei Salomon, & non placuerunt ei, ¹³ & ait,
Hæcine sunt ciuitates quas dedisti mihi, frater? Et appellauit
eas Teram-chabul, vsque in diem hanc. ¹⁴ Misit quoque
Hiram

A
*2. Par. 7. c. 11.
Sup. 3. a. 5.*

* David 2.
*2. Re. 7. b. 12
c. 16.
1. Pa. 2. 2. b. 10.*

B
*De. 29. d. 24.
Ier. 22. b. 3.*

2. Par. 8. a. 1

* Ier. L

C

Different kinds of content invite different approaches to marking paragraphs. In early printed books, paragraphs were indicated with a symbol, such as ||, with no additional space or line break. In the seventeenth century, it became standard to indent the first line of a paragraph and break the line at the end. Commercial printing tends to embrace fragmentation over wholeness, allowing readers to sample bits and pieces of text. Modern literary forms such as the interview invite designers to construct inventive typographic systems.



ALL BUILT-IN FIXTURES are furnished with nickel hardware and 1½-inch casing, to be used as a casing or as a ground for the finished casing.

Stock carried in pine (unfinished).

All ironing boards carried in stock are 12 inches wide—any width made to order.

“PEERLESS” equipment is very simple to install, will require no special arrangements of your plans and will make your house or apartment a real home, a good investment and add a distinction you could not acquire otherwise.

Hoosier Cabinets furnished in oak or flat white finish. Also with aluminum or porcelain table slides.



BIBLE Page detail, c. 1500. In this beautiful arrangement, the dense, unbroken text column contrasts with a flurry of surrounding details, including a dropped capital, marginal notes, and the triangular chapter summary.

COMMERCIAL PAMPHLET, 1911. This busy design entreats the reader with an overload of signals: indents, line breaks, paragraph spacing, and ornaments.

dominate its board?

I'd be interested to know what Maxwell Anderson and David Ross think about the possibility of changing the membership of museum boards so that they more fully represent the communities they claim to serve. Can we imagine a Whitney Museum board that is not a rich man's club?

Irving Sandler

There are diverse museum audiences. A significant constituency consists of artists. They need what they see to make art. In talking to artists, at least of my generation, everyone has told me of the importance of the Museum of Modern Art's permanent collection in the development of their art. I would hope that museums could serve all of their diverse audiences, but the health of art and its future depends on how they meet the needs of artists.

Maurice Berger

Dan, you wrote: "Because of this feeling of being excluded, I believe that one of the most important commitments any museum professional can make is to try to reach out and connect to the public through continuous lectures, gallery tours, workshops, and the difficult but necessary writing of readable wall and brochure texts."

This is a very important point, yet I suspect that you may be the exception rather than the rule. All too often, I have found (as a consultant to a number of museums) resistance on the part of many curators to examining and improving their pedagogical skills. Indeed, education departments are often marginal to or left out of the curatorial process. On Thursday, I will open a two-day session on museum education, public address, and pedagogy.

Irving, you wrote: "A significant constituency consists of artists. They need what they see to make art. . . . I would hope that museums could serve all of their diverse audiences, but the health of art and its future depends on how they meet the needs of artists."

A very important observation—the museum as a space of education, inspiration, and motivation for other artists.

Maxwell L. Anderson

Alan asked about the possibility of opening up major museum boards. It took me quite some time to persuade the Whitney Museum board that it would be logical to have a seat for an artist. I was lucky enough to have three artists on the board of Toronto's Art Gallery of Ontario, a much larger museum spanning from the Renaissance to the present with a budget comparable to the Whitney's.

The concern expressed by the Whitney's board was that having an artist could create conflicts of interest. I noted that it might well be a conflict of interest to have trustees who actively collected in the general areas that the museum does, but that I trust members to recuse themselves when discussions warrant it.

Eventually, I was given the green light by the Nominating Committee to invite Chuck Close, who graciously accepted over a bottle of Glenlivet in his studio, and proved to be a superb trustee. Chuck has helped keep the conversation alive and focused on the museum's mission. His term was up this June.

My nominee to succeed him would have provided a return engagement to mine a museum, in this case the Whitney, but that was not to be. Chuck's term has been extended, and he will be terrific as long as he cares to stay on. My preference was to alternate, at the end of each three-year term, between a more senior artist and a midcareer artist.

As far as other positions on boards, the prevailing desire of most nominating committees is to have trustees with the means necessary to fuel a campaign and support the annual fiscal burden of the operating budget. One can understand the impulse. On the other hand, across the nation there is still an unfulfilled need for greater ethnic diversity and better representation of various segments of an artistic spectrum—in the Whitney's case, for example, for more collectors of contemporary art.

For the makeup of a board to change, there has to be an overarching will to do it. That is not the impulse around the United States today. When times are tight, whatever will there might be is put to the side in a quest to find people with proven capacity to give.

Mary Kelly

Over the years, I have noticed how the same work, shown in different contexts, draws vastly different audiences, in terms of numbers and responses, and perhaps this is why I placed emphasis on the issue of reception in my earlier remarks. Of course, in making a work, there is a subjective investment that presupposes an audience, or put another way, the desire of the other. I think artists are always speaking, consciously or unconsciously, to very specific people—friends, lovers, patrons, collectors, and sometimes to certain communities—professional, political, social, generational, or geographic, but this is never the same audience constructed by the exhibition.

Considered as a "statement," you could say an exhibition is formulated by a curator/author who is given the

MUSEUMS OF TOMORROW:

A VIRTUAL DISCUSSION Book spread, 2004. Designed by Franc Nunoo-Quarcoo and Karen Howard. *Outdents (instead of indents) mark paragraph breaks in this multi-authored text.*

DESIGN BEYOND DESIGN

Book spread, 2004. Designed and edited by Jan van Toorn. *Lines and blocks of text slide into the margin to mark changes of voice in an ongoing conversation.*

discussion

friday 7 november

hasn't been any talking about artistic practice and political practice. So how can artists and graphic designers intervene? At the same time, it is not for the others that one intervenes, it is with the others and for oneself. That is very important; we should not be paternalistic missionaries. I think that politics itself is an art, politics is the art of managing conflicts, the art of relations of force, and therefore necessarily involves the people who possess the power of expression. For me, reminding you that expression and the orderly transfer of ideas play a very, very important role in conflicts.

Member of the audience

I would like to ask Jörg Petruschat how he sees the relation between social conflict and artistic practice, especially in relation to design.

Jörg Petruschat

I can hear... but today it's the seventh of november and... at school I had to learn russian. I'll try it. I came here for three reasons. I see that revolution in technology served to cement the social status quo. Many designers hope to change the world when they go to technologies and I think that is a big illusion. And my duty is not to say to you what you have to do in future, but my duty is to think about what I see in the present. And I think it's an illusion to run behind the technology changes in the hope of changing the social status quo. In my opinion we should not make the mistake of thinking that we are the greatest because we are the latest. We have to look into the history and the problems of history because the situation, as I showed, from the fifteenth down to the nineteenth century has many similarities with the situation today. That's the first.

The second is that technology is a political structure, it transmits a kind of power, of economic power, and this is a new form that we cannot touch in our everyday life. This technology functions behind a façade. So the political is also structural in this case.

When designers think there are possibilities to change the world in contact with these technological systems they think like Walter Gropius, that the computer is only an instrument. I think that is false. The computer is not only an instrument but a big structure with many standards, and standards affect everyday life. That's the third reason.

Member of the audience

I enjoyed Susan's talk very much. But I have some doubts. Are you really saying: I want to go back to the original meaning of the word aesthetics, to go back to perception, and I want to see how perception is displaced in our culture?

Susan Buck-Morss

I do think that there is this opacity of representation, in other words, the way art is not just communication, the way that there's something

else going on there. Either it's the medium itself, or it's something else that is extremely important. That's the most political we can do better to concentrate on that, than to think about exactly what message is getting across in the sense of a representational message, a direct message. But when you speak about aesthetics and an aesthetics problematic, I think it's what the avant-garde can only hope to do now. I think the avant-garde legitimated its leadership in the past by thinking it knew where history was going. I think the notion of history in progress is very dangerous. You can't be elitist if you know where we're going and you know what's holding us. I really agree with Benjamin that one has to stay radical but give up absolutely the notion of progress or automatic progress.

What does that leave for an avant-garde? That is my question and I was trying to argue as one part of political art, but not all of political art. And in this avant-garde possibility I was thinking about interruption in a temporal sense, or displacement. Maybe it is a very important political intervention to even use their own bodies as this kind of space where not very pleasant things happen. I do think that it's still possible, and for me rather fruitful, to think of a tradition of avant-garde art and how that could be reformulated, not in the way that would say what political art should be about, but something that gives some description and direction.

Lorraine Wild

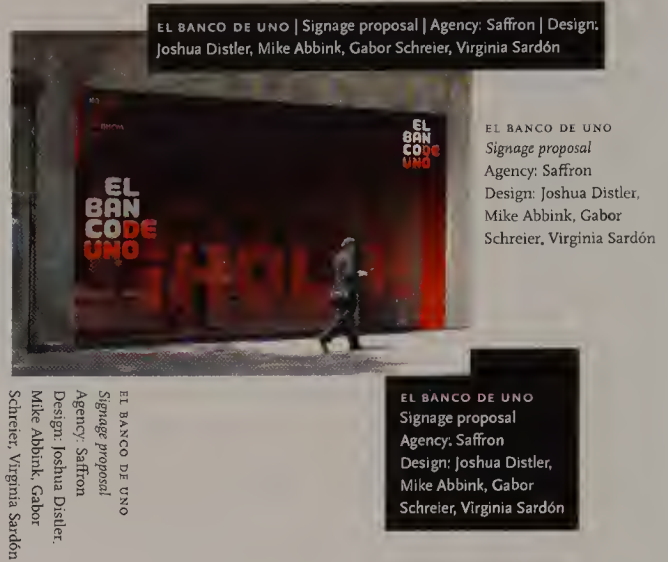
My question... do you think that in the context of what you're talking about, that it keeps being useful to talk about art, even at all as the definition of what is actually avant-garde or necessary at the moment? I was thinking about that when you opened up with the installation by Ramirez in Tijuana's public plaza, that in fact is a building that demonstrates a code. You could actually not call that art at all, you could call that an informational exhibition, but that somehow this nomenclature that we attach to the activity immediately sets it out into a different round, makes it more difficult to talk about; and that anchored with the whole idea of cultural hierarchy that in fact works against the very thing.

Susan Buck-Morss

Well, I mean it's interesting, what you say. What the difference is between the word design and the word art. Art is the code word in late western bourgeois society for disinterested interest, for non-instrumental practice. And so I am trying to occupy that or to use it. In fact you're talking about public space of communication; you're not actually talking about anything that obeys the conventional definitions of art. Somehow, we get stuck with this almost retrogressive notion of art, but then actually that very same definition has been used to prevent or tends to create a wall when it comes to this sort of activ-

CAPTIONS

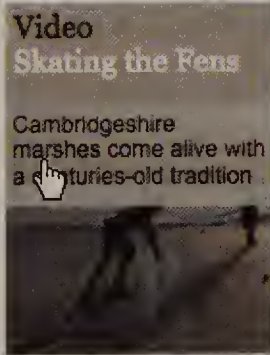
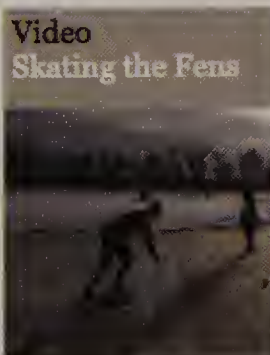
The placement and styling of captions affect the reader's experience as well as the visual economy and impact of page layouts. Some readers are primarily attracted to pictures and captions, while others prefer to follow a dominant written narrative, consulting illustrations in support of the text. From a reader's perspective, close proximity of captions and images is a welcome convenience. Placing captions adjacent to pictures is not always an efficient use of space, however. Designers should approach such problems editorially. If captions are essential to understanding the visual content, keep them close to the pictures. If their function is merely documentary, adjacency is more easily sacrificed.



1 Newspaper, 2009. Design: Nick Mrozowski.
© www.ionline.pt. Captions tell a story in this layout from the Portuguese newspaper i.



CAPTIONS FOR THE WEB Online content management systems coordinate pictures and captions in a database. Designers use rules, frames, overlays, and color blocks to visually connect images and captions, creating coherent units. Shown here are four different ways to style captions for the web.



INTERACTIVE WEB CAPTIONS

Guardian.co.uk, 2009. Design director: Mark Porter. A secondary caption reveals itself when users rolls over this image on the Guardian's home page.

HIERARCHY

A typographic *hierarchy* expresses the organization of content, emphasizing some elements and subordinating others. A visual hierarchy helps readers scan a text, knowing where to enter and exit and how to pick and choose among its offerings. Each level of the hierarchy should be signaled by one or more cues, applied consistently across a body of text. A cue can be spatial (indent, line spacing, placement) or graphic (size, style, color). Infinite variations are possible.

Writers are trained to avoid redundancy as seen in the expressions “future plans” or “past history.” In typography, some redundancy is acceptable, even recommended. For example, paragraphs are traditionally marked with a line break *and* an indent, a redundancy that has proven quite practical, as each signal provides backup for the other. To create an elegant economy of signals, try using no more than three cues for each level or break in a document.

Emphasizing a word or phrase within a body of text usually requires only one signal. *Italic* is the standard form of emphasis. There are many alternatives, however, including **boldface**, SMALL CAPS, or a **change in color**. A full-range type family such as Scala has many weight and style variations designed to work together. You can also create emphasis with a **different font**. If you want to mix font families, such as Scala and **Futura**, adjust the sizes so that the x-heights align.

BOLD,
ITALIC,
UNDERLINED
CAPS!

TYPE CRIME

TOO MANY SIGNALS
*Emphasis can be created
with just one shift.*

EXPRESSING HIERARCHY

I	Division of angels	Division of angels	DIVISION OF ANGELS	
	A. Angel	Angel	Angel	angel
	B. Archangel	Archangel	Archangel	DIVISION OF ANGELS archangel
	C. Cherubim	Cherubim	Cherubim	cherubim
	D. Seraphim	Seraphim	Seraphim	seraphim
II	Ruling body of clergy	Ruling body of clergy	RULING BODY OF CLERGY	
	A. Pope	Pope	Pope	pope
	B. Cardinal	Cardinal	Cardinal	RULING BODY OF CLERGY cardinal
	C. Archbishop	Archbishop	Archbishop	archbishop
	D. Bishop	Bishop	Bishop	bishop
III	Parts of a text	Parts of a text	PARTS OF A TEXT	
	A. Work	Work	Work	work
	B. Chapter	Chapter	Chapter	PARTS OF A TEXT chapter
	C. Section	Section	Section	section
	D. Subsection	Subsection	Subsection	subsection
	SYMBOLS, INDENTS, AND LINE BREAKS	INDENTS AND LINE BREAKS ONLY	FONT CHANGE, INDENTS, AND LINE BREAKS	ALIGNMENT, FONT CHANGE, AND LINE BREAKS

MAIN HEAD

COMMON TYPOGRAPHIC DISEASES

MAIN TEXT

Various forms of dysfunction appear among populations exposed to typography for long periods of time. Listed here are a number of frequently observed afflictions.

SUBSECTIONS

TYPOPHILIA An excessive attachment to and fascination with the shape of letters, often to the exclusion of other interests and object choices. Typophiliacs usually die penniless and alone.

TYPOPHOBIA The irrational dislike of letterforms, often marked by a preference for icons, dingbats, and—in fatal cases—bullets and daggers. The fears of the typophobe can often be quieted (but not cured) by steady doses of Helvetica and Times Roman.

TYPOCHONDRIA A persistent anxiety that one has selected the wrong typeface. This condition is often paired with OKD (optical kerning disorder), the need to constantly adjust and readjust the spaces between letters.

TYPOTHERMIA The promiscuous refusal to make a lifelong commitment to a single typeface—or even to five or six, as some doctors recommend. The *typothermiac* is constantly tempted to test drive “hot” new fonts, often without a proper license.

There are endless ways to express the hierarchy of a document.

COMMON TYPOGRAPHIC DISEASES

Various forms of dysfunction appear among populations exposed to typography for long periods of time. Listed here are a number of frequently observed afflictions.

Typophilia An excessive attachment to and fascination with the shape of letters, often to the exclusion of other interests and object choices. Typophiliacs usually die penniless and alone.

Typophobia The irrational dislike of letterforms, often marked by a preference for icons, dingbats, and—in fatal cases—bullets and daggers. The fears of the typophobe can often be quieted (but not cured) by steady doses of Helvetica and Times Roman.

Typochondria A persistent anxiety that one has selected the wrong typeface. This condition is often paired with OKD (optical kerning disorder), the need to constantly adjust and readjust the spaces between letters.

Typothermia The promiscuous refusal to make a lifelong commitment to a single typeface—or even to five or six, as some doctors recommend. The *typothermiac* is constantly tempted to test drive “hot” new fonts, often without a proper license.



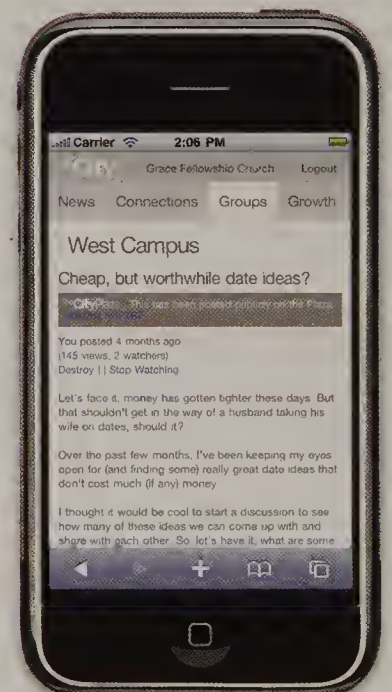
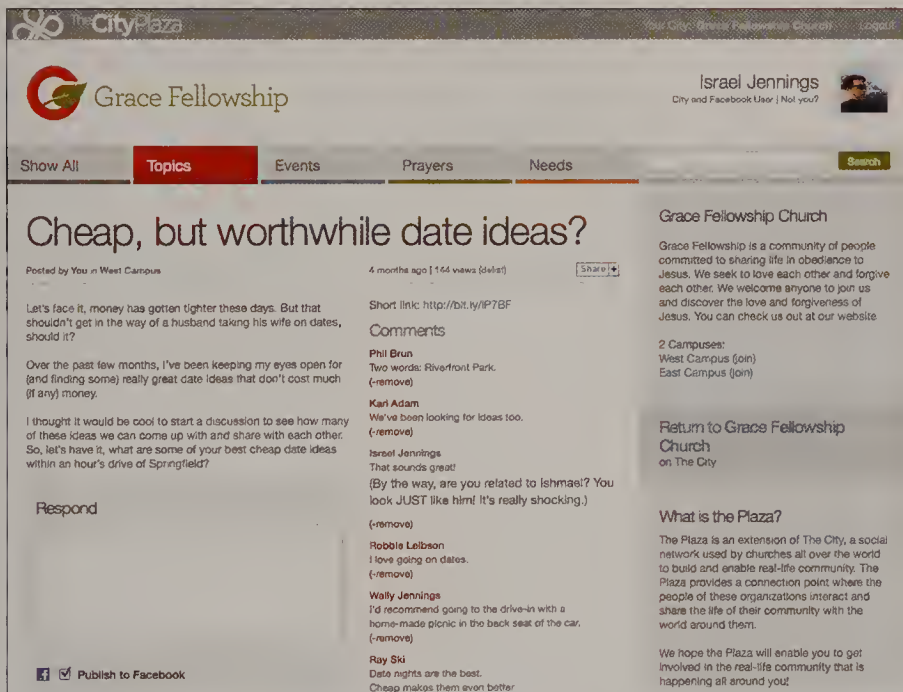
Half Title

SOLIDARIETÀ INTERNAZIONALE Magazine redesign, 2009.
Design: Sezione Aurea. Publications often commission design firms to create new formats that can be implemented by staff designers and editors. This redesign uses the typefaces Myriad and Utopia, designed by Robert Slimbach. A comprehensive style guide serves to communicate the new format to the magazine's staff.

STRUCTURAL HIERARCHY Designers and editors should organize content structurally rather than stylistically, especially in digital documents. When creating style sheets in a page layout program, label the elements with terms such as “title,” “subtitle,” and “caption” rather than “bold,” “tiny,” or “apple green Arial.” In CSS, elements such as `em` (emphasis), `strong`, and `p` (paragraph) are structural, whereas `i` (italic), `b` (bold), and `br` (break) are visual. As a body of content is translated into different media, the styles should continue to refer to the parts of the document rather than to specific visual attributes.

Structural hierarchies help make websites understandable to search engines and accessible to diverse users. A document should have only one `h1` heading, because search engines apply the strongest value to this level of the document. Thus to conform with web standards, designers should apply heading levels (`h1`, `h2`, and so on) structurally, even when they choose to make some levels look the same. Using structural, semantic markup is a central principle of web standards.

For more on web standards, see Jeffrey Zeldman with Ethan Marcotte, *Designing with Web Standards*, third edition (Berkeley, CA: New Riders, 2009).



THE CITY Website, 2010. Designer: Graham Stinson. *The City* is a social networking site that helps churches and non-profits engage in community activities. Auto-detection determines whether the reader is using a desktop or mobile phone and then re-routes layout characteristics in order to create a custom view. Each layout references a different CSS file; the main HTML for each page remains the same.

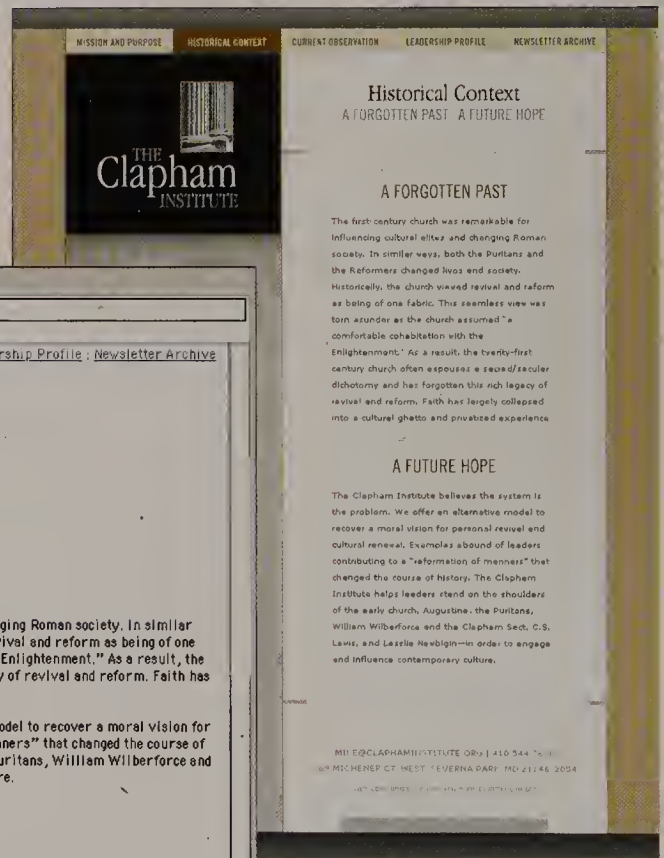
HIERARCHY

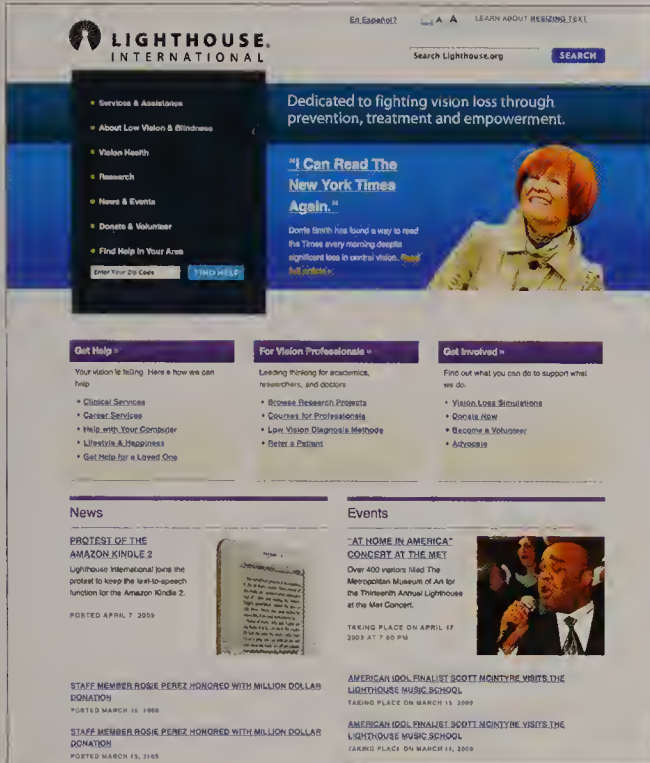
HIERARCHY AND ACCESSIBILITY The web was invented in order to provide universal access to information, regardless of a person's physical abilities or access to specialized hardware or software. Many users lack the browsers or software plug-ins required for displaying certain kinds of files, while visually impaired users have difficulty with small type and non-verbal content. Creating structural hierarchies allows designers to plan alternate layouts suited to the software, hardware, and physical needs of diverse audiences.

Sometimes good typography is heard, not seen. Visually impaired users employ automated screen readers that linearize websites into a continuous text that can be read aloud by a machine. Techniques for achieving successful linearization include avoiding layout tables; consistently using alt tags, image captions, and image descriptions; and placing page anchors in front of repeated navigation elements that enable users to go directly to the main content. Various software programs allow designers to test the linearization of their pages.

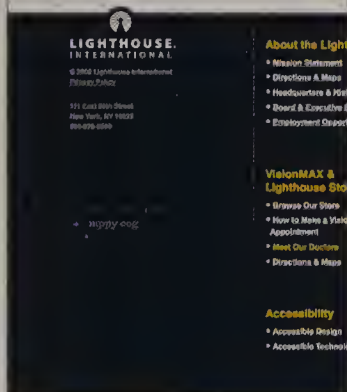
CLAPHAMINSTITUTE.ORG Website, 2003.

Designer: Colin Day/Exclamation Communications. Publisher: The Clapham Institute. *This site was designed to be accessible to sighted and non-sighted users. Below is a linearized version of the home page. A visually impaired reader would hear this text, including the alt tags for each image. The "skip to content" anchor allows users to avoid listening to a list of navigation elements.*





LIGHTHOUSE.ORG Website, 2010. Design: Dan Mall and Kevin Sharon/Happy Cog. Front-end code: Jenn Lukas. Information architecture: Kevin Hoffman. Accessibility research and testing: Angela Colter and Jennifer Sutton. *The visual layout of this website (LEFT) is optimized for sighted users, while the source order of the code (BELOW) is optimized for the visually impaired, allowing users to linearize the text with an automated screen reader. For example, in the visual display, the navigation menu appears immediately below the logo. In the source code, however, the organization name is followed directly by the tagline, preventing the top of the page from clogging up with navigation elements. Such differences between the visual display and the source order are kept to a minimum because not everyone who uses a screen reader is blind, and some people with disabilities who navigate via source order can see the visual layout with their eyes. If the visual layout differs too much from the source code, these users would be confused. The relationship between the visual layout and the source order is also optimized for search engines.*



```
<body class="home">
<div id="content-wrap">

<div id="header">

<p class="language"><a href="#">En Espa&ntilde;ol?</a></p>

<p class="move"><a href="#content">Skip to main content</a></p>

<h1>

<a href="/" title="home">Lighthouse International</a>
</h1>

<div class="home-intro">

<p class="mission"><strong>Dedicated to fighting vision loss through prevention, treatme

<div class="home-feature">
<a href="/services-assistance/help-with-computers-technology/dorries-sight/i
<p>Dorrie Smith has found a way to read the Times every morning despite signific

</div>

<div id="home-empty-repeat"></div>

</div>

<form action="/results/" method="post" id="search">
<fieldset>
<legend><label for="searchtext" class="move-js">Search Lighthouse.org</label></li>

<p>

<input type="text" id="searchtext" name="searchtext" class="filled" valu
<input type="image" src="/i/widgets/search.gif" alt="Search" />

</p>
</fieldset>

</form>

<div id="secondary">
<ul>

<li class="first"><a href="/services-assistance/">Services & Assistance</a></li>
<li><a href="/low-vision-and-blindness/">About Low Vision & Blindness</a></li>
<li><a href="/vision-health/">Vision Health</a></li>
<li><a href="/research/">Research</a></li>
<li><a href="/news-events/">News & Events</a></li>
<li><a href="/donate-volunteer/">Donate & Volunteer</a></li>
<li class="form-wrap">
<form action="/listings/" method="post" id="find-help">
<p>
<label for="searcharea">Find Help In Your Area</label>
<input type="text" id="searcharea" name="searcharea" val
<input type="image" src="/i/widgets/find-help.gif" alt="
</p>
</form>
</li>
</ul>
</div>
```

abgebildet:

„Ich habe es nicht gewollt.“

Bei Solifons wurden die schuldigen Reih'n
Von den tapfern Deutschen geschlagen,
Da stellt nach der Schlacht Kaiser Wilhelm sich ein,
Um den Helden ein Dankwort zu sagen.

Und wo der geliebte Herrscher erscheint,
Erhoben sich grüßend die Hände.
Aus tausend kräftigen Stimmen vereint
Gab's ein Jubelgeschrei ohne Ende.

Nachdem schritt der Kaiser, der stilllich bewegt,
Auf das Feld, wo vor wenigen Stunden
Die Helden zur ewigen Ruh' man gelegt,
Die den Tod auf dem Schlachtfeld gefunden.

Am Grab eines Jünglings stand der Kaiser gebannt.
Nimm „Siebzehn“ — im Grab bei den Ailen. —
Der Herrscher von Wehmut seht übermannt
Nimm' der Tränen sich nicht mehr enthalten.

Er betete Worte — ferndeutlich — tren wie Gold,
Vor denen ein Weltall sich beuge:
„Sollt Vater im Himmel — ich hab's
nicht gewollt.
Du weißt es — Du bist mein Zeuge.“

Paul Hammer
Dietrichsberg 1.

1911 Genehmigung des Generalstaatsanwalts.

Karl Kraus zählt Wilhelm II.
zu „den Schwerverbrechern
auf dem Thron“ mit der
„Beteuerung, daß sie es nicht
gewollt haben, woran sie,
da sie es taten, doch schuldig
sind“ [F 595,2].

- gemeinsames **Vorgehen**
- etwas zum **Vortrag** bringen
- in die **Falle** gehen
- ich habe alles reiflich **erwogen**
- im **Lauf** des Abends
- ein **Laut** auf den Lippen
- zum **Schluß**
- zu **Mantua** in Banden Der treue
Hofer war
- **Gesellschaft** mit beschränkter
Haftung / G. m. b. H.
- **vorlieb** nehmen.

seit der Thronbesteigung!) — —

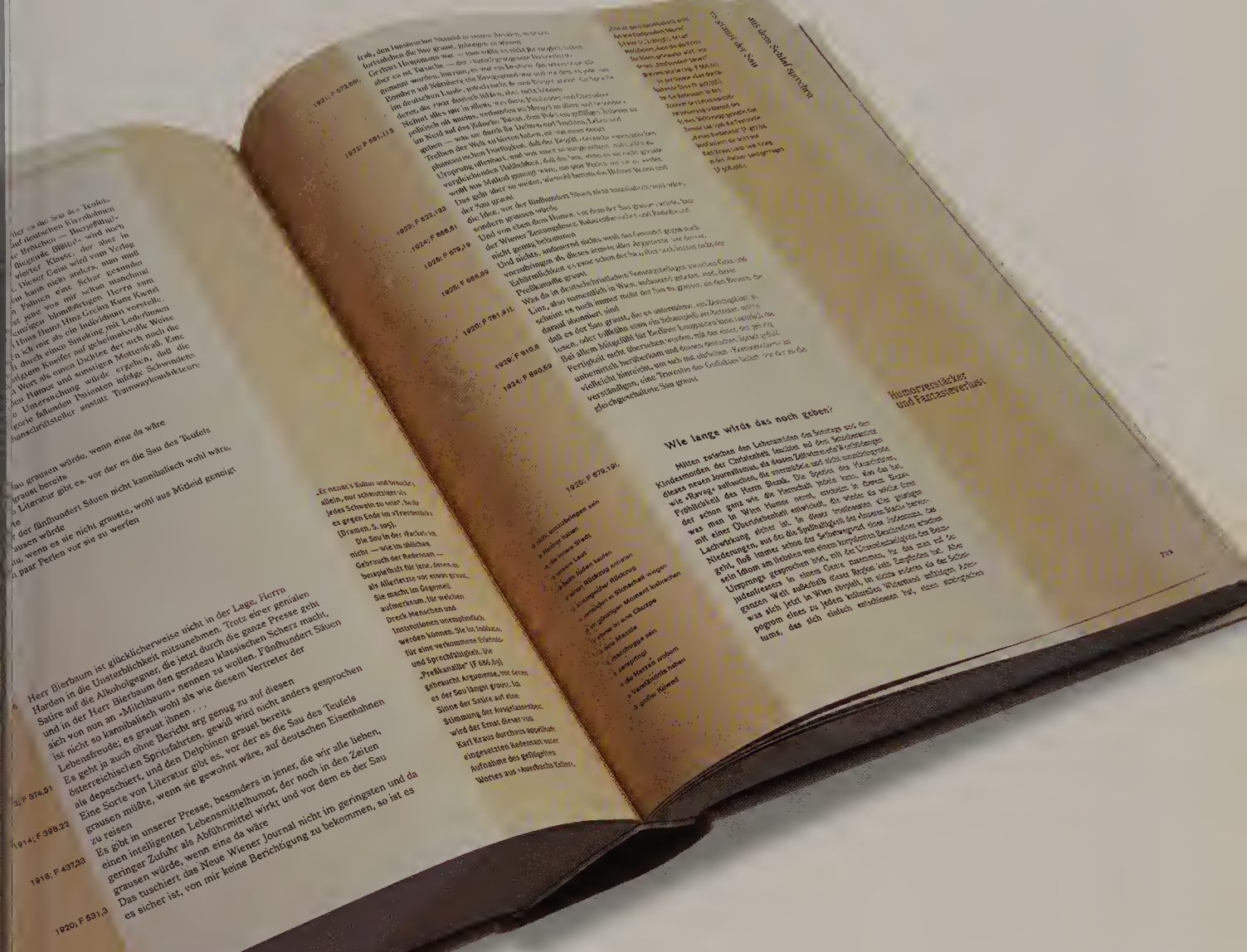
— — So erlebte ich, daß er einen doch
Major, den Adjutanten des Kronprinzen, g
Ohr zog, ihm einen tüchtigen Schl
gab und sagte: — —

— — empfing er in Tempelhof im
minister und den Chef des Militärkabinettes
alten Esel glaubt, daß ihr alles besser

*) Deutsche Verlagsanstalt, Stuttgart,

Und daß das »gemeinsame Vorgehen« für
war, »sobald Kraus die Satire auf Kaiser Wilh
werde«, beweist eine Vertrautheit der In
Programm, die ich selbst am Nachmittag noc
ihnen in die Falle gegangen! Aber wenn ein
Innsbruck auf Demonstrationen ausgehen, k
Abends eine Ahnung von dem Vorhandense
will ich dem Wilhelm glauben, daß er es nicht
Josef, daß er alles reiflich erwogen hat. Die
einer vagen Kenntniss meiner Gesinnung, abe
die ihre auszuleben, in den Saal geführten
Abends ein Dutzend weit besserer Anlässe
zwei Diebsgenerale — hatten vorübergehen
der Laut auf den Lippen erstarb, und erst z
über die eigene Unregsamkeit ihnen Bewu
ihre Anwesenheit legitimierten, indem s

1920; F 531,52f.



WÖRTERBUCH DER REDENSARTEN/KARL KRAUS, DIE FACKEL
 Book, 1999. Designer: Anne Burdick. Publisher:
 Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften. This book
 presents essays from the journal *Die Fackel*, published by the
 Viennese writer Karl Kraus from 1899 to 1936. The journal's text
 appears in the center of each page. This text is sometimes
 represented with an image of the original publication and
 sometimes filtered through the modern typography of the new
 edition. In the beige-colored margins, different styles and sizes of
 type indicate different modes of editorial commentary.



RADAR Magazine, 2008. Designed by Luke Hayman/Pentagram and Kate Elazegui/Radar. Mass-market magazine covers often combine a big photograph, a big headline, and a big logo with a swarm of teasers about articles to be found inside. Radar's covers present feature stories front and center while enticing readers with numerous compact headlines. In contrast, the magazine's table of contents provides a more leisurely overview. Here, the typographic hierarchy emphasizes the articles' titles and uses the page numbers as easy-to-find anchors.



Michael Bierut, Kerrie Powell, Sunnie Guglielmo

Michael Bierut, Justin Weyers



Director of Activities
Lectures, Seminars, and Exhibitions
Since 1972

AAU Ranking
1991 Best Schools: Western 12th

Lectures
14 lecture hours at a \$200 fee plus the AAU Symposium Book and materials. (AAU 1992 fee per person \$145)

Exhibitions
Exhibition hours are
Monday through Friday, 10:00 AM-5:00 PM
Saturdays, 10:00 AM-5:00 PM
Exhibition Exhibitors are welcome to use lecture hall

Post-Mortem Lectures, Special Exhibitions
Monday, January 11
Tuesday, January 12
Wednesday, January 13

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Thursday, January 14
Friday, January 15
Saturday, January 16

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Sunday, January 17
Monday, January 18

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Tuesday, January 19
Wednesday, January 20
Thursday, January 21

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Friday, January 22
Saturday, January 23
Sunday, January 24

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Monday, January 25
Tuesday, January 26
Wednesday, January 27

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Thursday, January 28
Friday, January 29
Saturday, January 30

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Sunday, January 31
Monday, February 1
Tuesday, February 2

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Wednesday, February 3
Thursday, February 4
Friday, February 5

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Saturday, February 6
Sunday, February 7
Monday, February 8

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Tuesday, February 9
Wednesday, February 10
Thursday, February 11

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Friday, February 12
Saturday, February 13
Sunday, February 14

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Monday, February 15
Tuesday, February 16
Wednesday, February 17

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Thursday, February 18
Friday, February 19
Saturday, February 20

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Sunday, February 21
Monday, February 22
Tuesday, February 23

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Wednesday, February 24
Thursday, February 25
Friday, February 26

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Saturday, February 27
Sunday, February 28
Monday, March 1

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Tuesday, March 2
Wednesday, March 3
Thursday, March 4

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Friday, March 5
Saturday, March 6
Sunday, March 7

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Monday, March 8
Tuesday, March 9
Wednesday, March 10

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Thursday, March 11
Friday, March 12
Saturday, March 13

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Sunday, March 14
Monday, March 15
Tuesday, March 16

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Wednesday, March 17
Thursday, March 18
Friday, March 19

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Saturday, March 20
Sunday, March 21
Monday, March 22

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Tuesday, March 23
Wednesday, March 24
Thursday, March 25

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Friday, March 26
Saturday, March 27
Sunday, March 28

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Monday, March 29
Tuesday, March 30
Wednesday, March 31

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Thursday, April 1
Friday, April 2
Saturday, April 3

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Sunday, April 4
Monday, April 5
Tuesday, April 6

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Wednesday, April 7
Thursday, April 8
Friday, April 9

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Saturday, April 10
Sunday, April 11
Monday, April 12

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Tuesday, April 13
Wednesday, April 14
Thursday, April 15

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Friday, April 16
Saturday, April 17
Sunday, April 18

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Monday, April 19
Tuesday, April 20
Wednesday, April 21

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Thursday, April 22
Friday, April 23
Saturday, April 24

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Sunday, April 25
Monday, April 26
Tuesday, April 27

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Wednesday, April 28
Thursday, April 29
Friday, April 30

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Saturday, May 1
Sunday, May 2
Monday, May 3

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Tuesday, May 4
Wednesday, May 5
Thursday, May 6

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Friday, May 7
Saturday, May 8
Sunday, May 9

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Monday, May 10
Tuesday, May 11
Wednesday, May 12

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Thursday, May 13
Friday, May 14
Saturday, May 15

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Sunday, May 16
Monday, May 17
Tuesday, May 18

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Wednesday, May 19
Thursday, May 20
Friday, May 21

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Saturday, May 22
Sunday, May 23
Monday, May 24

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Tuesday, May 25
Wednesday, May 26
Thursday, May 27

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Friday, May 28
Saturday, May 29
Sunday, May 30

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Monday, May 31
Tuesday, June 1
Wednesday, June 2

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Thursday, June 3
Friday, June 4
Saturday, June 5

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Sunday, June 6
Monday, June 7
Tuesday, June 8

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Wednesday, June 9
Thursday, June 10
Friday, June 11

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Saturday, June 12
Sunday, June 13
Monday, June 14

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Tuesday, June 15
Wednesday, June 16
Thursday, June 17

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Friday, June 18
Saturday, June 19
Sunday, June 20

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Monday, June 21
Tuesday, June 22
Wednesday, June 23

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Thursday, June 24
Friday, June 25
Saturday, June 26

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Sunday, June 27
Monday, June 28
Tuesday, June 29

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Wednesday, June 30
Thursday, July 1
Friday, July 2

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Saturday, July 3
Sunday, July 4
Monday, July 5

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Tuesday, July 6
Wednesday, July 7
Thursday, July 8

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Friday, July 9
Saturday, July 10
Sunday, July 11

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Monday, July 12
Tuesday, July 13
Wednesday, July 14

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Thursday, July 15
Friday, July 16
Saturday, July 17

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Sunday, July 18
Monday, July 19
Tuesday, July 20

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Wednesday, July 21
Thursday, July 22
Friday, July 23

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Saturday, July 24
Sunday, July 25
Monday, July 26

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Tuesday, July 27
Wednesday, July 28
Thursday, July 29

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Friday, July 30
Saturday, July 31
Sunday, August 1

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Monday, August 2
Tuesday, August 3
Wednesday, August 4

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Thursday, August 5
Friday, August 6
Saturday, August 7

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Sunday, August 8
Monday, August 9
Tuesday, August 10

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Wednesday, August 11
Thursday, August 12
Friday, August 13

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Saturday, August 14
Sunday, August 15
Monday, August 16

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Tuesday, August 17
Wednesday, August 18
Thursday, August 19

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Friday, August 20
Saturday, August 21
Sunday, August 22

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Monday, August 23
Tuesday, August 24
Wednesday, August 25

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Thursday, August 26
Friday, August 27
Saturday, August 28

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Sunday, August 29
Monday, August 30
Tuesday, August 31

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Wednesday, September 1
Thursday, September 2
Friday, September 3

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Saturday, September 4
Sunday, September 5
Monday, September 6

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Tuesday, September 7
Wednesday, September 8
Thursday, September 9

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Friday, September 10
Saturday, September 11
Sunday, September 12

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Monday, September 13
Tuesday, September 14
Wednesday, September 15

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Thursday, September 16
Friday, September 17
Saturday, September 18

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Sunday, September 19
Monday, September 20
Tuesday, September 21

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Wednesday, September 22
Thursday, September 23
Friday, September 24

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Saturday, September 25
Sunday, September 26
Monday, September 27

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Tuesday, September 28
Wednesday, September 29
Thursday, September 30

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Friday, October 1
Saturday, October 2
Sunday, October 3

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Monday, October 4
Tuesday, October 5
Wednesday, October 6

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Thursday, October 7
Friday, October 8
Saturday, October 9

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Sunday, October 10
Monday, October 11
Tuesday, October 12

Lectures, Exhibitions, and Seminars
Wednesday, October 13
Thursday, October 14
Friday, October 15

Lectures, Exhib

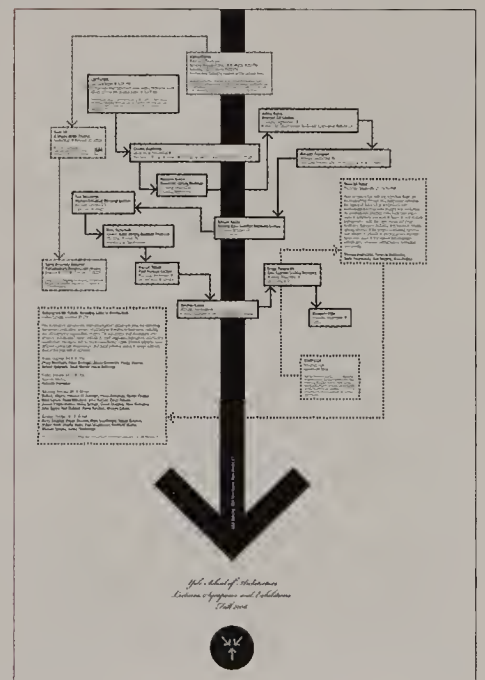
Michael Bierut, Genevieve Panuska

[illegible]

Michael Bierut, Jacqueline Kim

Yale Architecture, Fall 04: Lectures, Exhibitions, Symposia.

Michael Bierut, Andrew Mapes



Michael Bierut, Michelle Leong, Sasha Fernando

EXERCISE: HIERARCHY

Choose a text that has a recurring structure, such as a table of contents, a news aggregator, or a calendar of events. Analyze the structure of the content (main title, subtitles, time, location, body text, and so on) and create a visual hierarchy that expresses this structure. Make it easy for readers to find the information they want. For example, in a crime report some readers might scan for location, looking for data about their neighborhood, while others might be more drawn to the lurid details of particular crimes. Use changes in size, weight, leading, style, and column structure to distinguish the levels of the hierarchy. Make a style sheet (in a page layout program for print or in CSS for the web) in order to create several variations quickly.



Crime Blotter

Callie Neylan, Betsy Martin

Crime Blotter

06:00 AM **EAST VILLAGE**
Noun Found Smothered
by Adjectives *Message*
lost in dense cloud of
confused signals.

11:30 AM **UPPER EAST SIDE**
Verb Defrauded
by Misplaced Modifier
Missing the point
revenge is sought by victim.

07:00 PM **WILLIAMSBURG**
Flood of Clichés Wreaks
Havoc *Hipster kicks*
bucket after biting
bullet and butterfly.

Callie Neylan, Betsy Martin

Crime Blotter

6:00AM | EAST VILLAGE

Noun Found Smothered by Adjectives
Message lost in dense cloud of confused signals.

11:30AM | UPPER EAST SIDE

Verb Defrauded by Misplaced Modifier
Missing the point, revenge is sought by victim.

7:00PM | WILLIAMSBURG

Flood of Clichés Wreaks Havoc
Hipster kicks bucket after biting bullet.

Katie Burk, Paulo Lopez

<h1>

<h2>

<h3>

6:00am **East Village**

Noun Found Smothered by Adjectives

Message lost in dense cloud of confused signals.

<class="time">

11:30am **Upper East Side**

Verb Defrauded by Misplaced Modifier

Missing the point, revenge is sought by victim.

7:00pm **Williamsburg**

Flood of Clichés Wreaks Havoc

Hipster kicks bucket after biting bullet.

<p>

These typographic variations were generated in CSS using the structural hierarchy presented above.

Examples of work by staff designers in a workshop at National Public Radio, 2010.

6:00am **East Village**

Noun Found Smothered by Adjectives

Message lost in dense cloud of confused signals.

11:30am **Upper East Side**

Verb Defrauded by Misplaced Modifier

Missing the point, revenge is sought by victim.

7:00pm **Williamsburg**

Flood of Clichés Wreaks Havoc

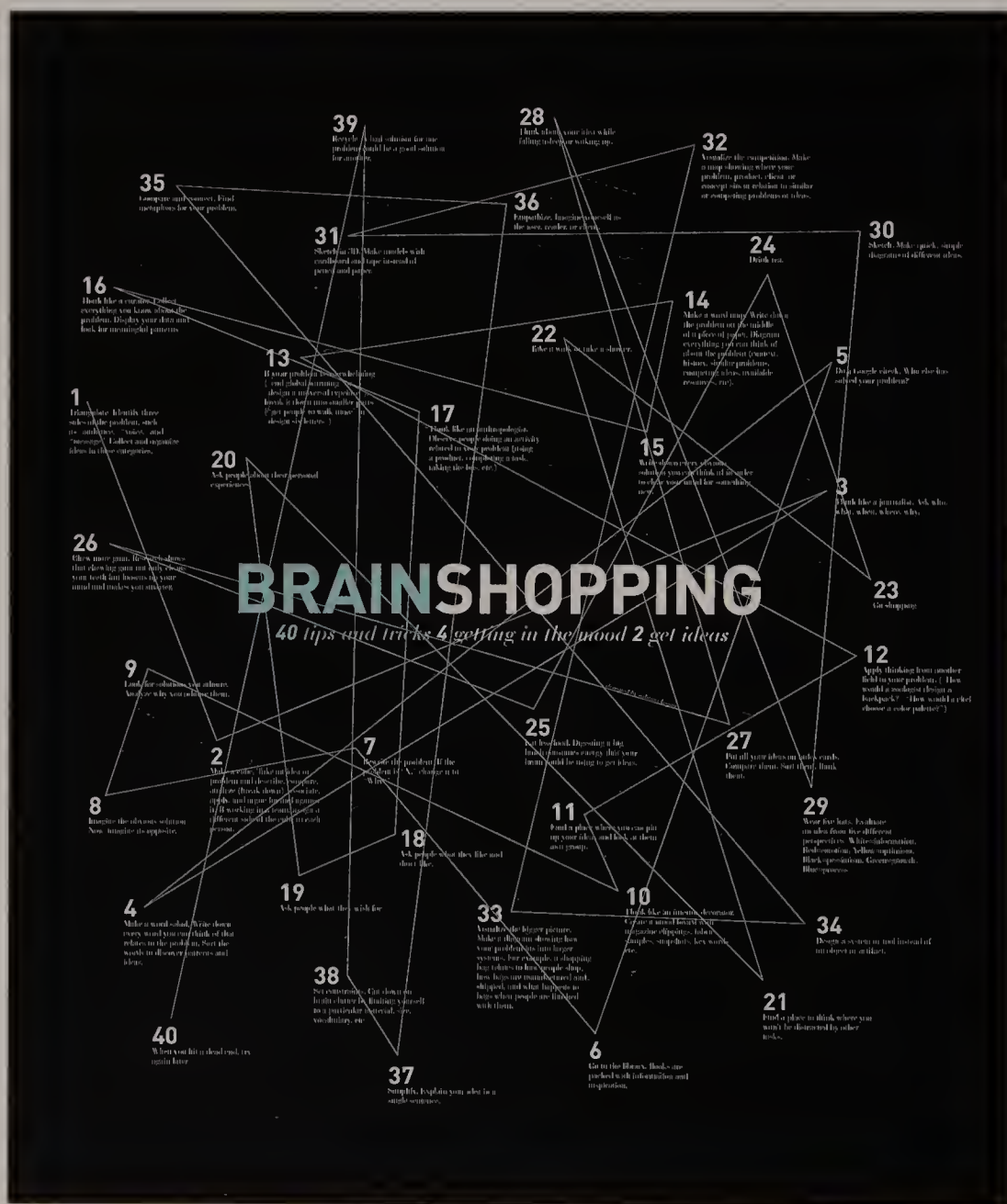
Hipster kicks bucket after biting bullet.

Crime Blotter

EXERCISE: LONG LISTS

In the real world of graphic design, managing large quantities of text is a routine challenge. Designers use the principles of hierarchy, alignment, and page layout to make content easy to scan and enjoyable to read. You can try this exercise with any long list of entries: calendar events, dictionary definitions, pithy quotes,

classified ads, or a page from a college course catalog. Numbering the elements in the list gives you a graphic element to manipulate. Design a poster that presents the content in a visually interesting way. Work with style sheets to test different type treatments quickly and consistently.



Sabrina Kogan





{GRID}

HISTORIA NATURALIS
Book, 1472. Printed by
Nicolas Jenson, Venice
Collection of the Walters Art
Museum, Baltimore. *This book
features an elegant, unbroken
text block set in one of the
earliest roman typefaces. The
page has no line breaks or
indents.*

Plauti fabulæ sunt indicio. Sanguine canino contra toxica nihil præstantius putatur.
Vomitiones quoque hoc animal monstrasse uidetur. Et alios usus ex eo mire laudatos
referemus suis locis. Nunc ad statuti ordinem pergemus. Aduersus serpentium ictus
efficacia habentur funum pecudis recens in uino decoctum illicumque. Mures disseci
et impositi quoque natura non est spernenda præcipue in ascensu syderum ut diximus:
cum lumine lunæ fibratum numero crescente atque decrescente. Tradunt magi iocinere
munis dato porcis in fico sequi dantem id animal. In homine quoque similiter ualere.
sed resolui cyatho olei potio. Mustelari duo genera. Alterum siluestre. Distat magni-
tudine. Greci uocant ictides. Harum fel contra aspidas dicitur efficax: cetero uenenum.
Hæc autem quæ in domibus nostris oberrat et catulos suos (ut auctor est Cicero) quoti-
die trahit: mutatque sedem serpentes prosequitur. Ex ea inueterata sale denari pòdus
in cyathis tribus darur percussis: aut uentriculus coriandro factus inueteratusque et in
uino potus. Et catulus mustelæ etiâ efficacius. Quædam pudenda dicta tanta aucto-
rum asseueratione commendantur: ut præterite fas non sit. Siquidem illa concordia
rerum aut repugnantia medicinæ gignuntur. Veluti cunicum animalis fetidissimi: et
dictu quoque falsidicissimi natura contra serpentium morsus et præcipue aspidum ualere
dicitur. Item contra uenena omnia. Argumento quoque dicitur gallinas quo die edent non
interfici ab aspidæ. Carnes quoque earum percussis plurimum prodesse. Ex iis quæ tradunt
humanissimum illinire moribus cum sanguine testudinis. Item suffitu eorum abigere
sanguisugæ adhaerentes: haustaque ab animalibus restinguere in poti datos. Quam-
quam et oculus quidam iis inungunt tritis cum sale et lacte mulierum. Autemque cum melle
et rosaceo ammixtis. Eos qui agrestes sint: et in malua nascantur crematos cinere per-
mixto rosaceo infundunt aunbus. Cetera quæ de iis tradunt: uenena et quartanarum
remedia: aliorumque morborum quam ouo aut cara aut faba inclusos censent deuorandos
falsa nec referenda arbitror. Leithargi tamen medicinæ cum argumento adhibenti
quoniam uincitur aspidum somnificæ uis septenos et cyatho aquæ dantes puerilibus
annis quatuordecim. Et stranguræ fistulæque imponere: adeo nihil illa rerum omnium
patens sine ingentibus causis genuit. Quin et adalligatos leuo brachio binos lana
subrepta pastonibus resistere nocturnis febribus prodiderunt: diurnis in rosco panno.
Rursus iis aduersatur scolopendra suffitumque necat. Aspidæ percussos torpore et som-
no necant: omnium serpentium minime sanabiles. Sed et uenenum earum si sanguis
attingit: aut recens uulnus statim iterimit. Inueteratum ulcus tardius. De cetero porum
quantalibet copia: non nocet. Non enim est tabifica uis: itaque occisa morsu earum
animalia obis innoxia sunt. Contaret in proferendo ex iis remedia: nisi. M. Varronem
scirem. Ixxiii. uicæ anno prodidisse aspidum ictus efficacissime curari hausta a percussis
ipsum urina. Basiliscum: quem etiam serpentes ipsi fugiunt alios olfactu necantem:
qui hominem uel si aspiciat tantum dicitur in tenere: sanguinem magi miris laudi-
bus celebrant coeuntem picis modo et colore dilurum annabari danorem fieri. Tri-
buunt ei et successus petitionum a potestantibus: et a diis etiam precum: morborum
remedia beneficiorum munere. Quidam id Saturni sanguinem appellant. Draco non
habet uenena. Caput eius limini ianuarum subditum propitiis oratione diis fortu-
natam domum facere promittitur. Oculis eius iueteratis et cum melle tritis sanctos
non pauescere ad nocturnas imagines etiam pauidos cordis. Pingue in pelle dorcadum
neruis ceruinis adalligatum in lacerto conferte iudiciorum uictoriam. Primum spody-
lum aditus potestatum mulcere. Dentes eius illigatos pelibus caprearum ceruinis
neruis: mites præstare dominos: potestatesque exorabiles. Sed super omnia est composi-
tio: qua inuictos faciunt magorum mendacia. Cauda draconis et capite uillis leonis
et fronte et medulla eiusdem equi uictoris spuma canis unguibus adalligatis ceruino
cono: neruique cerui alternatis et dorcadis. Quæ arguisse non minus refert: quam contra
serpentes remedia demonstrasse: quoniam hæc morborum beneficia sunt. Draconum

GRID

A GRID BREAKS SPACE OR TIME INTO REGULAR UNITS. A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of a page, screen, or the built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient structure, a skeleton that moves in concert with the muscular mass of information.

Grids belong to the technological framework of typography, from the concrete modularity of letterpress to the rulers, guides, and coordinate systems employed in graphics applications. Although software generates illusions of smooth curves and continuous tones, every digital image or mark is constructed—ultimately—from a grid of neatly bounded blocks. The ubiquitous language of the GUI (graphical user interface) creates a gridded space in which windows overlay windows in a haphazard way.

In addition to their place in the background of design production, grids have become explicit theoretical tools. Avant-garde designers in the 1910s and 1920s exposed the mechanical grid of letterpress, bringing it to the polemical surface of the page. In Switzerland after World War II, graphic designers built a total design methodology around the typographic grid, hoping to construct with it a new and rational social order.

The grid has evolved across centuries of typographic development. For graphic designers, grids are carefully honed intellectual devices, infused with ideology and ambition, and they are the inescapable mesh that filters, at some level of resolution, nearly every system of writing and reproduction.

in librum Job

LVI

capillis. Inq̃ manus charte nodosaq̃ venit harundo.

Purpureus. i. color purpureo picturatus. purpura autē bz sanguinis colorē. Initialibz. i. capitalibz. i. grossis litteris. sicut solent fieri in iunioribus libris. et ideo pp̃t grossitiem lre possit hñt onera q̃ codices. Et vñcialibz. i. vñcia auri vñalerius p̃ctosi coloris appendentibz. vel ad scribendū dñt nō cōstātus. Denra pp̃t sumptuositatem vñ pp̃ ponderositatē Codices. Mora q̃ dñt est. Nido. in. vñ. et. Coder multorum librorū ē liber vñt vo lunis. et dñt coder p̃trālationē a corticibus arborū. seu vñctū q̃ scauderet. q̃ i se mētudinē librorū qua si ramosū continet. Pauperes sedulo.

Ate se.

las. i. scripta modici p̃ciā in littera q̃ in mēbrana necdū in libris redacta. Mora q̃m. N. i. vñ. et. b. sceda ē p̃ma charta i q̃ notarius scribit ex ore magistri et dñct a scindēdo. et scribitur sine asp̃ratione. fm allos asp̃rationes. fm allos asp̃rationes. fm allos asp̃rationes. fm allos asp̃rationes.

Ech. 36. D.

Septuaginta iuxta grecos. i. editio. lxx. ab hebreo in grecū translata. quā postea d̃ greco trāstulit in latinū cum astericis et obellis. Et mea iuxta hebreos. i. ista q̃ vere mea ē q̃ nūluz i ea seq̃t interstetm. fm immediate d̃ hebreo trāstulit in latinū. Quod vult. i. aut illa quā fm septuaginta de greco trāstulit in latinū cū astericis et obellis. aut illa que si ne illis figur̃ immedie sumitur ab hebreis. Et probet p̃ c̃fectū. Se c̃. Magis studiosus. vñtāq̃ editio nē rectpendo. Et multuolū. vñtāq̃ vel alterā repellendo. Aliqui lib̃i habēt. Dñt est sensus. Probet. i. experiat. in vñtāq̃ studendo. vñ Probet. i. cōfirmet aduersarios p̃sūdo. Probet iniquā. De magis esse studiosum. i. magis amore veritatis in translationē studio laborasse. Et multuolū. vñt. ex inuidia vellem. lxx. interpres condemnare.

Ech. 36. D.

Septuaginta iuxta grecos. i. editio. lxx. ab hebreo in grecū translata. quā postea d̃ greco trāstulit in latinū cum astericis et obellis. Et mea iuxta hebreos. i. ista q̃ vere mea ē q̃ nūluz i ea seq̃t interstetm. fm immediate d̃ hebreo trāstulit in latinū. Quod vult. i. aut illa quā fm septuaginta de greco trāstulit in latinū cū astericis et obellis. aut illa que si ne illis figur̃ immedie sumitur ab hebreis. Et probet p̃ c̃fectū. Se c̃. Magis studiosus. vñtāq̃ editio nē rectpendo. Et multuolū. vñtāq̃ vel alterā repellendo. Aliqui lib̃i habēt. Dñt est sensus. Probet. i. experiat. in vñtāq̃ studendo. vñ Probet. i. cōfirmet aduersarios p̃sūdo. Probet iniquā. De magis esse studiosum. i. magis amore veritatis in translationē studio laborasse. Et multuolū. vñt. ex inuidia vellem. lxx. interpres condemnare.

Nume. 22.

Ate se.

Septuaginta iuxta grecos. i. editio. lxx. ab hebreo in grecū translata. quā postea d̃ greco trāstulit in latinū cum astericis et obellis. Et mea iuxta hebreos. i. ista q̃ vere mea ē q̃ nūluz i ea seq̃t interstetm. fm immediate d̃ hebreo trāstulit in latinū. Quod vult. i. aut illa quā fm septuaginta de greco trāstulit in latinū cū astericis et obellis. aut illa que si ne illis figur̃ immedie sumitur ab hebreis. Et probet p̃ c̃fectū. Se c̃. Magis studiosus. vñtāq̃ editio nē rectpendo. Et multuolū. vñtāq̃ vel alterā repellendo. Aliqui lib̃i habēt. Dñt est sensus. Probet. i. experiat. in vñtāq̃ studendo. vñ Probet. i. cōfirmet aduersarios p̃sūdo. Probet iniquā. De magis esse studiosum. i. magis amore veritatis in translationē studio laborasse. Et multuolū. vñt. ex inuidia vellem. lxx. interpres condemnare.

Septuaginta iuxta grecos. i. editio. lxx. ab hebreo in grecū translata. quā postea d̃ greco trāstulit in latinū cum astericis et obellis. Et mea iuxta hebreos. i. ista q̃ vere mea ē q̃ nūluz i ea seq̃t interstetm. fm immediate d̃ hebreo trāstulit in latinū. Quod vult. i. aut illa quā fm septuaginta de greco trāstulit in latinū cū astericis et obellis. aut illa que si ne illis figur̃ immedie sumitur ab hebreis. Et probet p̃ c̃fectū. Se c̃. Magis studiosus. vñtāq̃ editio nē rectpendo. Et multuolū. vñtāq̃ vel alterā repellendo. Aliqui lib̃i habēt. Dñt est sensus. Probet. i. experiat. in vñtāq̃ studendo. vñ Probet. i. cōfirmet aduersarios p̃sūdo. Probet iniquā. De magis esse studiosum. i. magis amore veritatis in translationē studio laborasse. Et multuolū. vñt. ex inuidia vellem. lxx. interpres condemnare.

Explicit qualicumq̃ exp̃sio istius prologi.

Doctilla. Nid colat de tyra super Job incipit.

Attentia habe in me. et omnia reddā tibi Mathet p̃ vii. q̃ulovēbū. p̃p̃itū s̃r verbū seruū ad dñm tñ p̃t accipi cōuerso. vñ s̃r s̃bū dei ad sanctū iob seruū suū. q̃ p̃t cōnertonē fidelitū ad dñm tñ q̃ memb̃oz ad caput suū. q̃ dñct de vno p̃r intelligi d̃ altero. et cōuerso. sicut dñct. it. dñs dixit. saule saule q̃d me p̃sequeris. ita q̃ p̃secutionē fidelitū dixit suū. et cōuerso paulo ap̃t ad Gal. ii. dixit. C̃ h̃stio p̃stus suū cruci p̃ssione s̃it capitis suū dñct p̃ p̃ssione et imitationē. Sic igit verbi p̃ssump̃tū p̃ueniēter potest accipi. vñ s̃r verbū dei ad sanctū iob sibi p̃ fidē incorp̃atū. in q̃ quidē verbū duo nō tant in q̃bus p̃ctus huiuslibz et materia p̃rinent. p̃mū est sancti iob stabilitas in aduersis. cū dñct. Patientia habe. secundū ē dei liberalitas in p̃m̃is reddēdo. cū dñct. Et oia reddā tibi. vñ dñ. j. vñ. ca. Dñs autē bñ dixit nouissimis iob magis q̃ p̃ncipio ei. et de vñtāq̃ istoz p̃t accipi illud. Et c̃h̃stia. i. ca. Et q̃ p̃sūstinebit paties et postea reddito iocū dñctio. p̃t autē s̃it tñdē p̃ntēter ē vñq̃ ad tēminū diuē nī b̃p̃lacti q̃d fecit iob. vñ patebit ex decurru libz et secuta ē reditio loci dñctis. q̃ dñt sibi duplicauit i p̃nti bona terrena. et in futuro sibi relinuat celēstia. de p̃nti. dñt p̃ntētia iob in aduersis agit in d̃ libro a p̃ncipio vñq̃ ad vñtū ca. excludit. de secdo. s̃it dñctia reuincatione agit vñ. ca. s̃it magis videbit inseri. in libz diuisione dñs concedēte. Per s̃it añq̃ dñctēdam. ad litterā exponendā duo sunt p̃mitenda. p̃mū ē verū illud q̃d in hoc libro ē tractatū s̃it parabola vel res gesta. Ad q̃ dñctū alq̃ iudei q̃ ē parabola. et q̃ moyses scripsit libz istū. vñ habet in libro q̃d ap̃d hebreos or̃ babababba. et ad declarandā conditionē virtutis p̃ntēte et ei. retributionē s̃it iob hōiem noie iob multū p̃stic flagellatū. et amicos ei. q̃ ad p̃ntandū cum venerat innotatos ad opp̃sitū. ad ostendēdū ei iniquū. et p̃ peccatis p̃ntēntio a deo merito flagellatū. s̃it dñt iob respondētē tñdē objectionibz. eo q̃ subinduxit. sicut aucto. libelli qui incipit. Et h̃p̃t terras. et ad declarandū antiquitatē sacre scripture et ei. veritatē respectu fictionū poetarū. s̃it vñtāq̃ virginē noie alarbia q̃d nomen in greco veritatē signat in latino. et quendā pastore cui nōmē p̃seudis. i. falsus vñtāq̃ fitas in greco adinuicē disputātes de sacre scripture hystoriis et poetarū fabulis. Sed dñctū nō videt sacre scripture p̃nti. p̃mū. q̃ in p̃ncipio huiuslibz exp̃mitur eius patris amores. possessiones. et p̃oles tñq̃ de re gesta exp̃mēs cōditiones et s̃it loquū. j. de amicis iob. Item Ezech. xlii. dñct ex p̃sona dei. Si fuerint tres viri isti in medio ei. nōc daniel et iob. isti iusticia sua liberabūt aias suas. certū ē autē nōc et danielē fuisse hoies veros in rerū natura. Ex quo p̃cludit idē fuisse de iob a deo eis cōnumerato. Itē Jaco. v. Ecce beatificam. eos q̃ sustinerūt. sufferentiā iob audēstis. et s̃it dñt vidistis. et. ex q̃ credendū ē iob fuisse verūz hominē in rerū natura. sicut x̃p̃s verus d̃ p̃ssus ē in natura hūana. secundū autē s̃it tñdē ē de intentionē huius aut totis. q̃ ex hoc dependet intellectus huius libz. Ad q̃d plenū intelligendū. sciendū q̃ alq̃ antiqui p̃bi dei. p̃udentiam negauerūt. sicut democritus et ep̃icuri dicētes mundū esse factū a casu. alq̃ vñtāq̃ licet dicerent incorruptibilia et superiora regi diuina. p̃udentia ab h̃ tñ excludunt inferiora coruptibilia. ex quoz p̃sona dñ. j. x̃p̃i. s̃it ubes latibuli eius. et circa cardines celli pambulat. nec nostra p̃siderat. alq̃ vñtāq̃ corruptibilia q̃ cursu nature paguntur. dixerūt regi diuina p̃udentia tñ ab hoc exceperūt actus hūanos ex libero arbitrio p̃cedētes. de q̃bus dñt nullū fuisse et bi inter alia mouebant ad hoc. q̃ nō videbāt qualiter iustitias diuine p̃udentie stare cū liberi arbitrii vertibilitate. Item q̃s videbant vñtāq̃ frequenter malos homines. p̃sperari et bonos tribulārē. quod nō videbatur conueniēs. p̃udentie dei. in q̃ rā persona dñct Boetius. j. de cōsolatione. loquens ad boianū. Dñtia certo sine gubernas. hominū solos respūctus actus. Sed hoc dñctum est fidei et moribus contrariū. quia tollit penas et p̃mia a deo. p̃ democritis et ericino reddēdas. et p̃ p̃nti timorē dei patiet et amorē. p̃pter q̃d dñct dñctia.

LATIN BIBLE Book page, 1497. Printed by Anton Koberger. A two-column grid engulfs a second set of columns. Each page is a dense mass incised with narrow gutters and open spaces where illuminated capitals would have been added by hand. The layout changes from page to page.

GRID AS FRAME

Alphabetic writing, like most writing systems, is organized into columns and rows of characters. Whereas handwriting flows into connected lines, the mechanics of metal type impose a stricter order. Each letter occupies its own block, and the letters congregate in orderly rectangles. Stored in gridded cases, the characters become an archive of elements, a matrix of existing forms from which each page is composed.

Until the twentieth century, grids served as frames for fields of text. The margins of a classical book page create a pristine barrier around a flush, solid block of text. A page dominated by a solitary field of type remains today's most common book format, although that perfect rectangle is now broken with indents and line breaks, and the margins are peppered with page numbers and running heads (text indicating the book or chapter title).

In addition to the classical norm of the single-column page, various alternative layouts existed during the first centuries of printing, from the two-column grid of Gutenberg's Bible to more elaborate layouts derived from the medieval scribal tradition, where passages of scripture are surrounded by scholarly commentary. Polyglot (multilingual) books display a text in several languages simultaneously, demanding complex divisions of the surface.

Such formats permit multiple streams of text to coexist while defending the sovereignty of the page-as-frame. The philosopher Jacques Derrida has described the frame in Western art as a form that seems to be separate from the work, yet is necessary for marking its difference from everyday life. A frame or pedestal elevates the work, removing it from the realm of the ordinary. The work thus depends on the frame for its status and visibility.

Typography is, by and large, an art of framing, a form designed to melt away as it yields itself to content. Designers focus much of their energy on margins, edges, and empty spaces, elements that oscillate between present and absent, visible and invisible. With print's ascent, margins became the user interface of the book, providing space for page numbers, running heads, commentary, notes, and ornaments.

The frame... disappears, buries itself, effaces itself, melts away at the moment it deploys its greatest energy. The frame is in no way a background... but neither is its thickness as margin a figure. Or at least it is a figure that comes away of its own accord. — JACQUES DERRIDA, 1987

ספר בראשית א

וראשית ברא אלהים את השמים ואת
 הארץ : והארץ היתה תהו ובהו וחשך
 על פני תהום ורוח אלהים כרהפת על-
 פני המים : ויאמר אלהים יהי-אור
 ויהי-אור : ויצא אלהים את-האור כי-טוב ויברל
 אלהים בין האור ובין החשך : ויקרא אלהים לאור
 יום ולחשך קרא לילה ויהי-ערב ויהי-קדקד יום אחד :
 ויאמר אלהים יהי רקיע בתוך המים ויהי כבדיל
 בין מים למים : וועש אלהים את-הרקיע ויברל בין
 המים אשר-מתחת לרקיע ובין המים אשר-מעל לרקיע
 ויהי-כן : ויקרא אלהים לרקיע שמים ויהי-ערב
 ויהי-קדקד יום שני : ויאמר אלהים יקוו המים
 מתחת השמים אל-קדקד אחד ותראה היבשה ויהי-
 כן : ויקרא אלהים ליבשה ארץ ולבקעה המים קרא
 ימים וקרא אלהים ברי-טוב : ויאמר אלהים תדשא
 הארץ דשא עשב כצורע זרע עץ פרי עשה-פרי למינו
 אשר-ורעו בו על-הארץ ויהי-כן : ותוצא הארץ דשא
 עשב מצורע זרע למיניה וצץ עשה-פרי אשר-ורעו בו
 למיניה ויצא אלהים ברי-טוב : ויהי-ערב ויהי-קדקד
 יום שלישי : ויאמר אלהים יהי מארת ברקיע
 השמים להבדיל בין היום ובין הלילה והיו לאתרת
 ולמנועים ולמים ושמים : והיו למאורות ברקיע
 השמים להאיר על-הארץ ויהי-כן : וועש אלהים
 את שני המארת הגדלים את-המאור הגדל למבטלת
 היום ואת-המאור הקטן למבטלת הלילה ויצאת
 הכוכבים : ויהיו אתם אלהים כרקיע השמים להאיר
 על-הארץ : ולמשל ביום ובלילה להבדיל בין האור
 ובין החשך ויצא אלהים ברי-טוב : ויהי-ערב ויהי-
 קדקד יום רביעי : ויאמר אלהים ישצו המים שרץ
 נפש חיה ועוף יעופף על-הארץ על-פני רקיע השמים :

IN principio creauit Deus
lum & terrā. * Terra autē
erat inanis & vacua: & tene-
bræ erant super faciē abyssi
& spiritus Dei ferebatur
per aquas. * Dixitq; Deus, Fiat lux. Et facta
lux. * Et vidit Deus lucem quod esset bona,
diuisit lucem à tenebris. * Appellauitq; lucem
diem; & tenebras noctē. Factumq; est vespere
& mane dies vnus. * Dixit quoque Deus, Fiat
firmamentū in medio aquarum; & diuidat
quas ab aquis. * Et fecit Deus firmamentum,
diuisitq; aquas quæ erant sub firmamento,
his quæ erant super firmamentū. Et factum
est ita. * Vocauitq; Deus firmamentū, cælum:
factum est vespere, & mane dies secundus.
* Dixit verò Deus, Congregentur aquæ quæ
sub cælo sunt, in locum vnum: & appareat
terra. Et factum est ita. * Et vocauit Deus ar-
tem terram: congregationemq; aquarum appella-
uit maria. Et vidit Deus quod esset bonum. *
Et ait, Germinet terra herbā virentem & facie-
tem semen; & lignum poniferū faciens fructū
iuxta genus suum, cuius semen in semetipso
super terram. Et factū est ita. * Et protulit terra
herbam virentē, & facientē semen iuxta gen-
suū; lignumq; faciens fructū, & habens vnum
quodq; sementem secundū speciem suam.
Et vidit Deus quod esset bonum. * Et factum
est vespere & mane dies tertius. * Dixit autē Deus,
Fiant luminaria in firmamento cæli; & di-
dant diem ac noctē; & sint in signa & tēpo-
ra, dies & annos: * Vt luceat in firmamento cæli
& illuminent terrā. Et factum est ita. * Fecit
Deus duo luminaria magna: luminare maius
vt præesset diei; & luminare minus, vt præes-
set nocti. * Et posuit eas Deus in firmamēto
cæli, vt lucerēt super terrā: * Et præesset
diei ac nocti; & diuiderent lucem ac tenebras.
Et vidit Deus quod esset bonū. * Et factum
est vespere, & mane dies quartus. * Dixit etiā
Deus, Producant aquæ reptile animæ viuētis
& volatile super terram sub firmamento cæli.

הרגום אונקלוס

[illegible]

קדמין

וְיָשָׁב יִשְׂרָאֵל בְּיָמָיו וְיָשָׁב יִשְׂרָאֵל בְּיָמָיו

1. **Re N** λέγει ἐπὶ τῆς ἀπορίας τοῦ ἀντιθέτου

1 Ν δεχρη̄ ἔποίησεν ὁ θεὸς τὸν ἑρᾶνον ὃ τὴν γῆν.
 2 ἡ ᾧ γῆν ἀόρατον καὶ ἀκατασκεύαστον· ὃ
 3 σκοῦτες ἐπὶ αὐτὴν τὰ ἄστρα. καὶ πνεῦμα θεοῦ ἐπέχε-
 4 ρεῖ ἐπ' αὐτὴν ὕδατος. καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός· γῆνιδίτω
 5 φῶς· καὶ ἐγένετο φῶς. καὶ εἶδεν ὁ θεὸς τὸ φῶς· ὅτι
 6 καλόν. καὶ οἰκώσας ἐν τοῖς ὕδασι· καὶ ἀνάμεινεν ὁ
 7 θεὸς τὸ φῶς καὶ τὴν ἡμέραν, καὶ τὸ σκοῦς ἐκά-
 8 λευσε νύκτα. καὶ ἐγένετο ἑσπέρα, καὶ ἐγένετο πρωΐ, ἡμέρα μία. καὶ εἶ-
 9 πεν ὁ θεός· γενηθήτω στερέωμα ἐν μέσῳ τῶν ὕδατος· καὶ ἐποίησα χερυθίζον
 10 ἀνάμεινεν ὕδατος ἐπὶ ὕδατος. καὶ ἔποίησεν ὁ θεός τὸ στερέωμα, καὶ διε-
 11 χωρῶσεν ὁ θεὸς ἀνάμεινεν ὕδατος ἐπὶ τὸ ὑποκάτω τοῦ στερώματος,
 12 καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ ὕδατος· ὃ ἐπάνω τοῦ στερώματος. καὶ ἐκατέστη
 13 ὁ θεός τὸ στερέωμα ἐρᾶνον· καὶ εἶδεν ὁ θεός, ὅτι καλόν. καὶ ἐγένετο ἑσπέρα
 14 καὶ ἐγένετο πρωΐ, ἡμέρα ὁδὴ λ. ρα. καὶ ἐπενόησεν, Γενηθήτω
 15 τὸ ὕδωρ τὸ ὑποκάτω τοῦ ἐρᾶνος εἰς συναγωγὴν μίαν, καὶ ὁ θάλασσα ἡ
 16 ἑκρά· καὶ ἐγένετο ὕατος, καὶ συνήχθη τὸ ὕδωρ τὸ ὑποκάτω τοῦ ἐρᾶνος
 17 εἰς τὰς συναγωγὰς αὐτῆς, καὶ ὠφθη ἡ ἑκρά. καὶ ἐκατέστη ὁ θεός τὴν
 18 ἑκράν, γῆν καὶ τὰ συστήματα τῶν ὕδατων ἐκατέστη θάλασσας. καὶ εἶ-
 19 πεν ὁ θεός, ὅτι καλόν· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, θλασθήτω ἡ γῆ ἐν ὕδατι
 20 ὡς ὅτι ἀνέβη ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕδατος· καὶ καθ' ὁμοίωσιν αὐτῆς, καὶ ἐξῆλθον
 21 κερπύμω ποιεῖν καρπὸν· ὡς τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕδατος ἐν αὐτῇ, καὶ γένθ.
 22 ὁππότε γῆς· καὶ ἐγένετο ὕατος. καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός· γῆ ἐν ὕδατι ἔστω
 23 ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕδατος ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕδατος· καὶ ἐγένετο ὕατος. καὶ ἐξῆλθον κερπύ-
 24 μω ποιεῖν καρπὸν· ὡς τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕδατος ἐν αὐτῇ, καὶ γένθ.
 25 ὁππότε γῆς· καὶ εἶδεν ὁ θεός, ὅτι καλόν. καὶ ἐγένετο ἑσπέρα καὶ ἐγένετο
 26 πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ
 27 στερώματι· ὡς ὅτι ἐφάνη ὁππότε γῆς, ὡς διαχωρίσιν ἀ-
 28 ναμίαν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ νυκτός· καὶ ἐξῆλθον ἑσπέρα
 29 καὶ πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ
 30 στερώματι· ὡς ὅτι ἐφάνη ὁππότε γῆς, ὡς διαχωρίσιν ἀ-
 31 ναμίαν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ νυκτός· καὶ ἐξῆλθον ἑσπέρα
 32 καὶ πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ
 33 στερώματι· ὡς ὅτι ἐφάνη ὁππότε γῆς, ὡς διαχωρίσιν ἀ-
 34 ναμίαν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ νυκτός· καὶ ἐξῆλθον ἑσπέρα
 35 καὶ πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ
 36 στερώματι· ὡς ὅτι ἐφάνη ὁππότε γῆς, ὡς διαχωρίσιν ἀ-
 37 ναμίαν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ νυκτός· καὶ ἐξῆλθον ἑσπέρα
 38 καὶ πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ
 39 στερώματι· ὡς ὅτι ἐφάνη ὁππότε γῆς, ὡς διαχωρίσιν ἀ-
 40 ναμίαν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ νυκτός· καὶ ἐξῆλθον ἑσπέρα
 41 καὶ πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ
 42 στερώματι· ὡς ὅτι ἐφάνη ὁππότε γῆς, ὡς διαχωρίσιν ἀ-
 43 ναμίαν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ νυκτός· καὶ ἐξῆλθον ἑσπέρα
 44 καὶ πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ
 45 στερώματι· ὡς ὅτι ἐφάνη ὁππότε γῆς, ὡς διαχωρίσιν ἀ-
 46 ναμίαν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ νυκτός· καὶ ἐξῆλθον ἑσπέρα
 47 καὶ πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ
 48 στερώματι· ὡς ὅτι ἐφάνη ὁππότε γῆς, ὡς διαχωρίσιν ἀ-
 49 ναμίαν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ νυκτός· καὶ ἐξῆλθον ἑσπέρα
 50 καὶ πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ
 51 στερώματι· ὡς ὅτι ἐφάνη ὁππότε γῆς, ὡς διαχωρίσιν ἀ-
 52 ναμίαν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ νυκτός· καὶ ἐξῆλθον ἑσπέρα
 53 καὶ πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ
 54 στερώματι· ὡς ὅτι ἐφάνη ὁππότε γῆς, ὡς διαχωρίσιν ἀ-
 55 ναμίαν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ νυκτός· καὶ ἐξῆλθον ἑσπέρα
 56 καὶ πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ
 57 στερώματι· ὡς ὅτι ἐφάνη ὁππότε γῆς, ὡς διαχωρίσιν ἀ-
 58 ναμίαν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ νυκτός· καὶ ἐξῆλθον ἑσπέρα
 59 καὶ πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ
 60 στερώματι· ὡς ὅτι ἐφάνη ὁππότε γῆς, ὡς διαχωρίσιν ἀ-
 61 ναμίαν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ νυκτός· καὶ ἐξῆλθον ἑσπέρα
 62 καὶ πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ
 63 στερώματι· ὡς ὅτι ἐφάνη ὁππότε γῆς, ὡς διαχωρίσιν ἀ-
 64 ναμίαν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ νυκτός· καὶ ἐξῆλθον ἑσπέρα
 65 καὶ πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ
 66 στερώματι· ὡς ὅτι ἐφάνη ὁππότε γῆς, ὡς διαχωρίσιν ἀ-
 67 ναμίαν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ νυκτός· καὶ ἐξῆλθον ἑσπέρα
 68 καὶ πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ
 69 στερώματι· ὡς ὅτι ἐφάνη ὁππότε γῆς, ὡς διαχωρίσιν ἀ-
 70 ναμίαν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ νυκτός· καὶ ἐξῆλθον ἑσπέρα
 71 καὶ πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ
 72 στερώματι· ὡς ὅτι ἐφάνη ὁππότε γῆς, ὡς διαχωρίσιν ἀ-
 73 ναμίαν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ νυκτός· καὶ ἐξῆλθον ἑσπέρα
 74 καὶ πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ
 75 στερώματι· ὡς ὅτι ἐφάνη ὁππότε γῆς, ὡς διαχωρίσιν ἀ-
 76 ναμίαν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ ἀνάμεινεν τὸ νυκτός· καὶ ἐξῆλθον ἑσπέρα
 77 καὶ πρωΐ, ἡμέρα τέτην· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ θεός, γῆνιδίτω σπέρμα ἐν τῇ

CAPIUT PRIMUM.

[illegible]

BIBLIA POLYGLOTTA Book spread, 1568. Printed by Christopher Plantin, Antwerp. Plantin's polyglot Bible is zoned for five different translations (Hebrew, Greek, Aramaic, Syriac, and Latin). Each zone is proportioned to accommodate the typographic texture of a particular script. The page is a dense rectangle cut into parts. The pieces—though highly individualized—fit together into a unified whole. Reproduced from William Dana Orcutt, *In Quest of the Perfect Book* (New York: Little, Brown and Co., 1926).

CHAPITRE SECOND.

I. La colonne de Pompée. II. On ne convient pas sur ses mesures. III. Colonne d'Alexandre Severe.

I. LA fameuse * colonne de Pompée est auprès d'Alexandrie : on ne fait pour quelle raison elle porte le nom de Pompée ; je croirois volontiers que c'est par quelque erreur populaire. Plusieurs voyageurs en ont parlé, tous conviennent qu'elle est d'une grandeur énorme. Deux des plus modernes en ont donné le dessein & les mesures ; mais ils different considerablement entre eux sur la hauteur du piedestal, de la colonne & du chapiteau : cependant tous deux disent qu'ils l'ont mesurée.

» Pour ce qui est de la colonne, dit l'un, (c'est Corneille Brun p. 241.) elle est sur un piedestal carré, haut de sept ou huit pieds & large de quatre à chacune de ses faces. Ce piedestal est posé sur une base carrée, haute d'environ un demi pied, & large de vingt, faite de plusieurs pierres, maçonnées ensemble. Le corps de la colonne même n'est que d'une seule pierre, que quelques-uns croient être de granit ; d'autres disent que c'est une espece de pâte ou de ciment, qui avec le tems a pris la forme de pierre. Pour moi je croi que c'est une vraie pierre de taille, du moins autant que j'ai pu le reconnoître par l'épreuve que j'en ai faite. Et si cela est vrai, comment me personne presque n'en doute, il y a sujet de s'étonner comment on a pu dresser une pierre de cette grandeur : car après l'avoir mesurée, j'ai trouvé qu'elle a quatre-vingt-dix pieds de haut, & que sa grosseur est telle, que six hommes peuvent à peine l'embrasser ; ce qui revient, selon la mesure, que j'en ai prise, à trente-huit pieds. Au haut il y a un beau chapiteau proportionné à la grosseur de la colonne, mais fait d'une piece separée.

L'autre, qui est M. Paul Lucas, en parle en cette maniere : , Un de mes premiers soins fut d'aller examiner la colonne de Pompée, qui est près d'Alexandrie du côté du couchant, & je croi qu'il seroit difficile de rien ajou-

CAPUT SECUNDUM.

I. Columna Pompeii, II. De ejus mensuris non convenit inter eos qui istae loca adierunt, III. Columna Alexandri Severi.

I. Eleberrima * illa Pompeii columna prope Alexandriam erigitur. Cur Pompeii columna vocetur, ignoratur. Libenter crederem hujusmodi denominationem ex populari errore mansisse. Ex peregrinantibus omnes enonnis magnitudinis esse narant. Duo recentiores & figuram & mensuras dederunt, ac inter illos non convenit de stylobate, columnæ & capitelli magnitudine. Attamen ambo dicunt se mensuras excepisse.

» Quantum ad columnam, inquit Cornelius Brunnus p. 241. ea imposita est quadrato stylobate cuius altitudo est septem octavo pedum, latera vero singulis in facibus sunt quatuordecim pedum. Stylobates autem ille quadrata basi im-

» ponitur, altitudine dimidii pedis, ex lapidibus plurimis structa base est, longitudinis circumquaque viginti pedes habens. Columna ex uno lapide est, plurimi putant ex marmore granito esse, alii vero quasi cementum & compactam materiam esse, quæ procedente tempore, formam lapidis sumferit. Puto ego esse lapidem quantum saltem expectari licuit. Quod si ita sit, id autem nemo hodie in dubium vocat; plane mirum quo pacto tantum lapidem erigere potuerint. Nam cum mensuram duxissem, nonaginta pedes altitudinis habere comperi, tantaque ejus est spissitudo, ut sex viri simul vix illam amplecti possint, id quod ad mensuram a me sumtam reducit, circuitus enim ejus est triginta & octo pedum. In culmine capitellum est ex uno lapide secundum columnæ proportionem.

Alius, nempe Paulus Lucas, columnam sic describit. » Ubi primum posui columnam Pompeii adit, quæ prope Alexandriam est versis occidentem. Difficile autem esset ejus mensuras

SUPPLEMENT AU LIVRE DE L'ANTIQUITÉ (LEFT) Book page, Paris, 1724. The two-column grid devised for this bilingual book provides a large, single-column block for the French text, with two columns below for the Latin. The quotation marks serve as a frame along the left edge of the quoted passage.

THE ILLUSTRATED LONDON NEWS (RIGHT) Newspaper page, 1861. Early newspaper advertisements were designed by the paper's printer, not supplied by the client or an advertising agency. This dense field of entries occupies a four-column grid, with ruled lines to create order.

THE IMPERIAL FAMILY BIBLE (NEXT SPREAD) Book, 1854. In this unusual book structure, the notes appear in the center of the page rather than along the bottom or the edges. The margin has moved from outside to inside.

mount Perazim,¹ he shall be wroth as in ²the valley of Gibeon, that he may do his work, ³his strange work; and bring to pass his act, his strange act.

²² Now therefore ⁴be ye not mockers, ⁵lest your bands be made strong: for I have heard from the Lord God of hosts, ⁶a consumption, even determined upon the whole earth.

²³ ⁷Give ye ear, and hear my voice; hearken, and hear my speech.

²⁴ Doth the ploughman plough all day to sow? doth he open and ⁸break the clods of his ground?

²⁵ When he hath made plain the face thereof, doth he not cast abroad the fitches,⁹ and scatter the cummin, and cast in³ the principal wheat, and the appointed barley, and the rye,⁴ in their place?⁵

²⁶ For⁶ his God doth instruct him to discretion, and doth teach him.

²⁷ For the fitches are not ⁷thrashed⁷ with a thrashing-instrument, neither is a cart-wheel turned about upon the cummin; but ⁸the fitches are beaten out with a staff, and the cummin with a rod.

²⁸ ⁹Bread-corn is bruised;⁹ because he will not ever be thrashing it, nor break it ¹⁰with¹⁰ the wheel of his cart, nor bruise it ¹¹with¹¹ his horsemen.

²⁹ This also ¹²cometh forth from the Lord of hosts, ¹³which is wonderful in counsel, and excellent in working.

CHAPTER XXIX.

God's heavy judgments upon Jerusalem, 1-6. The unsatiableness of her enemies, 7, 8. The senselessness, 9-12, and deep hypocrisy of the Jews, 13-17. A promise of sanctification to the godly, 18-24.

WOEE¹⁰ to Ariel, to Ariel, the¹⁰ city where David dwelt! ¹¹add ye year to year; let them kill¹¹ sacrifices.

² Yet ¹²I will distress Ariel, and there shall be heaviness and sorrow: and¹³ it shall be unto me as Ariel.¹²

³ And I will ¹⁴camp against thee round about, and will lay siege against thee with a mount, and I will raise forts against thee.

⁴ And ¹⁵thou shalt be brought down, and shalt speak out of the ground, and thy speech shall be low out of the dust, and thy voice shall be, as

A. M. 3292. B. C. 712.

1 Heb. perp. or chup.

2 Their food and lofty

3 As if speaking out

4 Heb. perp. or chup.

5 Heb. perp. or chup.

6 Heb. perp. or chup.

7 Heb. perp. or chup.

8 Heb. perp. or chup.

9 Heb. perp. or chup.

10 Heb. perp. or chup.

11 Heb. perp. or chup.

12 Heb. perp. or chup.

13 Heb. perp. or chup.

14 Heb. perp. or chup.

15 Heb. perp. or chup.

16 Heb. perp. or chup.

17 Heb. perp. or chup.

18 Heb. perp. or chup.

19 Heb. perp. or chup.

20 Heb. perp. or chup.

21 Heb. perp. or chup.

22 Heb. perp. or chup.

23 Heb. perp. or chup.

24 Heb. perp. or chup.

25 Heb. perp. or chup.

26 Heb. perp. or chup.

27 Heb. perp. or chup.

28 Heb. perp. or chup.

29 Heb. perp. or chup.

30 Heb. perp. or chup.

31 Heb. perp. or chup.

32 Heb. perp. or chup.

33 Heb. perp. or chup.

34 Heb. perp. or chup.

35 Heb. perp. or chup.

36 Heb. perp. or chup.

37 Heb. perp. or chup.

38 Heb. perp. or chup.

39 Heb. perp. or chup.

40 Heb. perp. or chup.

41 Heb. perp. or chup.

42 Heb. perp. or chup.

43 Heb. perp. or chup.

44 Heb. perp. or chup.

45 Heb. perp. or chup.

46 Heb. perp. or chup.

47 Heb. perp. or chup.

48 Heb. perp. or chup.

49 Heb. perp. or chup.

50 Heb. perp. or chup.

51 Heb. perp. or chup.

52 Heb. perp. or chup.

53 Heb. perp. or chup.

54 Heb. perp. or chup.

55 Heb. perp. or chup.

56 Heb. perp. or chup.

57 Heb. perp. or chup.

58 Heb. perp. or chup.

59 Heb. perp. or chup.

60 Heb. perp. or chup.

61 Heb. perp. or chup.

62 Heb. perp. or chup.

63 Heb. perp. or chup.

64 Heb. perp. or chup.

65 Heb. perp. or chup.

66 Heb. perp. or chup.

67 Heb. perp. or chup.

68 Heb. perp. or chup.

69 Heb. perp. or chup.

70 Heb. perp. or chup.

71 Heb. perp. or chup.

72 Heb. perp. or chup.

73 Heb. perp. or chup.

74 Heb. perp. or chup.

75 Heb. perp. or chup.

76 Heb. perp. or chup.

77 Heb. perp. or chup.

78 Heb. perp. or chup.

79 Heb. perp. or chup.

80 Heb. perp. or chup.

81 Heb. perp. or chup.

82 Heb. perp. or chup.

83 Heb. perp. or chup.

84 Heb. perp. or chup.

85 Heb. perp. or chup.

A. M. 3292. B. C. 712.

1 Heb. perp. or chup.

2 Their food and lofty

3 As if speaking out

4 Heb. perp. or chup.

5 Heb. perp. or chup.

6 Heb. perp. or chup.

7 Heb. perp. or chup.

8 Heb. perp. or chup.

9 Heb. perp. or chup.

10 Heb. perp. or chup.

11 Heb. perp. or chup.

12 Heb. perp. or chup.

13 Heb. perp. or chup.

14 Heb. perp. or chup.

15 Heb. perp. or chup.

16 Heb. perp. or chup.

17 Heb. perp. or chup.

18 Heb. perp. or chup.

19 Heb. perp. or chup.

20 Heb. perp. or chup.

21 Heb. perp. or chup.

22 Heb. perp. or chup.

23 Heb. perp. or chup.

24 Heb. perp. or chup.

25 Heb. perp. or chup.

26 Heb. perp. or chup.

27 Heb. perp. or chup.

28 Heb. perp. or chup.

29 Heb. perp. or chup.

30 Heb. perp. or chup.

31 Heb. perp. or chup.

32 Heb. perp. or chup.

33 Heb. perp. or chup.

34 Heb. perp. or chup.

35 Heb. perp. or chup.

36 Heb. perp. or chup.

37 Heb. perp. or chup.

38 Heb. perp. or chup.

39 Heb. perp. or chup.

40 Heb. perp. or chup.

41 Heb. perp. or chup.

42 Heb. perp. or chup.

43 Heb. perp. or chup.

44 Heb. perp. or chup.

45 Heb. perp. or chup.

46 Heb. perp. or chup.

47 Heb. perp. or chup.

48 Heb. perp. or chup.

49 Heb. perp. or chup.

50 Heb. perp. or chup.

51 Heb. perp. or chup.

52 Heb. perp. or chup.

53 Heb. perp. or chup.

54 Heb. perp. or chup.

55 Heb. perp. or chup.

56 Heb. perp. or chup.

57 Heb. perp. or chup.

58 Heb. perp. or chup.

59 Heb. perp. or chup.

60 Heb. perp. or chup.

61 Heb. perp. or chup.

62 Heb. perp. or chup.

63 Heb. perp. or chup.

64 Heb. perp. or chup.

65 Heb. perp. or chup.

66 Heb. perp. or chup.

67 Heb. perp. or chup.

68 Heb. perp. or chup.

69 Heb. perp. or chup.

70 Heb. perp. or chup.

71 Heb. perp. or chup.

72 Heb. perp. or chup.

73 Heb. perp. or chup.

74 Heb. perp. or chup.

75 Heb. perp. or chup.

76 Heb. perp. or chup.

77 Heb. perp. or chup.

78 Heb. perp. or chup.

79 Heb. perp. or chup.

80 Heb. perp. or chup.

81 Heb. perp. or chup.

82 Heb. perp. or chup.

83 Heb. perp. or chup.

84 Heb. perp. or chup.

85 Heb. perp. or chup.

of one that hath a familiar spirit, of the ground, and thy speech shall be as a whisper¹ out of the dust.²

⁵ Moreover, ³the multitude of thy strangers shall be like small dust, as the multitude of the terrible ones shall be ⁴as chaff that passeth away; ye it shall be ⁵at an instant suddenly.

⁶ Thou shalt be ⁶visited of the Lord of hosts with thunder, and with earthquake, and great noise, with storm and tempest, and the flame of devouring fire.

⁷ And ⁷the multitude of all the nations that fight against Ariel, even all that fight against her and her munition, and ⁸that distress her, shall be ⁹as a dream of a night-vision.

⁸ It shall even be ¹⁰as when an hungry man dreameth, and, behold, he eateth; but he awaketh, and his soul is empty: or as when a thirsty man dreameth, and, behold, he drinketh; but he awaketh, and, behold, he is faint, and his soul hath appetite: so shall the multitude of all the nations be that fight against mount Zion.

⁹ ¹¹Stay yourselves, ¹²and wonder: cry⁴ ye out, and cry: ¹³they are drunken,⁵ but not with wine; they stagger, but not with strong drink.⁶ ¹⁴For ¹⁵the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep, and ¹⁶hath closed your eyes: the prophets and your rulers,⁶ ¹⁷the seers, hath he covered.

¹¹ And the vision of all⁷ is become unto you as the words of a ¹⁸book⁸ that is sealed, which ¹⁹men deliver to one that is learned, saying, Read this: I pray thee: and he saith, ²⁰I cannot for it is sealed.

¹² And the book⁹ is delivered to him that is not learned, saying, Read this, I pray thee: and he saith, ²¹I am not learned.

¹³ Wherefore the Lord¹⁰ said, ²²Forasmuch as this people draw near me with their mouth, and with their lips do honour me, but have removed their heart far from me, and ²³their fear¹¹ toward me is taught by the precept of men:

¹⁴ Therefore, behold, ²⁴I will proceed¹² to do a marvellous work among

The people threatened for

ISAIAH, XXX.

their confidence in Egypt.

this people, *even* a marvellous work and a wonder; ^afor the wisdom of their wise men shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent men shall be hid.

15 Woe unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the LORD, and their works are in the dark, and they say, ^aWho seeth us? and who knoweth us?

16 Surely ^ayour turning of things upside down shall be esteemed ^aas the potter's clay: for shall the work say of him that made it, He made me not? ^aor shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, He had no understanding?

17 ^aIs it not ^ayet a very little while and ^aLebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field, and ^athe fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest?

18 And in that day shall ^athe deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity, and out of darkness.

19 The meek also shall increase ^atheir joy in the LORD, and ^athe poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

20 For ^athe terrible one is brought to nought, and ^athe scorner is consumed, and ^aall that watch ^afor iniquity are cut off:

21 That ^amake a man ^aan offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of nought.

22 Therefore thus saith the LORD, who ^aredeemed Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob, ^a"Jacob shall not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax pale.

23 But when he seeth his children, the work of mine hands, in the midst of him, they shall ^asanctify my name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall ^afear the God of Israel.

24 They ^aalso that erred in spirit shall come ^ato understanding, and they that murmured shall learn doctrine.

CHAPTER XXX.

The prophet threateneth the people for their confidence in Egypt, 1-7, and contempt of God's word, 8-17. God's mercies toward his church, 18-29. God's wrath, and the people's joy in the destruction of Assyria, 27-33.

WOE to ^athe rebellious children, saith the LORD, ^athat take coun-

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

A.M. 3291, B.C. 718.

sel, but not of me; and that ^acover with a covering, but not of my Spirit, that they may ^aadd sin to sin:

2 That ^awalk to go down into Egypt, and have not asked at my mouth; to strengthen themselves in the strength of Pharaoh, and to trust in ^athe shadow of Egypt!

3 Therefore shall ^athe strength of Pharaoh be your shame, and the trust in the shadow of Egypt ^ayour confusion.

4 For ^ahis princes were at ^aZoan, and his ambassadors came to ^aHanes.

5 They were all ^aashamed of a people that could not profit them, nor be an help nor profit, but a shame, and also a reproach.

6 The burden of the ^abeasts of the south: ^ainto the land of trouble and anguish, from whence ^acome the young and old lion, ^athe viper and fiery flying serpent, they will carry their riches upon the shoulders of young asses, and their treasures upon the bunches of camels, to a people that shall not profit them.

7 For ^athe Egyptians shall help in vain, and to no purpose: therefore have I cried concerning ^athis, ^aTheir strength ^ais to sit still.

8 ^aNow go, ^awrite it before them in a table, ^aand note it in a book, that it may be for the ^atime to come for ever and ever;

9 That ^athis is a rebellious people, ^alying children, children that ^awill not hear the law of the LORD:

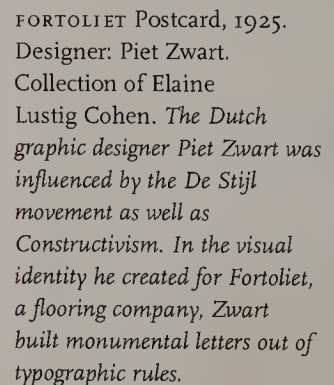
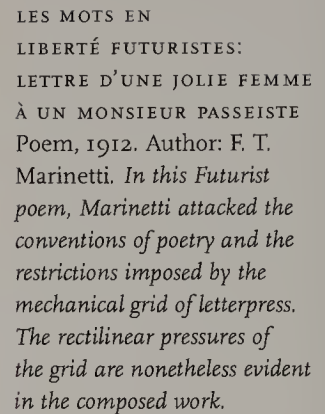
10 Which ^asay to the seers, See not; and to the prophets, Prophesy not unto us right things, ^aspeak unto us smooth things, prophesy ^adeceits:

11 Get ^ayou out of the way, turn aside out of the path, ^acause the Holy One of Israel to cease from before us.

12 Wherefore thus saith the Holy One of Israel, ^aBecause ye despise this word, ^aand trust in ^aoppression and perverseness, and stay thereon:

13 Therefore this iniquity shall be to you ^aas a breach ready to fall, swelling out ^ain a high wall, whose breaking ^acometh suddenly at an instant.

14 And ^ahe shall break it as the



DIVIDING SPACE

In the nineteenth century, the multi-columned, multimedia pages of newspapers and magazines challenged the supremacy of the book and its insular edge, making way for new typologies of the grid. By questioning the protective function of the frame, modern artists and designers unleashed the grid as a flexible, critical, and systematic tool. Avant-garde artists and poets attacked the barriers between art and everyday life, creating new objects and practices that merged with urban experience.

Leading the assault against print's traditional syntax was F. T. Marinetti, who established the Futurist movement in 1909. Marinetti devised poems that combined different styles and sizes of type and allowed lines of text to span multiple rows. Marinetti's ingenious manipulations of the printing process work against—but inside—the constraints of letterpress, exposing the technological grid even while trying to overturn it. Dada artists and poets performed similar typographic experiments, using letterpress printing as well as collage, montage, and various forms of photomechanical reproduction.

Constructivism, which originated in the Soviet Union at the end of the 1910s, built on Futurist and Dada typography, bringing a more rational approach to the attack on typographic tradition. El Lissitzky employed the elements of the print shop to emphasize the mechanics of letterpress, using printer's rules to make the technological matrix actively and physically present. Constructivism used rules to divide space, throwing its symmetry into a new kind of balance. The page was no longer a fixed, hierarchical window through which content might be viewed, but an expanse that could be mapped and articulated, a space extending beyond the edge.

For Dutch artists and designers, the grid was a gateway to the infinite. The paintings of Piet Mondrian, their abstract surfaces crossed by vertical and horizontal lines, suggest the expansion of the grid beyond the limits of the canvas. Theo van Doesburg, Piet Zwart, and other members of the Dutch De Stijl group applied this idea to design and typography. Converting the curves and angles of the alphabet into perpendicular systems, they forced the letter through the mesh of the grid. Like the Constructivists, they used vertical and horizontal bars to structure the surface of the page.

Typography is mostly an act of dividing a limited surface. —WILLI BAUMEISTER, 1923



DAS BAUHAUS IN DESSAU
Letterhead, 1924. Designer:
Herbert Bayer. Collection of
Elaine Lustig Cohen. Herbert
Bayer's letterheads for the
Bauhaus are manifestos for a
new typographic order. Rather
than provide a decorative frame
or a centered title, Bayer treated
the entire page as a surface to be
divided. Points, short hatches,
and lines of type indicate axes
for folding the sheet and
positioning text. This letterhead
also promotes Bayer's idea that
all letters should be lowercase,
a point expounded in small
print across the bottom.

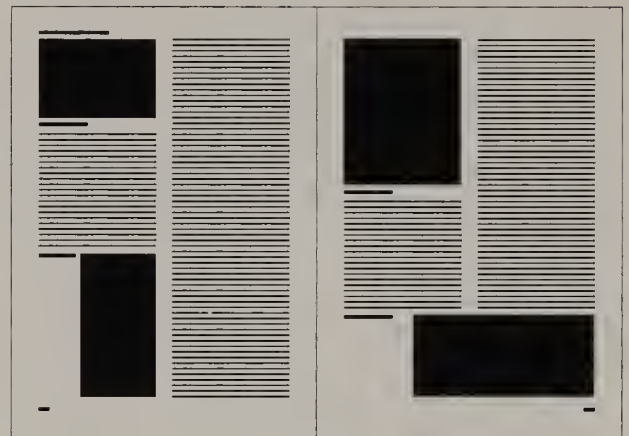
The new typography not only contests the classical “framework”
but also the whole principle of symmetry. —PAUL RENNER, 1931

Jan Tschichold's book *The New Typography*, published in Germany in 1928, took ideas from Futurism, Constructivism, and De Stijl and conveyed them as practical advice for commercial printers and designers. Functionally zoned letterheads using standard paper sizes were central to Tschichold's practical application of modernism. Whereas Futurism and Dada had aggressively attacked convention, Tschichold advocated design as a means of discipline and order, and he began to theorize the grid as a modular system based on standard measures.

By describing the expansion of space in all directions, the modern grid slipped past the classical frame of the page. Similarly, modern architecture had displaced the centered facades of classical building with broken planes, modular elements, and continuous ribbons of windows. The protective frame became a continuous field.



THE NEW TYPOGRAPHY
Diagram, 1928
(redrawn). Designer and
author: Jan Tschichold



Tschichold's diagram of good and bad magazine design advocates staggering images in relation to content instead of forcing text to wrap around blocks moored at the center of the page. Explaining this experiment, Tschichold wrote that his redesigned pages would be even more effective if the photographic halftones (called "blocks") were produced in fixed rather than arbitrary sizes.

I have intentionally shown blocks of different and "accidental" widths, since this is what usually has to be contended with (although in the future, with standard block-sizes, it will happen less often).

—JAN TSCHICHOLD, 1928



Von A bis Z bei Z und N
dem Fachgeschäft mit der großen Auswahl

ZAHN-NOPPER
Stuttgart Tübinger Str. 11 Telefon 299081

Zum baldmöglichsten Eintritt
suchen wir

**Verkäufer als
Samstags-Aushilfen**

auch verkaufsbegabte
Handwerker
für unsere Abteilungen
Heimwerker
Gartenbedarf
Werkzeuge
Baubeschläge

Als fortschrittliches Unternehmen sind wir bestrebt, unseren
Mitarbeitern angenehme Arbeitsbedingungen zu bieten. Dazu
gehört auch die Fünf-Tage-Woche, verbilligter Einkauf und
andere Vergünstigungen. Erkundigen Sie sich bitte bei unserer
Personalabteilung, auf Wunsch auch samstags.

ZAHN-NOPPER
Stuttgart M, Tübinger Straße 11
Telefon 29 90 81, Hausapparat 14

**250 JAHRE
SEIT 1721**

Wir suchen zum baldmöglichsten
Eintritt

KRAFTFAHRER
mit Führerschein Klasse 2

Wir bieten gute Bezahlung, an-
genehme Arbeitsbedingungen,
kostenlose Einrichtungen.

ZAHN-NOPPER
7 Stuttgart-Zuffenhausen
Zahn-Nopper-Straße 12
Telefon 82 30 26

**250 JAHRE
SEIT 1721**

ZAHN-NOPPER Store identity,
1961-63. Designer: Anton
Stankowski. This identity
system demonstrates a
programmatic approach to
design, using a limited set of
elements to construct diverse yet
genetically linked solutions.
The system is governed by
flexible rules for construction
rather than a fixed logotype.

GRID AS PROGRAM

Classics of Swiss design theory include Josef Müller-Brockmann, *Grid Systems in Graphic Design* (Switzerland: Ram Publications, 1996; first published in 1961) and *The Graphic Artist and His Design Problems* (Switzerland: Arthur Niggli Ltd., 1961); and Karl Gerstner, *Designing Programmes* (Switzerland: Arthur Niggli, 1964). See also Emil Ruder, *Typography* (New York: Hastings House, 1981; first published in 1967).

During the post–World War II period, graphic designers in Switzerland honed ideas from the New Typography into a total design methodology. It was at this time that the term *grid* (*Raster*) became commonly applied to page layout. Max Bill, Karl Gerstner, Josef Müller-Brockmann, Emil Ruder, and others were practitioners and theorists of a new rationalism that aimed to catalyze an honest and democratic society. Rejecting the artistic clichés of self expression and raw intuition, they aspired to what Ruder called “a cool and fascinating beauty.”

Gerstner’s book *Designing Programmes* (1964) is a manifesto for systems-oriented design. Gerstner defined a design “programme” as a set of rules for constructing a range of visual solutions. Connecting his methodology with the new field of computer programming, Gerstner presented examples of computer-generated patterns that were made by mathematically describing visual elements and combining them according to simple rules.

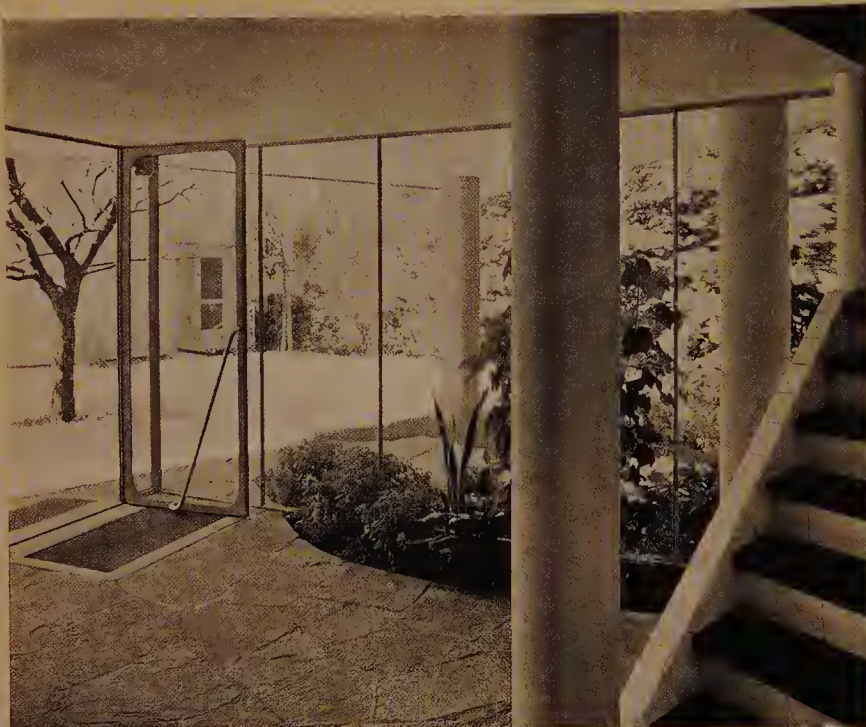
Expanding on the pioneering ideas of Bayer, Tschichold, Renner, and other designers of the avant garde, the Swiss rationalists rejected the centuries-old model of the page-as-frame in favor of a continuous architectural space. Whereas a traditional book would have placed captions, commentary, and folios within a protective margin, the rationalist grid cut the page into multiple columns, each bearing equal weight within the whole, suggesting an indefinite progression outward. Pictures were cropped to fit the modules of the grid, yielding shapes of unusual proportion. Constructing ever more elaborate grids, the Swiss designers used the confines of a repeated structure to generate variation and surprise. Such grids could be activated in numerous ways within a single publication, always referring back to the root structure.

This approach, which quickly became known as “Swiss design,” found adherents (and detractors) around the world. Many American designers dismissed Swiss rationalism as irrelevant to a society driven by pop culture and hungry for rapidly transforming styles. Programmatic thinking is now being revived, however, as designers today confront large-scale information projects. The need is greater than ever for flexible “programs” designed to accommodate dynamic bodies of content.

The typographic grid is a proportional regulator for composition, tables, pictures, etc....

The difficulty is: to find the balance, the maximum of conformity to a rule with the maximum of freedom. Or: the maximum of constants with the greatest possible variability.”

—KARL GERSTNER, 1961



14. Eingangshalle

2 Mehrfamilienhäuser im Doldertal Zürich

Räumliche Organisation

Situation: Die beiden Mehrfamilienhäuser liegen im Villanviertel, auf halber Höhe des westwärts abfallenden „Zürichberg“ [4]. Längs dem Grundstück verläuft auf der Nordwestseite eine öffentliche Parkanlage mit einem dichten Baumbestand. Die Zufahrtsstrasse genannt „Doldertal“ hat ein Gefälle von 10% und ist nicht durchgehend. Die Schrägstellung der Blöcke zur Baulinie ergibt eine verbesserte Südlage für die Wohnräume, eine Abkehrung der Schlafräume von der Strasse und eine lockere Gesamtanlage, ohne gegenüberliegende Schmalseiten. [5] (Siehe auch baugesetzliche Sonderheiten.)

Raumprogramm: Es ist versucht worden, die Vorzüge des Einfamilienhauses soweit als möglich auf die Etagenwohnung zu übertragen (freies, schallsicheres Wohnen, Einbeziehung der Landschaft, grosse Wohnterrassen, weitgehende innere Ausstattung). Im Untergeschoss: gedeckter Vorplatz mit zwei Garagen, Eingangshalle mit Treppenaufgang, Abstellräume, Vorratskeller, Waschküche und Trockenraum; die beiden letzteren nur im unteren Haus. Unter der Eingangshalle mit besonderem Eingang [9] (7) liegen Heizung und Kohlenraum. Im Parterre: eine vierzimmerwohnung mit Mädchenzimmer und ein Einzelzimmer-Apartment mit direktem Eingang vom Garten. Im Obergeschoss: eine 5/6-Zimmerwohnung mit Mädchenzimmer. Zu dieser

Wohnung gehört noch ein auf Höhe Dachgeschoss liegendes Sonnenbad [12] (16), durch eine Eisentreppe von der Terrasse erreichbar. In beiden Wohnungen liegen Treppe und Küche ausserhalb der eigentlichen Wohnfläche (Schallsolation); dennoch hat die Küche eine betriebstechnisch zentrale Lage (Verbindung mit der Terrasse, je eine Durchreiche nach Essplatz und Treppenhause). Im Dachgeschoss ein grosses und ein kleines Atelier, Abstellräume im Treppenhause.

Technische Durchbildung

(vgl. Technische Details)

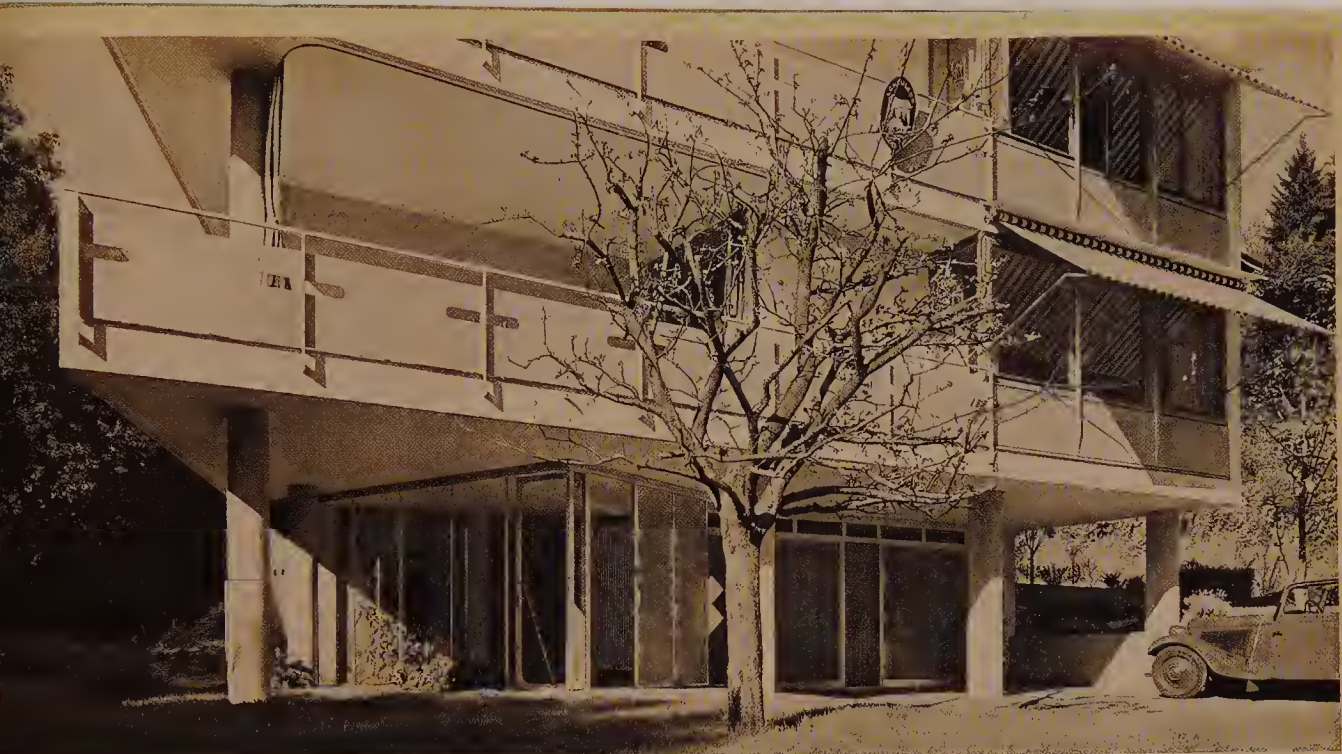
Konstruktionsprinzip: Eisenskelett, Eisenbeton-Zwischendecken, Fassadeausmauerung mit gebrannten Hohlsteinen, hintermauert mit Gipsdämmen. Die Fassaden sind konstruktiv von den Zwischendecken getrennt. Das zurückgesetzte Dachgeschoss besteht aus Holz mit einer äusseren Eternitverkleidung. Zur Fertigstellung des Aussen sind ausschliesslich Materialien mit unterhaltsloser Oberfläche verwendet worden: Edelputz (wässiger Zement, Natursteinpartikeln, ohne Farbbeigabe); Eternit für Rolladenkästen, Brüstungen, Sonnen-Storen-Vordach und Dachgeschoßaufbau; lackiertes Holz für Rolläden und Garagentore; Kupfer für sämtliche Spenglerarbeiten; feuerverzinktes Eisen für Fensterbänke, Geländer. Gestrichen sind lediglich die Fenster und gewisse Metallteile aus architektonischen Gründen. Fensterflächen: Horizontal-Schiebefenster in Föhrenholz in den Wohn-



15. Treppe

nungen. Grösse des Normalfensters 310 x 120 cm, zusammengeklappt mit dem Rolladenkasten; fester Teil einwärts klappbar zum Reinigen. Die Süd Fenster des Wohnraumes sind mit der Brüstung zusammengebaut (vgl. [21], [22], [23]). Die Küchenfenster sind doppelt, alle übrigen Fenster am Bau sind einfach verglast. Die Ateliers haben durchgehende 45 cm hohe Oberlichter unter der Decke mit Lüftungsklappen, sowie gewisse fast verglaste Fenster mit normaler Brüstungsverglasung: Wohnfenster Spiegelglas 6/7 mm, Atelier-Oberlichter Rohglas, Treppenhause Fenster Drahtglas. Sonnenschutz: für die Wohnzimmerfenster vor die Fassade gehängte Sonnenstoren [21] (44), für die Schlafzimmer Roll-Jalousien. Heizung: Jedes Haus hat seine eigene Warmwasserheizung für Kleinkesselboiler, die gleichzeitig für die Warmwasserbereitung benützt wird. Pro Haus ein Warmwasserboiler mit 1000 Liter Inhalt.

Wohnungsausstattung: Die beiden Häuser sind für anspruchsvolle Mieter, jedoch ohne Luxus ausgestattet. Die Zimmer sind dementsprechend geräumig dimensioniert (Wohnraum 35,00 m², Terrasse 20,00 m²). Die Skelettkonstruktion erlaubt jederzeit eine den Wünschen der Mieter entsprechende Variabilität des Grundrisses. Im Wohnraum befindet sich ein offener Kamin und ein breites Fensterbrett für Blumen. Eingebaute Schränke im Korridor, in den Zimmern kleiner Abstellraum. Fussböden: In den Wohnungen Holzmoos (Esche im Wohnraum, Elche in den übrigen Räumen und im Korridor).



16. Teilansicht von Südwest mit Eingang und Geragen

In den Küchen sind Steinzeugplatten, versuchsweise Linoleum; in den Bädern Terrazzo, schwarz, mit weissen Marmorkörnern. Die Treppentritte und Podeste bestehen ebenfalls aus Terrazzo (Tritte fertige Platten, Podeste im Bau gegossen und geschliffen). Die Stützpfeiler der Tritte und die Sockel sind mit weissen, hartglasierten Platten belegt [14]. Die Böden der Ateliers sind mit hellgrauem Linoleum belegt. Wandbehandlung: Gipsverputz in sämtlichen Räumen, Kalkabrieb in Küchen, Bädern und Aborten. Die Wände der Zimmer sind mit Leimfarbe gestrichen, mit Ausnahme derjenigen in den Wohnräumen und Gängen (tapediert mit Grundpepler und Leimfarbenstrich, oder Ölmalenstrich auf Stoffbespannung). In den Ateliers Verkleidung der Wände in Holzkonstruktion mit Sperrplatten (gewachste finnische Birke).

Im Treppenhaus: Aussenwand stoffbespannt, mit Ölmalen gestrichen, mittlere Brüstungswand gespachtelt und Hochglanz mit Ripollin gestrichen; der Handlauf in Eisen, im Feuer weiss emailliert. Fensterlässe: Diese bestehen in allen Räumen der Wohnungen aus perforierten, 3 cm starken Schieferplatten. Ausstellung der Bäder und Küchen: Grösse des Bades in den Wohnungen 6 m² mit Badwanne, Bidet und zwei Lavebos, W.C. Der Spiegel über den Lavebos ist gegen die festverglaste Fensterfläche gehängt (Licht auf das Gesicht). Die Küchen sind vollständig ausgestattet, je eine Durchreiche ins Treppenhaus und in den Wohn-Essraum, zweiteiliger Aufwaschtisch in Chrom-

nickel-Stahlblech, Kühlschrank, Arbeitsflächen in Ahornholz. Elektrische Beleuchtung: Diese ist in allen Wohn- und Schlafräumen, Gängen, Küchen, Ateliers eine Indirekte.

Ökonomische Angaben

Die beiden Häuser sind Privatbesitz von Herrn Dr. S. Giedlon, Zentralsekretär der Internationalen Kongresse für Neues Bauen. Die Baukosten inkl. Architektenhonorar betragen: 43.5 Meurerstunden pro m³ umbauten Raumes bei total 1985 m³ pro Haus, offene Halle im Parterre zur Hälfte gerechnet. Die durchschnittlichen Baukosten für normale Wohnbauten in Zürich, ohne besonderen Ausbau, betragen 38 bis 40 Meurerstunden pro m³ umbauten Raumes. (1 Mstd. = Fr. 1.72 1935/36)

Ästhetischer Aufbau

Die Schrägstellung der Blöcke ergibt an sich eine lockere Gesamtanlage und erhöht andererseits deren plastische Selbständigkeit. Der zweigeschossige Charakter der Häuser (Baubestimmung der betreffenden Zone) wird durch das Lösen des Baukörpers vom Terrain und durch das Zurücksetzen des Dachgeschosses gewahrt. Dieser Eindruck wird verstärkt durch die vom Hauptbau abweichende Konstruktion des Dachgeschosses (Holz und Eternit). In der Südfassade ist durch Weglassen der gemauerten Brüstungen ein äusseres Zusam-

menfassen von Wohnraum und Wohnterrasse erreicht. In der räumlichen Gliederung treten vielfach schräg verlaufende Wände auf, wodurch eine gewisse Auflockerung der Rechtwinkligkeit erreicht wird. Die Eingangshalle ganz in Glas hat eine freie Form und lässt den Durchblick in den rückwärtsliegenden Park frei. Der Garten reicht über die weitergeführten Gartenplatten (Granit) bis zum Treppeneingang. In den Wohnräumen und Ateliers reichen die Fenster bis zur Decke. In den Schlafräumen ist ein Sturz von 40 cm. In der Dimensionierung von Bauteilen und Ausstattungsdetails ist eine dem betreffenden Material entsprechende Sparsamkeit sowie eine organische und gepflegte Formgebung beobachtet worden. Materialbehandlung und Farbgebung: Aussen wirken die Baustoffe in ihrer natürlichen Struktur und Farbe: Edelputz (weisser Zement mit roten, schwarzen und glimmernden Steinsplittern), Eternit, lackiertes Holz, Eisenblech feuerverzinkt, mit Aluminiumfarbe gestrichen. Farbe an folgenden Stellen: Fensterrahmen dunkelgrau, Geländerrohre, Abdeckbleche weissegrau, die sichtbaren Kellermauern und Säulen sind normal verputzt und hellgrau gestrichen. Im Innern: Die Wände im Treppenhaus, in den Gängen und Nebenräumen sind weissegrau, ebenso das gesamte Holzwerk, Radiatoren, Leitungen. Die Wände der Wohn- und Schlafräume sind hell getönt (beige, rose, hellblau, grau). Besondere farbige Akzente kommen weder aussen noch innen vor; es ist damit der wechselnden Bewohnung des Miethauses Rechnung getragen worden.

DIE NEUE ARCHITEKTUR/
THE NEW ARCHITECTURE
Book, 1940. Designer: Max Bill.
Author: Max Roth. Photograph:
Dan Meyers.

Designed by Max Bill in 1940, this book is considered the first use of a systematic modular grid. Each image is sized to fit the column structure—as Jan Tschichold had predicted in 1928—filling one, two, or three zones. Acknowledging the originality of its layout, the author credits Bill as “the creator of the typographical structure of the book.”

Der New-York-Times-Prospekt zeigt die Lösung einer komplexen Aufgabe; zeigt, wie eine Idee, ein Text und die typographische Darstellung über mehrere Phasen hinweg integriert werden. Darüber hinaus kann sich die Aufgabe stellen, Prospekte wie diesen wiederum mit andern Werbemitteln und Drucksachen zu integrieren. Denn heute brauchen Firmen mehr und mehr nicht bloss hier einen Prospekt, da ein Plakat, dort Inserate usw. Heute braucht eine Firma etwas anderes: Eine Physiognomie, ein optisches Gesicht.

Die Beispiele dieser Seiten geben die Physiognomie der boîte à musique, eines Grammophongeschäfts in Basel, wieder. Die boîte à musique hat ein Signet und einen firmeneigenen Stil – und doch wieder nicht, wenn man unter dem einen ein starres, nachträglich überall dazugesetztes Zeichen und unter dem anderen ein bloss ästhetisches Prinzip versteht. Vielmehr: Die einmal definitiv festgelegten, aber jeweils den verschiedenen Funktionen und Proportionen angepassten Elemente selber bilden das Signum und den Stil in einem.

Abbildung 13 zeigt die Struktur. Fixiert sind die Elemente Schrift und Rahmen; ferner die Verbindung von beiden und das Prinzip der Variabilität: der Rahmen kann, ausgehend von der Ecke unten rechts, nach oben sowie nach links beliebig um ganze Einheiten vergrössert werden. Einen in sich proportionalen hervorragenden Fall gibt es nicht. Es gibt nur wertgleiche Varianten; und hervorragend ist die Variante dann, wenn sie der jeweiligen Aufgabe am besten angemessen ist.

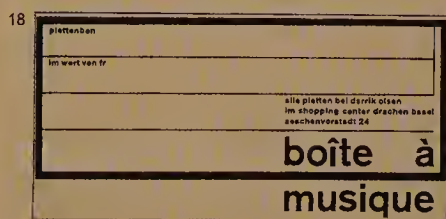
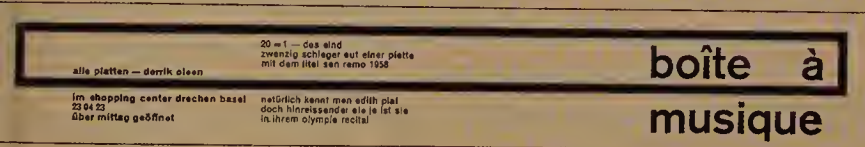
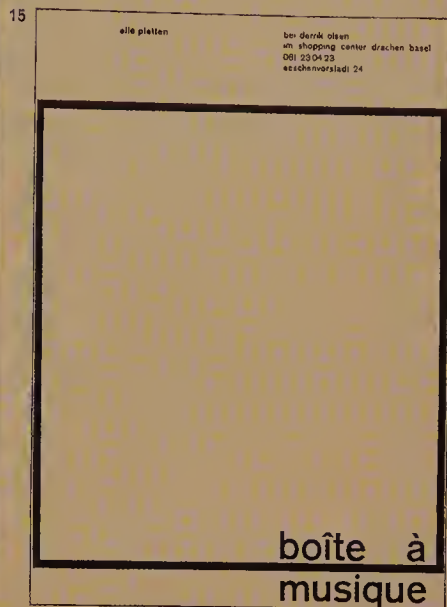
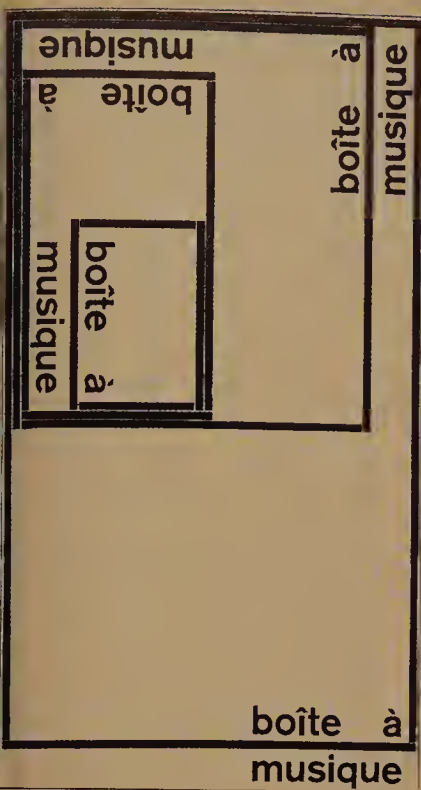
Abbildung 14 zeigt die Neujahrskarte mit gleichzeitig verschieden proportionierten Varianten; 15 den Briefbogen, wo das Signum dem (gegebenen) Din A4 Format angepasst ist; 16 und 17 Inserate, wieder entsprechend dem zur Verfügung stehenden Insertionsraum bemessen; 18 ein Geschenkbon.

13



boîte à
musique

56.57

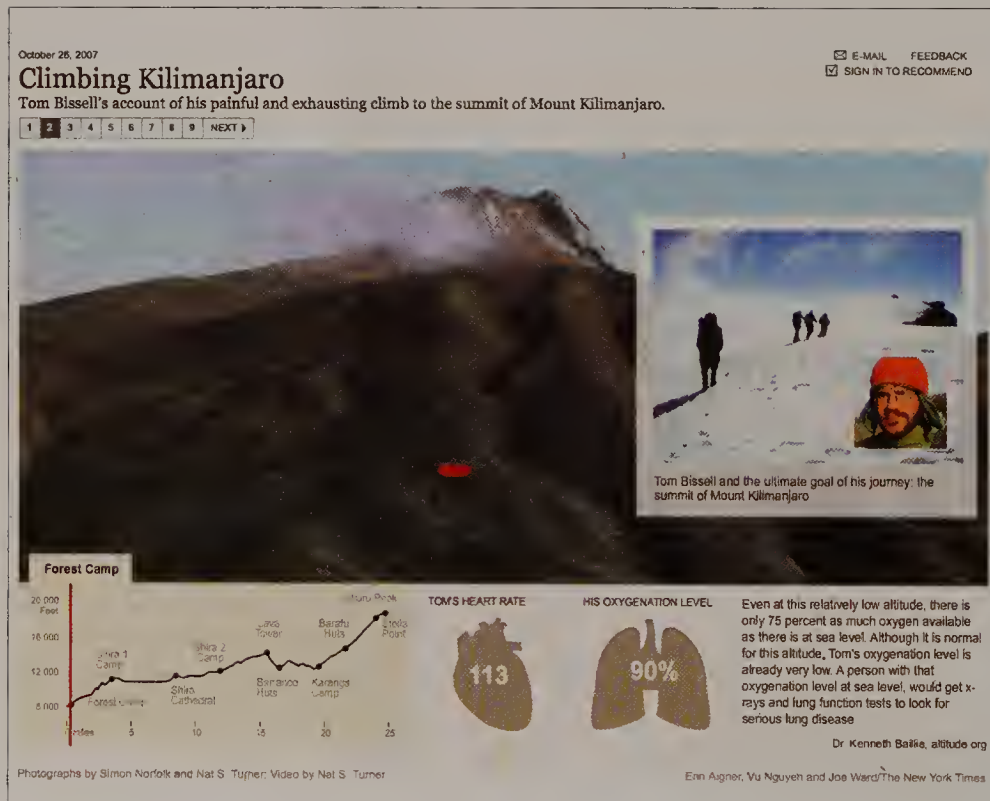


PROGRAMME ENTWERFEN
(DESIGNING PROGRAMMES)
Book, 1964. Designer and
author: Karl Gerstner.
Publisher: Arthur Niggli.
Photograph: Dan Meyers.
*Karl Gerstner's book Designing
Programmes is a design theory
classic whose relevance has been
renewed in the age of networked
media. Shown here is Gerstner's
identity for Boîte à Musique
(Music Box), in which a system
of elements changes in response
to its context.*

GRID AS TABLE

Tables and graphs are a variant of the typographic grid. A table consists of vertical columns and horizontal rows, each cell occupied by data. A graph is a line mapped along the x and y axes of a grid, each dimension representing a variable (such as time and stock value, shown below). As explained by Edward Tufte, the leading critic and theorist of information design, tables and graphs allow relationships among numbers to be perceived and rapidly compared by the eye. In tables and graphs, the grid is a cognitive tool.

Tables are a central aspect of web design. The table feature was incorporated into HTML code in 1995 so that web authors could present tabular data. Graphic designers, eager to give shape to the web's wide and flacid text bodies, quickly devised unauthorized uses for the HTML table, transforming this tool for representing data into nothing more, nor less, than a typographic grid. Designers have used the table feature to control the placement of images and captions and to build margins, gutters, and multicolumn screens. Designers also use tables to combine multiple styles of alignment—such as flush left and flush right—within a document, and to construct elegantly numbered and bulleted lists.



CLIMBING KILIMANJARO (BELOW) Interactive information graphic, 2007. Graphics director: Steve Duenes/NYTimes.com. Courtesy of the New York Times. This interactive three-dimensional travelogue traces Tom Bissell's harrowing climb to the top of Mount Kilimanjaro. The fever graph plots the distance Bissell traveled in relation to the changing elevation. The graphic coordinates his path with photographs shot along the way and an ongoing account of Bissell's rising heart rate and plummeting oxygenation level.

On the aesthetics and ethics of information design, see Edward Tufte, *Envisioning Information* (Cheshire, Conn.: Graphics Press, 1990).

On designing accessible websites, see Jeffrey Zeldman with Ethan Marcotte, *Designing with Web Standards*, third edition (Berkeley, CA: New Riders, 2009) and Patrick Lynch and Sarah Horton, *Web Style Guide: Basic Design Principles for Creating Web Sites* (New Haven: Yale University Press, 2001). See also the site www.webstyleguide.com.

By creating cells that span multiple columns and rows, designers build layout structures that bear little relation to the logically ordered fields of a data chart. A master table typically establishes areas for navigation, content, and site identity, and each region contains a smaller table—or tables—inside itself. Grids propagate inside of grids.

Advocates of web standards reject such workarounds as spurious and unethical design tactics. Visually driven, illogical layout tables can cause problems for sight-impaired users, who implement various devices to translate digital pages into sound, cell by cell, row by row. Assistive screen readers “linearize” digital text into a stream of spoken words. Accessibility experts encourage web designers to “think in linear terms” wherever possible, and to make sure their tables make sense when read in a continuous sequence. Accessible websites also consider the needs of users working with older software or text-only browsers. Linear thinking helps not only sight-impaired audiences but also the users of mobile devices, where space is tight.

MICA.EDU Website, 2004.
Designers: Carton Donofrio Partners. Publisher: Maryland Institute College of Art.
HTML tables, with their borders gently expressed, are an element of this neatly gridded webpage. Here, the table element is used not as a secret grid but as a structure for organizing content in columns and rows.



HTML, the mark-up system that allowed the Internet to become a global mass medium, is the virtual counterpart to letterpress, which mechanized the production of the book and cleared the ground for a world culture of print. Like letterpress, HTML is a text-hungry medium that can be coaxed, with some resistance, to display images.

HTML coexists with other languages on the web, just as alternative technologies appeared alongside letterpress. Lithography, invented for the manufacture of images in the eighteenth century, soon incorporated words in addition to pictures, just as letterpress made space in its mechanical grid for woodcuts, engravings, and photographic halftone blocks. In the twentieth century, lithography replaced letterpress as the world's dominant printing method; used with digital or photographic typesetting, it conveys text and pictures with equal comfort.

Lithography is not governed by grids as relentlessly as letterpress; neither is Flash, the animation software that became a common web-design tool at the turn of the twentieth century. Flash was originally designed for the creation of vector-based cartoons. Although Flash's primary purpose was pictorial, designers were soon using it to construct the interfaces of entire websites. The Flash sites that became, in the late 1990s, icons of a new web aesthetic were more cinematic than typographic, often featuring a painterly mix of word and image. They were soon supplanted by template-driven sites built dynamically by content management systems. In such sites, elements are placed via CSS (Cascading Style Sheets); the resulting designs have a structured appearance that is predictable over time.



Hand-coding HTML is as slow and deliberate as setting metal type. Empty table cells are used to define areas of open space, but HTML makes these collapse if the cells are truly empty, causing the grid to implode. The transparent images that often fill these spaces are virtual equivalents to the blank spacing material of metal type.



THE CHOPPING BLOCK Website (detail), 2004. Designers: Thomas Romer, Jason Hillyer, Charles Michelet, Robert Reed, and Matthew Richmond/The Chopping Block. This website reprises the design of early twentieth-century fruit-crate labels, which were produced as lithographic prints that merge text and image. The webpage is animated, loading elements over time.



JOSHUADAVIS.COM Website, 2009. Designer: Joshua Davis. In this template-driven site, elements are automatically arranged in a uniform grid.

RETURN TO UNIVERSALS

William Gibson's 1984 novel *Neuromancer* envisions cyberspace as a vast ethereal grid. Gibson's data cowboy leaves behind the "meat" of his body and drifts off into a "transparent 3d chessboard extending to infinity." In Gibson's novel, this chessboard grid is projected on an internal surface of the mind, bound by no screen or window.

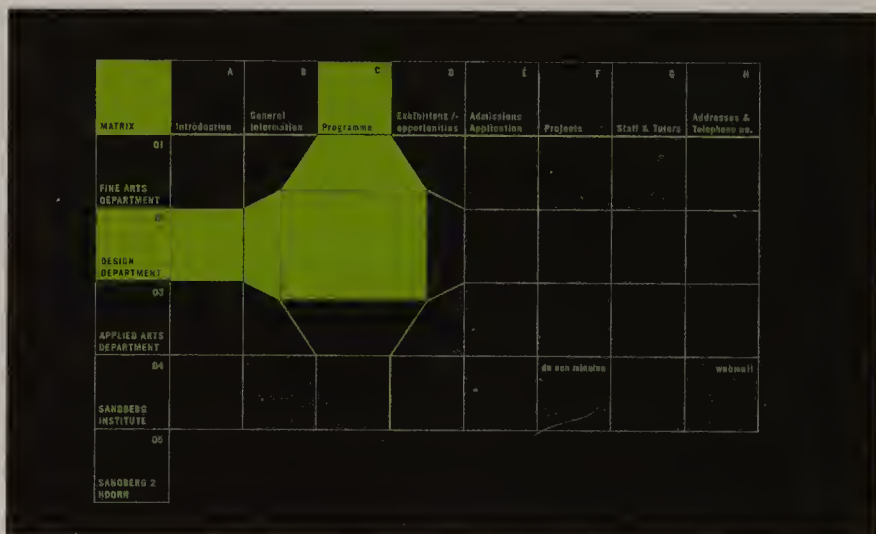
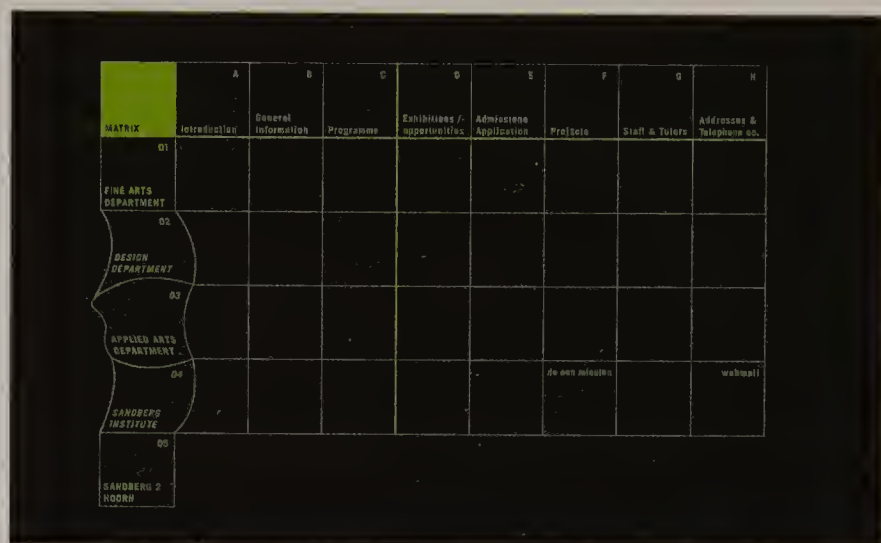
The grid as infinite space—defying edges and dominated by the mind rather than the body—is a powerful instrument within modernist theory, where it is a form both rational and sublime. In the early twentieth century, avant-garde designers exposed the grid in order to dramatize the mechanical conditions of print. After World War II, Swiss designers built a total design methodology around the grid, infusing it with ideological intentions. The grid was their key to a universal language. With the postmodern turn toward historical, vernacular, and popular sources in the 1970s and 1980s, many designers rejected the rationalist grid as a quaint artifact of Switzerland's own orderly society.

The rise of the Internet has rekindled interest in universal design thinking. The web was invented in the early 1990s (in Switzerland) to let scientists and researchers share documents created with different software applications. Its inventor, Tim Berners-Lee, never guessed that the web would become a design-driven medium connecting vast numbers of differently abled and divergently motivated people around the globe.

Universal design systems can no longer be dismissed as the irrelevant musings of a small, localized design community. A second modernism has emerged, reinvigorating the utopian search for universal forms that marked the birth of design as a discourse and a discipline nearly a century earlier. Against the opacity and singularity of unique visual expressions—grounded in regional preferences and private obsessions—ideas of commonality, transparency, and openness are being reborn as information seeks once again to shed its physical body.

On the invention of the web, see Tim Berners-Lee, *Weaving the Web* (New York: HarperCollins, 1999). For a contemporary account of universal design thinking, see William Lidwell, Kritina Holden, and Jill Butler, *Universal Principles of Design* (Gloucester, Mass.: Rockport Publishers, 2003). See also William Gibson, *Neuromancer* (New York: Ace Books, 1984).

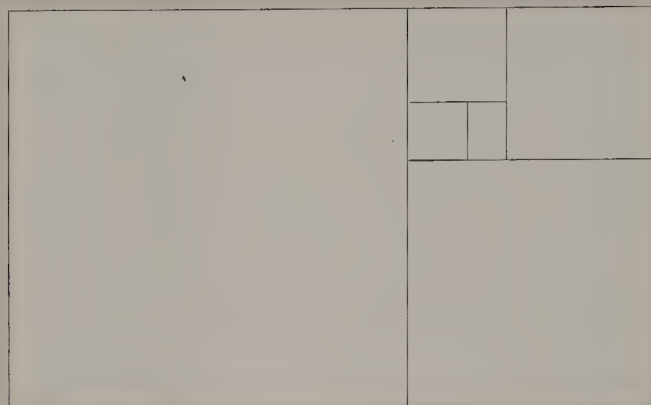
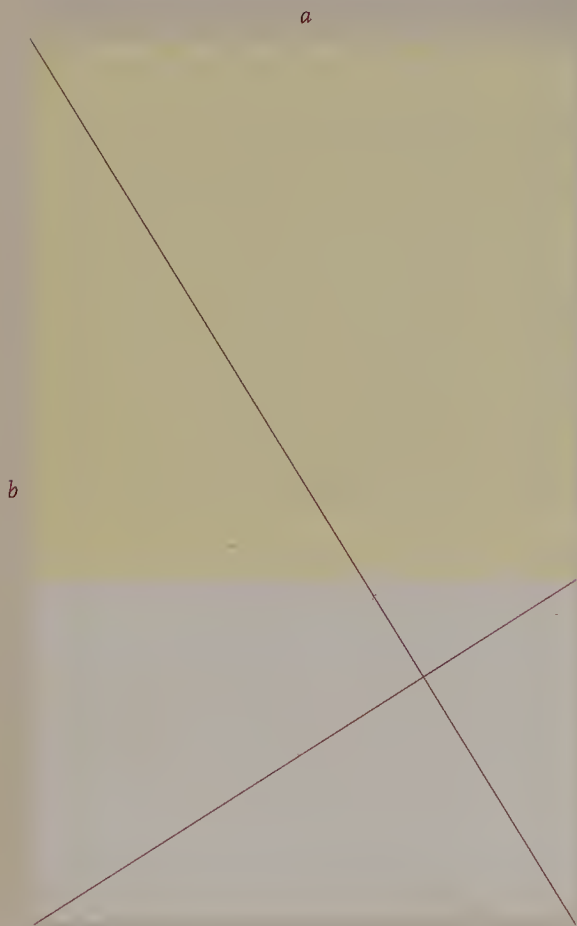
To produce designs that are objectively informative is primarily a socio-cultural task. —JOSEF MÜLLER-BROCKMANN, 1961



WWW.SANDBERG.NL

Website, 2003. Designer:
Luna Maurer. Publisher:
Sandberg Institute. The grid is
a navigation device that warps
and changes as the user rolls
over it. The vertical axis
represents departments in the
school, and the horizontal axis
represents types of program
information. As the user passes
over the grid, cells fill with light
and appear to lift away from
the screen, indicating the
availability of information at
that intersection.

GOLDEN SECTION



The golden section, which appears in nature as well as in art and design, has many surprising properties. For example, when you remove a square from a golden rectangle, the remainder is another golden rectangle, a process that can be infinitely repeated to create a spiral.

No book about typography would be complete without a discussion of the *golden section*, a ratio (relationship between two numbers) that has been used in Western art and architecture for more than two thousand years. The formula for the golden section is $a : b = b : (a+b)$.

This means that the smaller of two elements (such as the shorter side of a rectangle) relates to the larger element in the same way that the larger element relates to the two parts combined. In other words, side *a* is to side *b* as side *b* is to the sum of both sides. Expressed numerically, the ratio for the golden section is 1 : 1.618.

Some graphic designers are fascinated with the golden section and use it to create various grids and page formats—indeed, entire books have been written on the subject. Other designers believe that the golden section is no more valid as a basis for deriving sizes and proportions than other methods, such as beginning from standard industrial paper sizes, or dividing surfaces into halves or squares, or simply picking whole-number page formats and making logical divisions within them.

A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient structure, a skeleton that moves in concert with the muscular mass of content. Grids belong to the technological framework of typography, from the concrete modularity of letterpress to the ubiquitous rulers, guides, and coordinate systems of graphics applications. Although software generates illusions of smooth curves and continuous tones, every digital image or mark is constructed—ultimately—from a grid of neatly bounded blocks. The ubiquitous language of the gui (graphical user interface) creates a gridded space in which windows overlay windows. In addition to their place in the background of design production, grids have become explicit theoretical tools. Avant-garde designers in the 1910s and 1920s exposed the mechanical grid of letterpress, bringing it to the polemical surface of the page. In Switzerland after World War II, graphic designers built a total design methodology around the typographic grid, hoping to build from it a new and rational social order. The grid has evolved across centuries of typographic evolution. For graphic designers, grids are carefully honed intellectual devices, infused with ideology and ambition, and they are the inescapable mesh that filters, at some level of resolution, nearly every system of writing and reproduction. A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient structure, a skeleton that moves in concert with the muscular mass of content. Grids belong to the technological framework of typography, from the concrete modularity of letterpress to the ubiquitous rulers, guides, and coordinate systems of graphics applications. Although software generates illusions of smooth curves and continuous tones, every digital image or mark is constructed—ultimately—from a grid of neatly bounded blocks. The ubiquitous language of the gui (graphical user interface) creates a gridded space in which windows overlay windows. In addition to their

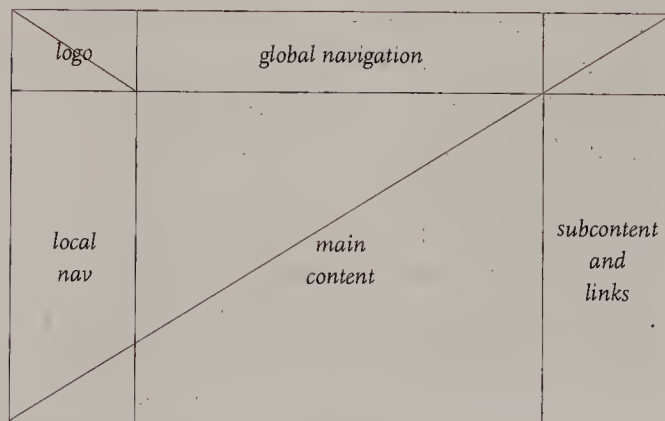
A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient structure, a skeleton that moves in concert with the muscular mass of content. Grids belong to the technological framework of typography, from the concrete modularity of letterpress to the ubiquitous rulers, guides, and coordinate systems of graphics applications. Although software generates illusions of smooth curves and continuous tones, every digital image or mark is constructed—ultimately—from a grid of neatly bounded blocks. The ubiquitous language of the gui (graphical user interface) creates a gridded space in which windows overlay windows. In addition to their place in the background of design production, grids have become explicit theoretical tools. Avant-garde designers in the 1910s and 1920s exposed the mechanical grid of letterpress, bringing it to the polemical surface of the page. In Switzerland after World War II, graphic designers built a total design methodology around the typographic grid, hoping to build from it a new and rational social order. The grid has evolved across centuries of typographic evolution. For graphic designers, grids are carefully honed intellectual devices, infused with ideology and ambition, and they are the inescapable mesh that filters, at some level of resolution, nearly every system of writing and reproduction. A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient structure, a skeleton that moves in concert with the muscular mass of content. Grids belong to the technological framework of typography, from the concrete modularity of letterpress to the ubiquitous rulers, guides, and coordinate systems of graphics applications. Although software generates illusions of smooth curves and continuous tones, every digital image or mark is constructed—ultimately—from a grid of neatly bounded blocks. The ubiquitous language of the gui (graphical user interface) creates a gridded space in which windows overlay windows. In addition to their

Golden rectangle of text on
8.5 x 11-inch page (U.S. standard)

Golden rectangle of text on
A4 page (European standard, 210 x 297 mm)

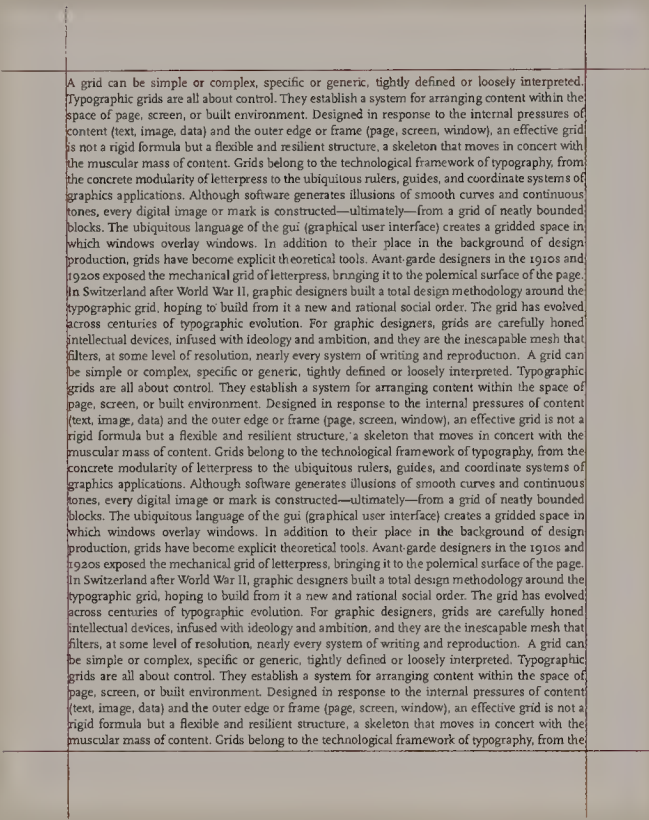
Commercial printers generally prefer to work with pages trimmed to even measures rather than with obscure fractions. However, you can float golden rectangles within a page of any trim size.

For a more detailed account of design and the golden section, see Kimberly Elam, *Geometry of Design* (New York: Princeton Architectural Press, 2001). For an emphasis on applying the golden section to typography, see John Kane, *A Type Primer* (London: Laurence King, 2002).



It may well be absurd to base a website on the golden section, but here, nonetheless, is a design for one. This wire frame diagram describes a webpage that is 500 x 809 pixels. The “golden screen” is then divided with squares and golden rectangles.

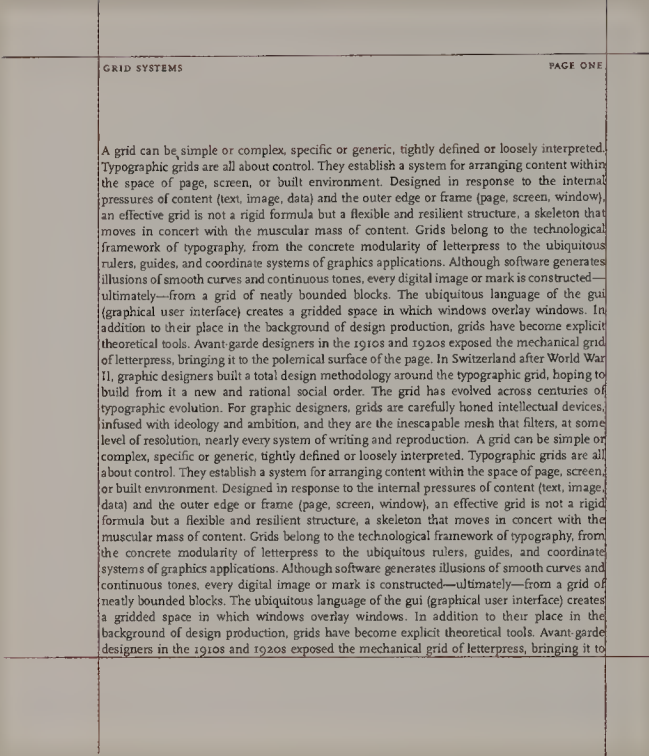
SINGLE-COLUMN GRID



This standard, 8.5 x 11-inch page has even margins all the way around. It is a highly economical, but not very interesting, design.

Every time you open a new document in a page layout program, you are prompted to create a grid. The simplest grid consists of a single column of text surrounded by margins.

By asking for page dimensions and margin widths from the outset, layout programs encourage you to design your page from the *outside in*. (The text column is the space left over when the margins have been subtracted.)



This page is an inch shorter than a standard U.S. letter. The text block is a square, leaving margins of varying dimension.

Alternatively, you can design your page from the inside out, by setting your margins to zero and then positioning guidelines and text boxes on a blank page. This allows you to experiment with the margins and columns rather than making a commitment as soon as you open a new document. You can add guidelines to a master page after they meet your satisfaction.

GRID SYSTEMS		PAGE ONE	grid systems	page one
		<p>A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient structure, a skeleton that moves in concert with the muscular mass of content. Grids belong to the technological framework of typography, from the concrete modularity of letterpress to the ubiquitous rulers, guides, and coordinate systems of graphics applications. Although software generates illusions of smooth curves and continuous tones, every digital image or mark is constructed—ultimately—from a grid of neatly bounded blocks. The ubiquitous language of the gui (graphical user interface) creates a gridded space in which windows overlay windows. In addition to their place in the background of design production, grids have become explicit theoretical tools. Avant-garde designers in the 1930s and 1920s exposed the mechanical grid of letterpress, bringing it to the polemical surface of the page. In Switzerland after World War II, graphic designers built a total design methodology around the typographic grid, hoping to build from it a new and rational social order. The grid has evolved across centuries of typographic evolution. For graphic designers, grids are carefully honed intellectual devices, infused with ideology and ambition, and they are the inescapable mesh that filters, at some level of resolution, nearly every system of writing and reproduction. A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient structure, a skeleton that moves in concert with the muscular mass of content. Grids belong to the technological framework of typography from the concrete modularity of letterpress to the ubiquitous rulers, guides, and coordinate systems of graphics applications. Although software generates illusions of smooth curves and continuous tones, every digital image or mark is constructed—ultimately—from a grid of neatly bounded blocks. The ubiquitous language of the gui (graphical user interface) creates a gridded space in which windows overlay windows. In addition to their place in the background of design production, grids have become explicit theoretical tools. Avant-garde designers in the 1930s and 1920s exposed the mechanical grid of letterpress, bringing it to</p>		

In this symmetrical double-page spread, the inside margins are wider than the outside margins, creating more open space at the spine of the book.

Books and magazines should be designed as *spreads* (facing pages). The two-page spread, rather than the individual page, is the main unit of design. Left and right margins become inside and outside margins. Page layout programs assume that the inside margins are the same on both the left- and right-hand pages, yielding a symmetrical, mirror-image spread. You are free, however, to set your own margins and create an asymmetrical spread.

LEFT (INSIDE)		PAGE TWO	grid systems	page two
		<p>A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient structure, a skeleton that moves in concert with the muscular mass of content. Grids belong to the technological framework of typography, from the concrete modularity of letterpress to the ubiquitous rulers, guides, and coordinate systems of graphics applications. Although software generates illusions of smooth curves and continuous tones, every digital image or mark is constructed—ultimately—from a grid of neatly bounded blocks. The ubiquitous language of the gui (graphical user interface) creates a gridded space in which windows overlay windows. In addition to their place in the background of design production, grids have become explicit theoretical tools. Avant-garde designers in the 1930s and 1920s exposed the mechanical grid of letterpress, bringing it to the polemical surface of the page. In Switzerland after World War II, graphic designers built a total design methodology around the typographic grid, hoping to build from it a new and rational social order. The grid has evolved across centuries of typographic evolution. For graphic designers, grids are carefully honed intellectual devices, infused with ideology and ambition, and they are the inescapable mesh that filters, at some level of resolution, nearly every system of writing and reproduction. A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient structure, a skeleton that moves in concert with the muscular mass of content. Grids belong to the technological framework of typography, from the concrete modularity of letterpress to the ubiquitous rulers, guides, and coordinate systems of graphics applications. Although software generates illusions of smooth curves and continuous tones, every digital image or mark is constructed—ultimately—from a grid of neatly bounded blocks. The ubiquitous language of the gui (graphical user interface) creates a gridded space in which windows overlay windows. In addition to their place in the background of design production, grids have become explicit theoretical tools. Avant-garde designers in the 1930s and 1920s exposed the mechanical grid of letterpress, bringing it to</p>		

In this asymmetrical layout, the left margin is always wider than the right margin, whether it appears along the inside or outside edge of the page.

MULTICOLUMN GRID

Grid systems	
	<p>A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient structure, a skeleton that moves in concert with the muscular mass of content. Grids belong to the technological framework of typography, from the concrete modularity of letterpress to the ubiquitous rulers, guides, and coordinate systems of graphics applications. Although software generates illusions of smooth curves and continuous tones, every digital image or mark is constructed—ultimately—from a grid of neatly bounded blocks. The ubiquitous language of the gui (graphical user interface) creates a gridded space in which windows overlay windows. In addition to their place in the background of design production, grids have become explicit theoretical tools. Avant-garde designers in the 1920s and 1930s exposed the mechanical grid of letterpress, bringing it to the polemical surface of the page. In Switzerland after World War II, graphic designers built a total</p>

There are numerous ways to use a basic column grid. Here, one column has been reserved for images and captions, and the others for text.


Grid systems	
	<p>A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient structure, a skeleton that moves in concert with the muscular mass of content. Grids belong to the technological framework of typography, from the concrete modularity of letterpress to the ubiquitous rulers, guides, and coordinate systems of graphics applications. Although software generates illusions of smooth curves and continuous tones, every digital image or mark is constructed—ultimately—from a grid of neatly bounded blocks. The ubiquitous language of the</p>




The typographic grid is a proportional regulator for composition, tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal programme to accommodate x unknown items. The typographic grid is a proportional regulator for composition, tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal programme to accommodate x unknown items.

In this variation, images and text share column space.

While single-column grids work well for simple documents, multicolumn grids provide flexible formats for publications that have a complex hierarchy or that integrate text and illustrations. The more columns you create, the more flexible your grid becomes. You can use the grid to articulate the hierarchy of the publication by creating zones for different kinds of content. A text or image can occupy a single column or it can span several. Not all the space has to be filled.



Grid systems	
	<p>A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient structure, a skeleton that moves in concert with the muscular mass of content. Grids belong to the technological framework of typography, from the concrete modularity of letterpress to the ubiquitous rulers, guides, and coordinate systems of graphics applications. Although software generates illusions of smooth curves and continuous tones, every digital image or mark is constructed—ultimately—from a grid of neatly bounded blocks. The ubiquitous language of the gui (graphical user interface) creates a gridded space in which windows overlay windows. In addition to their place in the background of design production, grids have become explicit theoretical tools. Avant-garde designers in the 1920s and 1930s exposed the mechanical grid of letterpress, bringing it to the polemical surface of the page. In Switzerland after World War II, graphic designers built a total design methodology around the typographic grid, hoping to build from a new and rational social order. The grid has evolved across centuries of typographic evolution. For graphic designers, grids are carefully honed intellectual devices, infused with ideology and ambition, and they are the inescapable mesh that filters, at some level of resolution, nearly every system of writing and reproduction. A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content</p>

Elements of varying width are staggered within the structure of the grid.

Grid systems				<p>The typographic grid is a proportional regulator for composition, tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal programme to accommodate x unknown items.</p>
<p>The typographic grid is a proportional regulator for composition, tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal programme to accommodate x unknown items. The typographic grid is a proportional regulator for composition, tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal programme to accommodate x unknown items.</p>	<p>A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient structure, a skeleton that moves in concert with the muscular mass of content. Grids belong to the technological framework of typography, from the concrete modularity of letterpress to the ubiquitous rulers, guides, and coordinate systems of graphics applications. Although software generates illusions of smooth curves and continuous tones, every digital image or mark is constructed—ultimately—from a grid of neatly bounded blocks. The ubiquitous language of the gui (graphical user interface) creates a gridded space in which windows overlay windows. In addition to their place in the background of design production, grids have become explicit theoretical tools. Avant-garde designers in the 1910s and 1920s exposed the mechanical grid of letterpress, bringing it to the polemical surface of the page. In Switzerland after World War II, graphic designers built a total design methodology around the typographic grid, hoping to build from it a new and rational social order. The grid has evolved across centuries of typographic evolution. For graphic designers, grids are carefully honed intellectual devices, infused with ideology and ambition, and they are the inescapable mesh that filters, at some level of resolution, nearly every system of writing and reproduction. A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient</p>	<p>The typographic grid is a proportional regulator for composition, tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal programme to accommodate x unknown items. The typographic grid is a proportional regulator for composition, tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal programme to accommodate x unknown items. The typographic grid is a proportional regulator for composition, tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal programme to accommodate x unknown items.</p>	<p>A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient</p>	

A horizontal band divides a text zone from an image zone. Elements gravitate toward this line, which provides an internal structure for the page.

HANG LINE In addition to creating vertical zones with the columns of the grid, you can also divide the page horizontally. For example, an area across the top can be reserved for images and captions, and body text can “hang” from a common line. In architecture, a horizontal reference point like this is known as a *datum*.

Grid systems			The typographic grid is a proportional regulator for composition, tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal programme to accommodate x unknown items.
The typographic grid is a proportional regulator for composition, tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal programme to accommodate x unknown items. The typographic grid is a proportional regulator for composition, tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal programme to accommodate x unknown items.	A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient structure, a skeleton that moves in concert with the muscular mass of content. Grids belong to the technological framework of typography, from the concrete modularity of letterpress to the ubiquitous rulers, guides, and coordinate systems of graphics applications. Although software generates illusions of smooth curves and continuous tones, every digital image or mark is constructed—ultimately—from a grid of neatly bounded blocks. The ubiquitous language of the gui (graphical user interface) creates a gridded space in which windows overlay windows. In addition to their place in the background of design production, grids have become explicit theoretical tools. Avant-garde designers in the 1910s and 1920s exposed the mechanical grid of letterpress, bringing it to the polemical surface of the page. In Switzerland after World War II, graphic designers built a total design methodology around the typographic grid, hoping to build from it a new and rational social order. The grid has evolved across centuries of typographic evolution. For graphic designers, grids are carefully honed intellectual devices, infused with ideology and ambition, and they are the inescapable mesh that filters, at some level of resolution, nearly every system of writing and reproduction. A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient	A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, tightly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient	The typographic grid is a proportional regulator for composition, tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal programme to accommodate x unknown items.

Columns of text hang from a datum, falling downward with an uneven rag across the bottom.

Ifang Leisalpa
(Schloss),
2090 Meter

und verdichtet, wie dies im Betonbau üblich ist. Da der Beton bei diesem Vorgang die Vor- und Rücksprünge der Rückseite der Steinplattenwand umfließt, entstand eine vorzügliche Verzahnung und Verbindung der beiden Materialien Kunststein (Beton) und Naturstein.

Allerdings konnten die Wände nicht in ihrer ganzen Höhe auf einmal hintergossen werden. Das musste in Höhenetappen von 50 cm erfolgen. Erst wenn der Beton einer Lage eine bestimmte Festigkeit erreicht und sich mit dem Mauerwerk verbunden hatte, konnte die nächste Lage von 50 cm darüber betoniert werden. Eine höhere Schüttmasse von flüssigem Beton hätte die freistehenden Steinplattenwände seitlich weggedrückt.

Insgesamt wurden für die Wände der Therme 450 m³ oder 1300 Tonnen Valser Quarzitplatten zu 3100 m² Wandfläche in 20 Schichten pro m² verarbeitet. Die Länge aller verwendeten Plattenstreifen zusammen ergibt ein Total von 62.000 Laufmetern, was der Strecke von Vals nach Haldenstein entspricht.

Peter Zumthor

Valser Quarzit

Druckfestigkeit:
etwa 217 N/mm²
Rohdichte:
2.698 kg/m³
Wasseraufnahmekoeffizient:
Masse -% 0,25
Gefräste Steinplatten: Stärken
6, 3, 4, 7 und 3,1 cm
Toleranz: 1 mm
Breiten: 12–30 cm
Längen: bis 3,20 m
über 60.000 lfm
Fugenbreite:
etwa 2 mm

Boden

Breiten der
Bahnen: 8–110 cm
Längen: bis 3,20 m,
je Platte zum Teil
über 3 m² in einer
Stärke von 2 cm
Oberflächen:
poliert, gefräst,
gestockt, geschliffen in allen
Möglichkeiten
und einer Fugenbreite von 1 mm

Fugen und Mörtelmasse

EMACO R 304
BARRA 80 Firma
MBT | Eckverbindungen, Schwellen, Sturzplatten, Treppenuntersichte und Tritte, Sitze als einzelne Werkstücke gefertigt | minimale Toleranzen (weit unter SIA-Norm) beim Schneiden und Vermauern der Steine, wie zum Beispiel auf 6 m Höhe weniger als 5 mm Toleranz

Grotten

Trinkstein:
polierte Quader
aufeinander-
geschichtete Grösse
etwa 0,5–1 m³
Quellgrotte:
gebrochener
Stein im Innern
Schwitzstein:
eingefärbter und
polierter Beton
Steininsel:
grossformatige
gespaltene Platten
bis zu 3 m² je
Platte



STEIN UND WASSER,
WINTER 2003|04 Booklet,
2003. Designer: Clemens
Schedler/Büro für konkrete
Gestaltung. Publisher: Hotel
Therme, Switzerland. *This
publication for a spa in
Switzerland uses a five-column
grid. The main text fills a four-
column block, and the smaller
texts occupy single columns.*

General
Non-Fiction

Art

Photography

Collector's
Editions

Film

Architecture

220 x 156 mm
8 1/2 x 6 1/8 inches
240 pp
c.80 b&w illus.

Paperback
0 7148 3164 6

£ 14.95 UK
\$ 24.95 US
€ 24.95 EUR
\$ 39.95 CAN
\$ 49.95 AUS

Béla Bartók

Kenneth Chalmers



- Sets Béla Bartók (1881–1945) and his work in the context of his homeland Hungary and his native city Budapest, where he lived for most of his adult life
- Covers the full range of his work from his early explorations of the folklore of Hungary to his Third Piano Concerto composed on his deathbed in the United States
- Brings out the singular nature of his genius and the originality of his contribution to music

Kenneth Chalmers is an author, translator and composer who has written on Bartók, Berg, Stravinsky, Verdi and Weill, and collaborated on Decca's 20-volume Mozart Almanac

Design

Fashion &
Contemporary
Culture

Decorative Arts

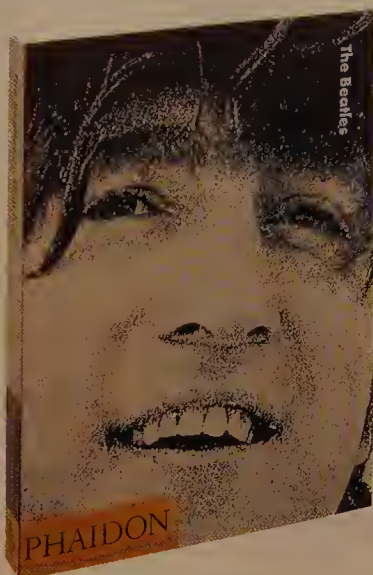
Music &
Performing Arts
20th Century
Composers

Video

Index

The Beatles

Allan Kozinn



- Follows the extraordinary development of the four self-taught musicians from Liverpool from their beginnings until the break-up in 1970
- Examines why the innovative music of the Beatles – created, at least initially, as ephemera – has remained so durable
- Considers not only the commercially released disks but also studio outtakes, demos, unreleased recordings and broadcast performances
- Sets the group's evolution against the backdrop of the popular culture explosion of the 1960s

Allan Kozinn has written musical criticism for the *New York Times* since 1977 and won ASCAP awards for his work, including the book *Mischa Elman and the Romantic Style*

'A well-rounded, readable account. Makes a convincing case for putting the Beatles on the shelf between Bartók and Boulez.' (*The Sunday Times*)

PHAIDON: FALL 2003

Catalogue, 2003. Designer:

Hans Dieter Reichert.

Publisher: Phaidon.

Photograph: Dan Meyers. This catalogue for a book publisher provides a rational and elegant structure for displaying hundreds of different books, each one presented as a physical object annotated with documentary data. The margins act as a navigational interface for the catalogue. Divisions occur both horizontally and vertically.

Play serves learning though experimentation without risk. Learning occurs through quick, imprecise actions, conducted within understood rules of a game, and free from threat or consummation. Play does not use up so much as build.

military-industrial world of computing, one important way to do so is to play. Play takes many forms. For example, it can be individual or social. According to one classic

taxonomy, individual play includes pursuit of sensations, exercise of motor apparatus and experimentation with higher mental powers. This mental play includes exercise of attention, emotion and will. Attention play includes tests of memory, imagination, focus and reason. On the other hand, social play includes fighting and rivalry, loving and courtship, imitation and status seeking. Imitative play includes movements, drama, behavioural constructions and emulation of inner states.²

Crafts and craft learning embrace quite a range of these playful forms. Arguably, no productive process combines so many so well. Sensation, skilled motion, attention, involvement, will — all must be balanced, and this is the basis for craft as recreation. Craft learning is a form of imitative social learning. Movements are physical skills taught directly, whether by demonstration or coaching. Drama is a lesser component here, although it may be understood in the willful suspension of disbelief that allows participation in an abstract medium. Constructions are the artifacts. They are the plastic play, the visual examples, the operational learning. Finally the inner state is the patience, reflectivity and intent that distinguish the master.

Play serves learning though experimentation without risk. Play often lacks any immediately obvious aim other than the pursuit of stimulation, but functions almost instinctively to serve the process of development. Learning occurs through quick, imprecise actions, conducted within understood rules of a game, and free from threat or consummation. Play does not use up so much as build. One thing it

builds is common sense. Play's endlessly variable series of awkward, exaggerated motions seeks out the approximate arena for later development of true competence.

There is much to be said for play in a medium. If a medium is defined by its affordances and constraints, then learning consists of exploring these properties. Experimentation is especially useful for becoming familiar with constraints: we learn from our mistakes. We must accept that beginning work in a new medium will be full of setbacks. There will also be fortuitous discoveries, however particularly of affordances. Design is not only invention, but also sensitivity to a medium. Craft cannot be merely in service of technique, or of inappropriately conceived ends. The craftsman must begin to feel something about the artifacts, and only certain moves will feel right.

Of course when it comes to computation, we all must learn. In a sense, we're all children — the medium is *that* new. And of course, the most fluent experts here are often quite young. As all of us learn about this promising new domain, a chain of developments should be clear: play shapes learning; learning shapes the mind; mental structures shape software; and software data structures afford work and play.

Structure and Improvisation

The master at play improvises. Consider the jazz pianist. In *Ways of the Hand — The Organization of Improvised Conduct* (1978), the musician David Sudnow gives us a rare description of otherwise tacit knowledge in action. Improvising on a piece takes much more talent than simply playing from a notation or learning by rote, Sudnow explains. Moreover, improvising begins with a sense of structure, from which it builds a cognitive map. For example, the 'way in' to an arpeggio is mentally mapped. The structure of the keyboard presents a physical map of a chord, which may be modified in countless ways by physical moves. One could play the adjacent keys, for example, or one could translate by any arbitrary interval. One could transpose or invert. One could change the order in which the notes were played, or the

² Karl Groos, *The Play of Man*. New York: Appleton and Co., 1901

Then

Discovery in Digital Craft
keyboards, digital and musical

Malcolm McCullough

135

4/8

the same pitches as the first, the doubled back and went fast again, but over different pitches... There were innumerable variations possible; looking at 'structure' in this way and corresponding to various continuity practices, ways of the hand were cultivated that were suited to the performance of such manoeuvres... Transposition of such a figure to a new segment and correct repetition with respect to pitch, without slowing it down or slowing down parts of it, involved coping with the topography of the terrain by the hand as a negotiative organ with various potentials and limitations.³

mpo, or the attack and decay. Of course one could substitute dominant, major and minor chords.

Sudnow argues that because these variations are sequences of physical positions, they are learned as active skills no longer necessary to be understood at a mental level. Each becomes a handful. That the hand gets a hold of a variation on a chord is indicated by observed tendencies to start into particular sequences with certain fingers on certain keys. The manoeuvre is known by the hand, and the mind only keeps the way in. The ability to modify the run note by note — which would require conscious attention — only comes later. Even without attentive intellectual guidance, however, the natural tendency of the hand is not to repeat itself, even in a series of figural repetitions. Thus once a sufficient repertoire of runs is learned, this tendency inherently ensures a richness to the sound. The hand searches its territory for sequences, which process replaces a faithfulness to the score, and that makes jazz. For example:

The new run could be in various other ways only 'essentially related' to the preceding run. Say the first started slow and went up fast, then doubled back and went fast again, while the second started slowly and came back down through

Although jazz is the obvious case, it is hardly alone. Improvisation plays a role in many contemporary practices, and in many traditional crafts. Few of these worlds employ such a singular instrument as the piano; few are able to turn so much over to the hands, but all involve playful response to a structure. For example, of industrial design, Herbert Read insisted that "Art implies values more various than those determined by practical necessity."⁴ As a modernist and industrialist, he felt admiration for fundamental structural laws, such as the golden section also admired by his contemporary Le Corbusier. He was convinced, however, that metrical irregularities based on a governing structure, rather than slavish adherence to the laws in their precision, was the basis for pleasurable expression. He cited Ruskin's line that "All beautiful lines are drawn under mathematical laws organically transgressed."⁵ He held that this was the case even in the useful (industrial) arts.

Consider the case of processing a digital photograph. The makeup of the raster image file, the various tone scale and filtration operators, provides a very clear structure in which to work but demands no particular order of operation. The complex microstructure of the sampled pixels provides a sub-

The natural tendency of the hand is not to repeat itself, even in a series of figural repetitions. Thus once a sufficient repertoire of runs is learned, this tendency inherently ensures a richness to the sound. The hand searches its territory for sequences, which process replaces a faithfulness to the score, and that makes jazz.

³ David Sudnow, *Ways of the Hand—The Organization of Improvised Conduct*, Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1978, p 7
⁴ Herbert Read, *Art and Industry—The Principles of Industrial Design* New York: Horizon Press, 1954 [1934]
⁵ *Ibid.*

IF/THEN PLAY:

DESIGN IMPLICATIONS
 OF NEW MEDIA Book, 1999.
 Designers: Mevis and
 Van Deursen. Editor: Jan
 Abrams. Publisher:
 Netherlands Design Institute.
 Photograph: Dan Meyers.
*In this book about new media,
 a two-column grid contains the
 main body of text. The pull
 quotes, running across two
 columns, are framed in thinly
 ruled boxes that suggest the
 overlapping "windows" on a
 computer screen. The top
 margin, which resembles the
 tool bar in a browser, provides
 an interface to the book.*

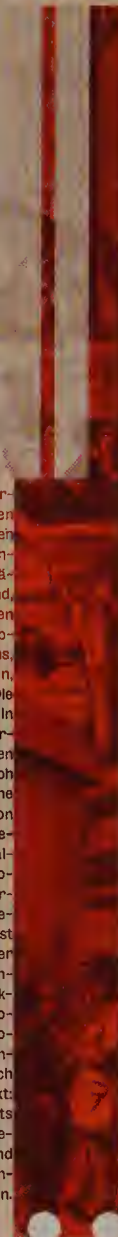
wild wirkende, dem Lenné'schen Ideal folgende, baumreiche Naturgärten weicht englischen Rasenflächen, die sich mit nur noch wenigen Baum- und Strauchgruppen und gepflegten Blumenbeeten abwechseln. Mit dieser Veränderung, so der dritte Direktor des Zoos, Heinrich Bodinus, soll es möglich werden, den belebenden und erwärmenden Strahlen der Sonne Zutritt zu verschaffen. Anders als zuvor finden sich in den Berliner Zeitungen nun immer häufiger positiv gefärbte Erlebnisberichte. Vorläufiger Höhepunkt und nicht zu unterschätzender rite de passage für die breite Anerkennung des Gartens war das DREI-KAISER-TREFFEN im Herbst 1872: Kaiser Wilhelm, Kaiser Alexander von Rußland und Kaiser Franz-Joseph von Österreich-Ungarn werden in einem zwanzig Wagen umfassenden Zug über das Zoogelände kutschiert. Obwohl der Zoo zu dieser Zeit noch außerhalb der Stadt gelegen ist, ist dessen neuartige Gestaltung schon ein Zeichen dafür, daß die preußische Hauptstadt um die Anbindung an die Kultur der großen europäischen Metropolen bemüht ist. Die Bevölkerungszahl Berlins steigt mit der Industriellen Entwicklung jener Jahre erheblich, und dem Zoo kommt, neben den Stadtparks, zunehmend ein Erholungswert zu, der durch eine Reihe von technischen Neuerungen gesteuert werden kann: eine Dampfmaschine sorgt für Wasserzirkulation und verwandelt die früher im Sommer überfliehenden Gewässer des Gartens in belebte Weiher; Hinzu kommt die Erleichterung von An- und Abreise. Ab 1875 verbindet eine Pferdebahnlinie Berlin mit dem Zoo. Im Jahre 1884 folgt die Installation elektrischer Beleuchtung, die eine Ausdehnung der Öffnungszeiten bis in die Abendstunden zuläßt. Kinderspiellhallen und -plätze werden eingerichtet. Wo sonst könnten sie sich von dem Getümmel der Weltstadt in frischer Luft ihre Glieder üben und ihre Lungen weiten? heißt es im Programmheft des Jahres 1896. Der Zoo entwickelt sich deutlich zu einem integralen Bestandteil der städtischen Kultur. Anders als in den Stadtparks — etwa dem Humboldthain — stellt hier der Eintrittspreis sicher, daß die das Vergnügen schmälrenden Obdachlosen und Bettler vor den Toren bleiben. Zoofreunde werben um die Gunst von Kolonialoffizieren, die helfen sollen, die Tierbestände zu erhöhen und die in der Folge tatsächlich zunehmend als Donatoren fungieren. Forschungsreisen und Expeditionen in viele Regionen der Erde — häufig unter maßgeblicher Regie der Zoodirektoren — führen zur Entdeckung bislang unbekannter Tierarten. Die intensive Kooperation von Zoo und Naturkundemuseum setzt sich fort, so daß der Bestand des Museums 1884 auf etwa 2 Mio. Tiere, darunter etwa 150 000 Wirbeltiere, angewachsen ist. Der Berliner Zoo wird in den letzten Jahrzehnten des 19. Jahrhunderts zu einem repräsentativen Treffpunkt und zu einem Raum, in dem sich preußische Mentalität wenn auch nicht aufhebt, so doch relativiert. Fremdartige Tierwelt und eine Architektur des Orient, des Fernen Osten und der Savannen, verbindet sich, in einiger Entfernung vom hektischen und geschäftigen Leben der Stadt, zu einem den Stadtbewohnern bis dahin unbekannten Ambiente. Hier entwickelt sich Natur zum Unterhaltungsgegenstand. Die von Zirkussen, Menagerien und Märkten bekannten sensationellen und theatralischen Aspekte gehen mit dem zoologischen Erkenntnisinteresse eine eigenartige Symbiose ein. Ge-

tragen wird diese Entwicklung nicht zuletzt
90 von ökonomischen Zwängen: Immer wieder

kämpft die Zoogesellschaft um ihre Existenz. || Der Zoo wird zu einem der Plätze der Stadt, wo sich Vorurtheile einer noch in Entwicklung begriffenen Weltstadt am ehesten materialisieren; kein Wunder, daß immer deutlicher auch Künstler und Gelehrte sich von diesem Raum angezogen fühlen. Neben einer Musiktribüne hilft ein erweiterter Restaurationsbetrieb den Aufenthalt in den meist nur unzureichend belüfteten Gebäuden aufzulockern. Ein Zeitgenosse beschreibt diese Bereicherung: Durch das neue Restaurationslokal ist die Zahl der großen Festsäle um ein Meisterwerk der Baukunst vermehrt worden. Wenn hier eine vortreffliche Militärmusik ein Concert ausführt, dann bildet, in Folge des erhöhten Eintrittspreises, die elegante Welt die Mehrzahl der Besucher: Draußen dehnt sich eine lange Reihe Equipagen bis in den Winkel des Thiergartens; drinnen sind alle Plätze im weiten Umkreise des muschelförmig gebauten Orchesters besetzt; beim Klänge der Instrumente, beim Geplätscher der Fontänen sitzt man, sich erfrischend, rauchend, plaudernd und scherzend unter den schattigen Bäumen und blickt in das bewogelnde, stets rege Thierleben hinaus, wie es sich in den benachbarten Grotten, auf Aesten und Telchen kund giebt. || Die Auswahl der Tiere und der Situationen, in denen sich ihre Präsentation bewege, erfolgt sorgfältig und bedacht, die Kuratoren entscheiden sich für besonders exotisch wirkende, kuriose, lächerliche, niedliche Tiere. Dabei gilt es stets, die Konfrontation mit potentiell Abscheu oder starkes Befremden erregendem tierischem Verhalten zu verhindern. || Die zunehmende Popularität des Zoos korreliert mit dem Verschwinden von Tieren aus dem Alltagsleben des städtischen Menschen. Das Tier ist entweder Haustier, also Mitbewohner der Wohnung, oder drastisch auf seine Rohstofffunktion reduziert und fristet in fabrikartigen Hallen abseits der Städte sein ökonomisch optimiertes Dasein. Mit den zoologischen Gärten beginnt ein Verdrängungsmechanismus, der sich später auch auf Naturparks und Reservate erstreckt: die Gefangenschaft erscheint angesichts der systematischen Zerstörung der Lebensräume als ein Schutz der Natur und dient dazu, das unerschwellig vorhandene schlechte Gewissen zu beruhigen.

5. R. Spingler, *Berlin: Die deutsche Kaiserstadt*, Paprint, Berlin 1917.

6) Interessanterweise vollzieht sich dem englischen-mechanischen Garten heute eine dem entgegenstehende Entwicklung: Sowohl in Washington als auch in Berlin wird der Garten wieder als ein in der natürlichen Tierwelt eingebundenes Tier empfunden. In der Imperialität 30 Prozent des gesamten Lebens auf der Erde ausmachen. Diese Veränderung ist Teil einer Vielzahl von Eingriffen in die traditionelle Gestaltung, um die immer größer werdende Bevölkerung zu versorgen und die Welt zu bezaubern. Vgl. W. Macpherson, *The Culture of Nature: from the American Landscape to the Discovery of the Exxon Valdez* Cambridge 1992, Seite 233 ff.



architektur

Franz Hessel
erinnert sich

In seinen Beobachtungen berlinischen Lebens an die merkwürdigen Behausungen der Tiere: Liebt das Zebra sein afrikanisches Gehöft, der Büffel sein Borkenpalais? Die Steine von Bärenzwinger, Vogelhäus und Löwenhelm deutet Hessel als Baukastensteine, der Zoo wird in seiner Interpretation zur natürlichen Fortsetzung einer Kinderstube und einem Ort, wo die vorzeitlichen Tierkulte Gelegenheit haben, wiederaufzuleben. F. Lichtenfeld bezieht sich in einem Artikel der ILLUSTRIRTEN ZEITUNG von 1873 auf die anfänglich vorhandene Verwunderung der Stadtbewohner ob der neuen, ungewohnten Bauwerke: Was sollen diese Thürme mit der flammenden Sonne und den phantastischen Drachen- und Elefantenbildern in einer christlichen Stadt wie Berlin? Diese Frage wurde früher häufig aufgeworfen, zumal von Landleuten, welche ihr Weg nach der Stadt an dem fremden Heldentempel vorüber-

führte. Jetzt weiß jedermann in und um Berlin, daß der fremde Heldentempel das neue Elefantenhäus ist. [...] Nicht diesen, sondern dem Publikum zulebend wurde der Neubau so reich ausgestattet, denn selbst dem Elefanten ist eine Portion Moorrütten oder ein Bund Heu lieber als der ganze architektonische und musivische Schmuck seines neuen Hauses, und nun gar erst der Rhinoceros! || Die stilistische Gestaltung der Bauten steht offensichtlich auch in Zusammenhang mit der Einbindung der zoologischen Gärten in kolonialistische Zusammenhänge. Die Repräsentation fremdkultureller Elemente erlaubt Rückschlüsse auf die Konturen eines rudimentär entwickelten Kosmopolitismus. Das Einbringen von Elementen aus anderen Kulturzusammenhängen markiert den Wandel vom systemischen zum geographisch orientierten Zoo. Wichtigen Einfluß auf die Idee, Tiere in einem heuchel-stilistischen Rahmen zu zeigen, der gewisse Zusammenhänge zur Ethnographie der Heimatlandschaften aufweist, hatte der Zoologe Philipp Leopold Martin, in seinem 1878 in Leipzig erschienenen Kompendium die PRAXIS DER NATURGESCHICHTE — er meinte sich als, als vollständiges Lehrbuch über das Sammeln lebender und toter Naturkörper zu bezeichnen — rationalisiert Martin dieses Vorgehen als ethnographisch-architektonische Belehrung: Was ist aber nun wohl natürlicher und zu gleich lehrreicher, als die Natur in unseren Gärten nach Welttheilen, Zonen und lokalen Verhältnissen aufzustellen? [...] Der Wissent verlangt Wald und der Buffalo die Prairie; und wenn wir dieses thun und in die Prairie noch einen Wiegwan als Stiel hinsetzen, so belehren wir damit zugleich das Publikum, denn es erhält Bilder, die es niemals vergißt. Die fremdkulturelle Architektur der Stilbauten — auch wichtiger Bestandteil der großen Weltausstellungen in dieser Phase — wird jeglicher zeitlicher Entwicklung entbunden. Zoodirektor Ludwig Hecks schreibt rückblickend im Jahre 1923: Man denke nur, wenn wir

7 Franz Hessel: *Spazierer in Berlin* Berlin 1929 / Seite 142
8 Heinz-Georg und Ursula Xllos: *Der Berliner Zoo im Spiegel seiner Bauten 1861-1961: Eine baugeschichtliche und denkmalpflegerische Dokumentation über den Zoologischen Garten Berlin* Berlin 1980 / Seite 57 Die anderen Ausführungen über die Architekturstützen sind sich teilweise auf diesen Band

FORM + ZWECK 27

Journal, 1996. Designers: Cyan, Berlin. *In the pages of this experimental journal, compact columns of justified text are pushed to the outer margins. By marking paragraphs with symbols rather than indents and line breaks, the designers have maximized the density of the text field. Running heads, page numbers, and images are narrow channels cut into a solid wall of text. Footnotes are also treated as justified blocks, turned 90 degrees against the grain of the page.*

Subtraction

Search via Google

Go

Home

Archives

About

Previous

Next

Fri 31 Dec 2004

Grid Computing... and Design

Posted

07:51 pm

Author

Khol Vinh

Categories

Design, Subtraction, Web Design

Body

The layout grid I used for Subtraction Six.5 was improvised and inconsistent — I hobbled it together without much consideration or foresight, more interested in getting something finished than building something that would continue to make sense as I got more and more serious about the writing I post here. Over time, by virtue of repeated use, I became increasingly and lamentably invested in its tremendous shortcomings. When you make fairly liberal use of illustrations in your posts, you essentially wed yourself to the particulars of the CSS you've established, creating graphics of a certain width or ordering content in a particular method. It works in the short term, but it presents problems when you sit down to redesign.

BOXED IN

By late this year, it pained me to know that I had written over three hundred posts that relied, in varying degrees, on that dodgy framework. So when I finally sat down down to think seriously about designing version 7.0 of this Web site, I paid serious attention to establishing a rational and sustainable layout grid that would see me through at least a few more years of doing this. Yes, I hope to keep it that long.

The new layout uses eight columns and four 'super columns,' and it shoehorns everything into that structure, which is a kind of 'for better or worse' decision, though I think it's definitely better. Each column is 95 pixels wide and separated by a 10 pixel gutter, which means I can create graphics of logical widths in increments of roughly 95 pixels each (things get a little more complicated when accounting for in-column padding) — for me, this is a big methodological improvement over the arbitrary widths imposed by the old layout.

THE OLD WAYS ARE DEAD

I spent a tremendous amount of time fine-tuning the CSS so that it would match up very carefully with the grid, and so it would work across all modern browsers — and Internet Explorer too, though with decidedly less faithfulness. That was difficult but at least it was an intellectual challenge.

The hard part came when I had to sit down to retrofit all the posts I'd made over the past twenty-plus months which used graphics that break the grid — like this one. Rewriting the styles wasn't that difficult; it was making sure that the special effects I had used in the last layout to achieve various layout effects didn't produce absolute gibberish in the redesign. Many of them did, and I had to painstakingly search them out and change the flow of captions and images within the body to ensure that they'd look right. That took a long time.

95 px Wide

200 px Wide

410 px Wide

620 px Wide

To always stay on the grid, I used a background-image property on the <body> to reveal the grid throughout development for the new layout — if you're looking at this through a Web browser (versus a screen reader or a news client) you'll see the columns running under the content in this very article. While no stroke of genius, coming up with this little trick left me very pleased with myself, as it allowed me to produce easily the most precise layouts of my career. It's those little moments that are some of the reward for all of this otherwise pointless free work that I do.

+

Quick Access

4,791 posts since July 2000.

Date

Select...

Categories

Select...

Email Updates

Get Subtraction.com posts sent right to your inbox

Your Email

Subscribe

Recent Posts

26 Dec 2009

Basic Maths on Sale This Week

Now through the last day of the year, our WordPress theme is one-third off the regular price.

10 Dec 2009

Backing Up Over Broadband

In theory, online backup systems should work. Except for that broadband thing.

09 Dec 2009

Get Fresh with Me

Come see me Wed 16 Dec at AIGA New York's twenty-fifth Fresh Dialogue event.

30 Nov 2009

Really Basic Maths


A look at the design evolution of my WordPress theme.

24 Nov 2009

New Shell for AOL


With its new brand identity, AOL tries to do two very difficult things at once

190 | THINKING WITH TYPE

Subtraction

Version 7.1
Khoi Vinh's Web Site

Search via Google

[Home](#)
[Archives](#)
[About](#)



Tue 12 Jan 2010

Having Fun with Pains

11:53 AM
REMARKS (6)

Lest week, [The Hype Machine](#), a sort of combination music meta-blog and playlist, published its round-up from the year just ended, including its listing of the top fifty bands of 2009, with each of the fifty slots illustrated by an invited visual artist. If you skip ahead, you'll see that the indie pop contenders [The Pains at Being Pure at Heart](#) came in at number thirteen, and that the illustration was done by none other than yours truly.

... CONTINUE READING

Mon 11 Jan 2010

Alex Cornell Interviews Experimental Jetset

★★★★

An engaging and thoughtful question-and-answer session with the renowned Dutch design studio. Cornell asks for their opinion on a blog post I wrote last April called "[Dear Designers, You Suck](#)" in which I addressed the state of criticism in design today — and Experimental Jetset's response is so different from my perspective and so interesting:

"We're much more interested in graphic design as criticism: the idea that a piece of graphic design is a manifestation of a certain way of thinking, a certain way of ordering the world, and that, by functioning in that way, that piece of graphic design is effectively critiquing the dominant way of thinking, the existing way of ordering the world."

Read the [entire interview here](#). While you're at it, marvel at the rest of Cornell's elite to get a sense of why I'm so intensely envious of him: a young, talented, prolific designer with the authorial skills and time to publish regularly on his terrific blog. If only.

Update: Embarrassingly, I've gotten Alex mixed up with his employer, Scott Hansen. Sloppy mistake, sorry.

→ JUMP TO THIS LINK

A Makaovar for the BART Map

★★★★

An appraisal of the new transit system map for the Bay Area. "Unlike the notorious 1972 Massimo Vignelli redesign of the New York City subway

Get Your XML On

Colophon

Recent Remarks

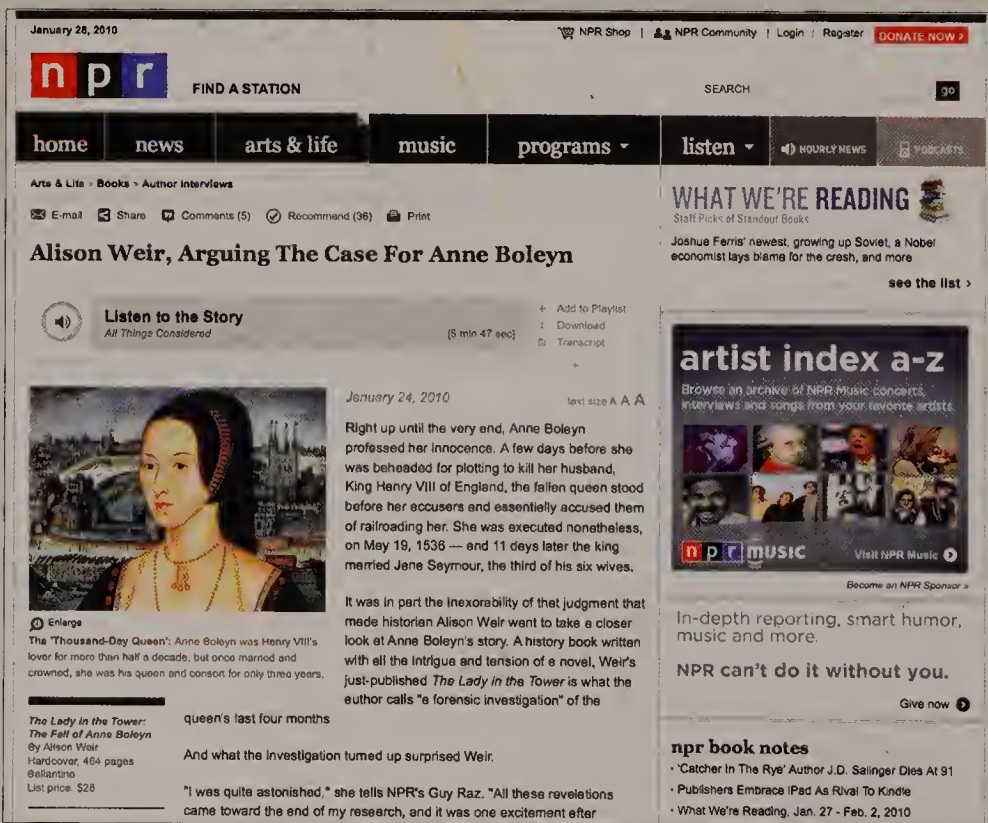
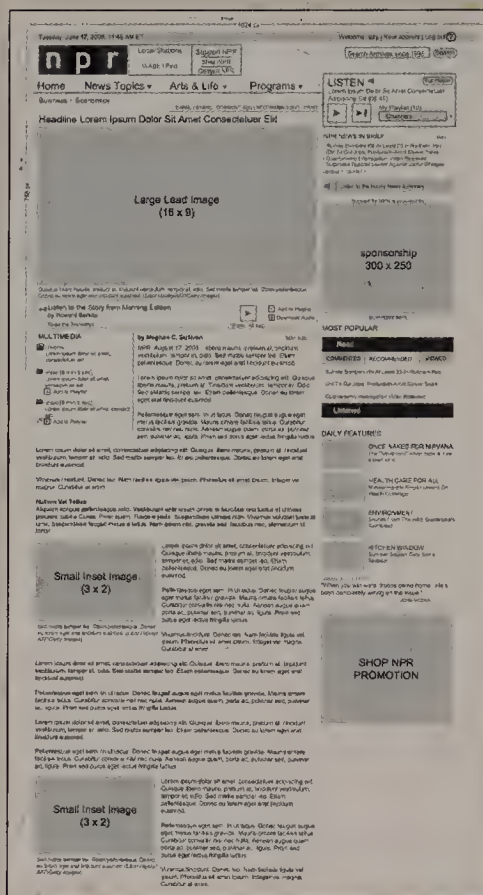
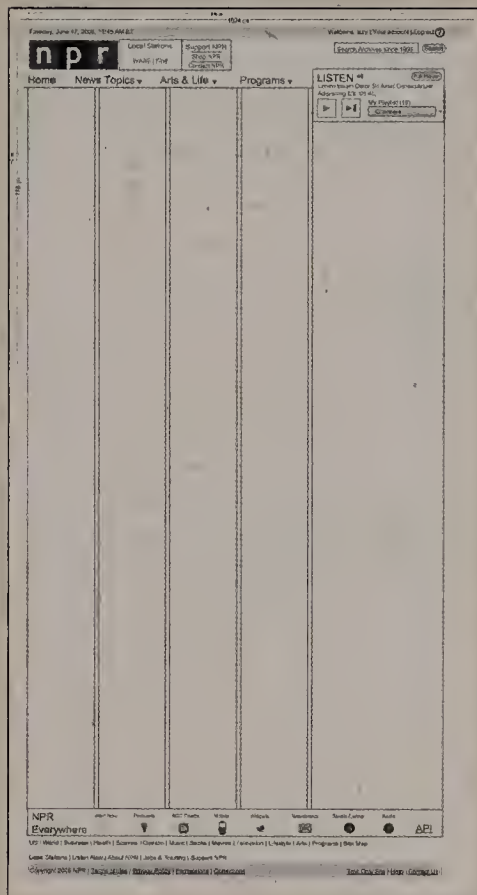
12 Jan 2010
Able Parrie on [Having Fun with Pains](#)

12 Jan 2010
Randy Mathers on [Alex Cornell Interviews Experimental Jetset](#)

12 Jan 2010
Mike D. on [The Secret History of Kubrick](#)

06 Jan 2010
Karl Patilla on [Indie Game Design Does and Doesn't](#)

SUBTRACTION Website, 2008. Designer: Khoi Vinh. While countless websites are divided into three or more columns, a fully functioning grid should allow some components to "break the grid" by crossing over multiple columns within a content area. The generous swaths of white space in Vinh's webpages free the eye from relentless clutter while emphasizing the underlying grid structure. Vinh sometimes uses a grid as a background image to check alignments as he works.



NPR.ORG Website, 2009–10. Designer: NPR staff (Darren Mauro, Jennifer Sharp, Callie Neylan, David Wright, Brian Ingles, K. Libner, Scott Stroud). The web design process typically begins with designing a grid and wire frames that describe typical pages. The visual details, such as type choice, hierarchy, and styling of navigation elements, are added later. The site has eight page templates, each designed for a different editorial situation.

THE NEW REPUBLIC

* Place of Grace: The Uncanny Beauty of Peter Zumthor's Out-of-the-Way Buildings



Unemployment Has Crept Over Ten Percent, and I Think That's a Good Thing. What?

Noam Scheiber

Did Rembrandt Reveal a Murder in One of His Paintings? An Intriguing Whodunnit Filra. PLUS: 'The Maid.'

Stanley Kauffmann

The UN Report on Gaza Is Biased, Shoddy, and Unrealistic. But Israel Must Deal Honestly With Its Own Failures.

Moshe Halbertal

**INTELLECTUAL RIGOR
HONEST REPORTING
INFLUENTIAL ANALYSIS**

THE NEW REPUBLIC

Don't miss another issue of the magazine considered "required reading" by the world's top decision-makers

Subscribe today and get two free issues, risk free.



Chait: Don't Blame Obama for the Bad Economic News. Blame Congress.



From the TNR Archives: The Strange Genius of Oprah Winfrey



Scheiber: Is David Brooks Punking Me? He's Got to Be Punking Me.



Cohn: Is It Even Possible to Control the Cost of Health Care?

STAY IN TOUCH

GET THE MAGAZINE >>



GET OUR E-NEWSLETTERS >>

Enter Email Address

SUBSCRIBE

ASS >>

SATURDAY NOVEMBER 7, 2009



WORLD
The UN Report on Gaza Is Biased, Shoddy, and Unrealistic. But Israel Must Deal Honestly With Its Own Failures.

Moshe Halbertal

FRIDAY NOVEMBER 6, 2009



POLITICS
Bush is a Genius! Health Reform is Dead! 'The Weekly Standard' and the Powerlessness of Wishful Thinking.

Jonathan Chait



HEALTH CARE
The House Has Seriously Weakened the Public Option—But It Still Works, and Is Still Worth Fighting For

Jacob S. Hacker and Diane Archer



ECONOMY
What Happens When Moderate Democrats Turn Into Pundits? Bad Things. Very Bad Things.

Noam Scheiber



WORLD
The Losers From This Week's Protests in Iran: Khamenei, Ahmadinejad, and Obama

Abbas Milani



WORLD
Is Barack Obama Causing a Real Estate Boom in the West Bank?

Sarah A. Topol



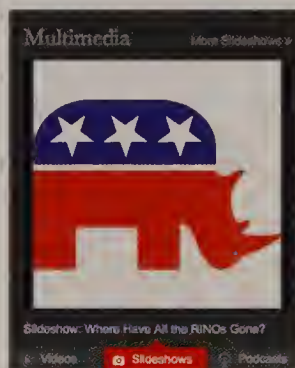
HEALTH CARE
Cohn: I'll Say This About the COP Health Plan... It's Even Worse Than I Imagined

Jonathan Cohn



POLITICS
How Obama Can Help Democrats Avoid a Repeat of the Virginia Debate in 2010

John B. Judis



TNR on Latin America



The Shah of Venezuela
The ideas that keep Hugo Chavez in power



The Case of Honduras
A fragile democracy on the edge of a whirlwind



Confessions of a 'Contra'
How the CIA masterminded the Nicaraguan insurgency



The Death of Che Guevara
A firsthand account



Boycotting Cuba
Whose interest does it serve?

THE PLANK
By the TNR STAFF and GUESTS

What Warren Buffett's Investment Says About the Global Economy

November 7, 2009 | 10:47 am · Simon Johnson

Phony Conservative Anti-Ellittism, Revealed!

November 7, 2009 | 8:24 am · Isaac Chotiner

Today At TNR (November 7, 2009)

November 7, 2009 | 12:00 am · TNR Staff

THE Treatment

Your Must-Read Guide to Health Care Reform

The Drama Was in the History

November 8, 2009 | 12:16 am · Jonathan Cahn

THE SPINE

A Lesson From Fort Hood: Great Moments in "Psychologically Disturbed" Gunmen Committing Mass Murder

November 8, 2009 | 12:58 am · Barry Rubin

THE STASH

Inside the Battle to Fix Our Economy

By NOAM SCHEIBER

WPA Revisited: Should Government Create Jobs Directly?

November 8, 2009 | 6:22 am · Zubin Jethava

THE VINE

The Politics of a Greener Planet

By BRADFORD PLUMER

Cap-And-Trade Politics: Carbon (Like Peace) Matters!

November 8, 2009 | 4:25 pm · Mark Mun and Jonathan Rothwell

THE AVENUE

Rethinking Metropolitan America

In Collaboration with the Brookings Metropolitan Policy Program

Cap-And-Trade Politics: Carbon (Like Peace) Matters!

November 8, 2009 | 4:25 pm · Mark Mun and Jonathan Rothwell

William Galston

Simon Johnson

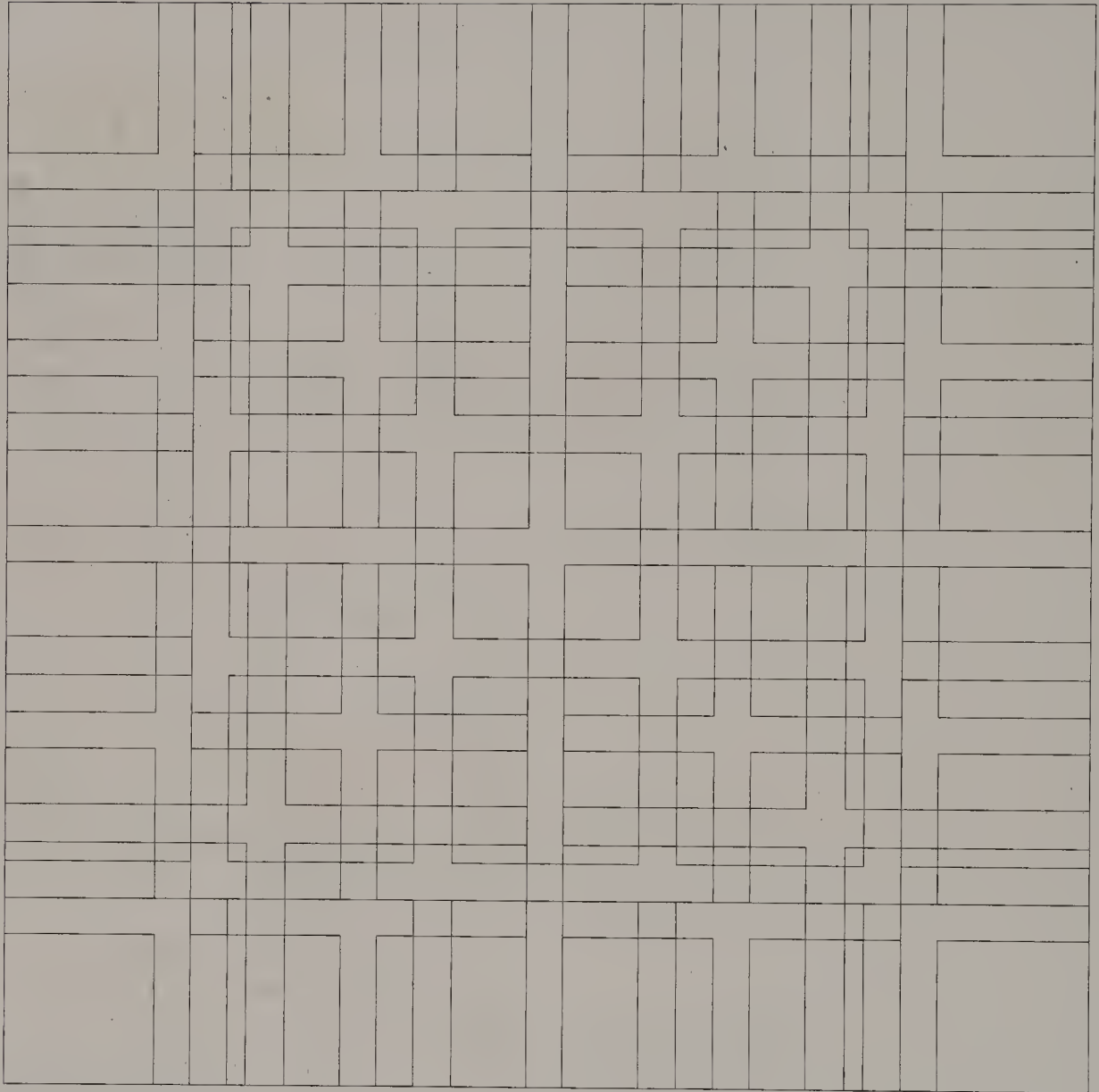
Ed Kilgore

Damon Linker

John McWhorter

THE NEW REPUBLIC Online magazine, 2009. The home page of this online magazine uses a three-column grid to provide readers with direct links to a vast quantity of editorial content. Opinion sections each have their own logotypes, designed to reflect the literary tone of the overall brand.

MODULAR GRID



DESIGNING PROGRAMS Grid diagram, 1963 (redrawn).
Designer: Karl Gerstner. Publisher: Arthur Niggli, Zurich.
This square grid consists of six vertical columns and six horizontal modules, overlaid by grids of one, two, three, and four units. Vertically, the grid is governed by a 10-pt measure, which would determine the spacing of type from baseline to baseline.

Grid systems

A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, highly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge or frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient structure, a skeleton that moves in concert with the muscular mass of content. Grids belong to the technological framework of typography from the concrete modularity of letterpress to the ubiquitous rulers, guides, and coordinate systems of graphics applications. Although software generates illusions of smooth curves and continuous tones, every digital image or mark is constructed—ultimately—from a grid of neatly bounded blocks. The ubiquitous language of the GUI (graphical user interface) catches a gridded space in which windows overlay windows. In addition to their place in the background of design production, grids have become explicit theoretical tools. Avant garde designers in the 1910s and 1920s exposed the grid of letterpress, bringing it to the polemical surface of the page. In Switzerland after World War II, graphic designers built a total design methodology around the typographic grid, hoping to build from it a new and rational social order. The grid has evolved across centuries of typographic evolution. For graphic designers, grids are carefully honed intellectual devices, infused with ideology and ambition, and they are the inescapable mesh that filters, at some level of resolution, nearly every system of writing and

The typographic grid is a preordained template for composition tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal proposition to accommodate a continuous form. The typographic grid is a preordained template for composition tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal proposition to accommodate a continuous form.

The typographic grid is a preordained template for composition tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal proposition to accommodate a continuous form. The typographic grid is a preordained template for composition tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal proposition to accommodate a continuous form.

The typographic grid is a preordained template for composition tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal proposition to accommodate a continuous form. The typographic grid is a preordained template for composition tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal proposition to accommodate a continuous form.

This modular grid has four columns and four rows. An image or a text block can occupy one or more modules.

Grid systems	
<p>A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, highly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge of frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient structure, a skeleton that moves in concert with the muscular mass of content. Grids belong to the technological framework of typography, from the concrete modularity of letterpress to the ubiquitous rulers, guides, and coordinate systems of graphics applications. Although software generates illusions of smooth curves and continuous tones, every digital image or mark is constructed—ultimately—from a grid of neatly bounded blocks. The ubiquitous language of the gui (graphical user interface) creates a gridded space in which windows overlay windows. In addition to their place in the background of design production, grids have</p>	<p>A grid can be simple or complex, specific or generic, highly defined or loosely interpreted. Typographic grids are all about control. They establish a system for arranging content within the space of page, screen, or built environment. Designed in response to the internal pressures of content (text, image, data) and the outer edge of frame (page, screen, window), an effective grid is not a rigid formula but a flexible and resilient structure, a skeleton that moves in concert with the muscular mass of content. Grids belong to the technological framework of typography, from the concrete modularity of letterpress to the ubiquitous rulers, guides, and coordinate systems of graphics applications. Although software generates illusions of smooth curves and continuous tones, every digital image or mark is constructed—ultimately—from a grid of neatly bounded blocks. The ubiquitous language of the gui (graphical user interface) creates a gridded space in which windows overlay windows. In addition to their place in the background of design production, grids have been</p>
<p>The typographic grid is a prepositional regulator for content, tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal prerequisite to accommodate a substantive item. The typographic grid is a prepositional regulator for composition, tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal prerequisite to accommodate a substantive item.</p>	<p>The typographic grid is a prepositional regulator for composition, tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal prerequisite to accommodate a substantive item. The typographic grid is a prepositional regulator for composition, tables, pictures, etc. It is a formal prerequisite to accommodate a substantive item.</p>

Endless variations are possible.

A modular grid has consistent horizontal divisions from top to bottom in addition to vertical divisions from left to right. These modules govern the placement and cropping of pictures as well as text. In the 1950s and 1960s, Swiss graphic designers including Gerstner, Ruder, and Müller-Brockmann devised modular grid systems like the one shown here.

[illegible]

Seiten 226/227/228

Ein Bild- und Textbuch, auf der Grundlage eines Raster 9 Quadrate aufgebaut. Der Raster ist hier das Mittel, die unterschiedlichen Textmengen, unterschiedlichen Bild- und Bildformate zu einer formalen Einheit zusammenzufassen. Das Endergebnis soll der Raster nicht auffallen, er soll von den unterschiedlichen der Werte und Bildthemen übertönt werden.

Pages 226/227/228: A book containing pictures and text on a grid pattern of nine squares. This pattern is the means of establishing a formal unity between the different amount of text and different sizes and shapes of picture. The pattern should not be conspicuous in the final result but rather concealed by the diversity of pictorial subjects and typographical values.

Pages 226/227/228

Un livre illustré construit sur la base d'une trame de 9 colonnes. Le trame est ici l'élément d'unité reliant entre eux les divers textes et formate d'images. Dans le résultat définitif, le texte doit pas être trop freppenta, mais seulement perceptible à travers la diversité des valeurs et des sujets d'illustration.

Modular grids are created by positioning horizontal guidelines in relation to a *baseline grid* that governs the whole document. Baseline grids serve to anchor all (or nearly all) layout elements to a common rhythm. Create a baseline grid by choosing the typesize and leading of your text, such as 10-pt Scala Pro with 12 pts leading (10/12). Avoid auto leading so that you can work with whole numbers that multiply and divide cleanly. Use this line space increment to set the baseline grid in your document preferences. Adjust the top or bottom page margin to absorb any space left over by the baseline grid.

Determine the number of horizontal page units in relation to the number of lines in your baseline grid. Count how many lines fit in a full column of text and then choose a number that divides evenly into the line count to create horizontal page divisions. A column with forty-two lines of text divides neatly into seven horizontal modules with six lines each. If your line count is not neatly divisible, adjust the top and/or bottom page margins to absorb the leftover lines.

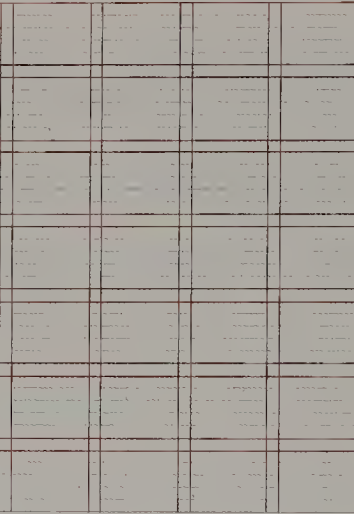
To style headlines, captions, and other elements, choose line spacing that works with the baseline grid, such as 18/24 for headlines, 14/18 for subheads, and 8/12 for captions. Web designers can choose similar increments (line height in CSS) to create style sheets with neatly coordinated baselines.

Where possible, position all page elements in relation to the baseline grid. Don't force it, though. Sometimes a layout works better when you override the grid. View the baseline grid when you want to check the position of elements; turn it off when it's distracting.

In a modular grid, horizontal guidelines are placed in relation to the overall baseline grid of the document. Baseline grids help designers build pages in which all page elements are anchored by a common rhythm. Start by choosing the typesize and leading of your text, such as 10-pt Scala Pro with 12 pts leading (10/12). Avoid auto leading so that you can work with a whole number that multiplies and divides cleanly. Use this line space increment to determine the baseline grid in your document Preferences. Adjust the top or bottom page margin to absorb any extra space left over by the baseline grid.

Determine the number of horizontal units in relation to the number of lines in the baseline grid. Count how many lines fit in a full column of text. Find a number that divides evenly into this measure to create horizontal page divisions. A column with 42 lines of text divides neatly into 7 horizontal modules with six lines each. If necessary, adjust the page margins to eliminate extra lines.

To style headlines, captions, and other elements, choose line spacing that works with the baseline grid, such as 18/24 for headlines, 14/18 for subheads, and 8/12 for captions. Where possible, position all page elements in relation to the baseline grid. Don't force it, though. Sometimes a layout works better when you override the grid. View the baseline grid when you want to check the position of elements; turn it off.



BASELINE GRID In InDesign, set the baseline grid in the Preferences>Grids and Guides window. Create horizontal divisions in Layout>Create Guides. Make the horizontal guides correspond to the baselines of the page's primary text by choosing a number of rows that divides evenly into the number of lines in a full column of text.

NERD ALERT: Working in InDesign, you can make your text frames automatically align with the baseline grid. Go to Object>Text Frame Options>Baseline Options and choose Leading. If your leading (line spacing) is 12 pts, the first baseline will fall 12 pts from the top of the text frame.

BETTER TEXT FRAMES The first line of the text starts 12 pts from the top of the text frame. In the default setting, the first line is positioned according to the cap height.

baseline grids

create a common rhythm

Captions and other details are styled to coordinate with the dominant baseline grid.

Modular grids are created by positioning horizontal guidelines in relation to a *baseline grid* that governs the whole document. Baseline grids serve to anchor all (or nearly all) elements to a common rhythm.

Create a baseline grid by choosing the typesize and leading of your text, such as 10-pt Scala Pro with 12 pts leading (10/12). Avoid auto leading so that you can work with whole numbers that multiply and divide cleanly. Use this line space increment to set the baseline grid in your document preferences. Adjust the top or bottom page margin to absorb any space left over by the baseline grid.

Determine the number of horizontal page units in relation to the number of lines in the baseline grid. Count how many lines fit in a full column of text and then choose a number that divides easily into the line count to create horizontal page divisions. A column with forty-two lines of text divides neatly into seven horizontal modules with six lines each. If your line count is not neatly divisible, adjust the top and/or

bottom page margins to absorb leftover lines.

To style headlines, captions, and other elements, choose line spacing that works with the baseline grid, such as 18/24 for headlines, 14/18 for subheads, and 8/12 for captions. (Web designers can choose similar increments (line height) to create style sheets with coordinated baselines.)

Where possible, position all page elements in relation to the baseline grid. Don't force it, though. Sometimes a layout works better when you override the grid. View the baseline grid when you want to check the position of elements; turn it off when it's distracting.

InDesign, set the baseline grid in the Preferences>Grids and Guides window. Create horizontal divisions in Layout>Create Guides. Make the horizontal guides correspond to the baselines of the page's primary text by choosing a number of rows that divides evenly into the number of lines in a full column of text.

Working in InDesign, you can make

CAPTION

9/12 Scala Sans Pro Italic

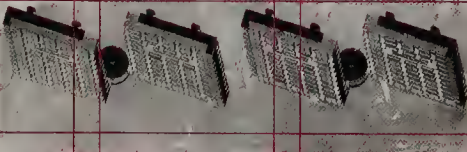

PRIMARY TEXT:

10/12 Scala Pro.

This measure determines the baseline grid.

DESIGN LIKE YOU GIVE A DAMN Book, 2006.
Designers: Paul Carlos, Urshula Barbour,
Katharina Seifert, and Farha Khan/Pure + Applied.
Authors: Architecture for Humanity, Kate Stohr,
and Cameron Sinclair. *This book design uses a
modular grid to bring order to complex content. Some
pages are dense with body text, captions, and small
images, while others feature full-bleed photography
layered with short statements and hard-hitting
statistics.*



<p>24</p> <p>"Architecture is a process of giving form and pattern to the social life of the community. Architecture is not an individual act performed by an artist-architect and charged with his emotions. Building is a collective action."</p> <p>Jannes Meyer, director of Bauhaus, 1928 to 1930</p> <p>built two prototypes based on Citroën ideas for exhibition: The <i>immeubles illias</i> (1922) and the <i>Maison Citroën</i> (1923), a play on the automobile name Citroën. Throughout the '20s Le Corbusier expounded on his ideas for a new industrialized architecture in a series of manifestos and urban plans.</p> <p>Another early pioneer of prefabrication and component building systems was the German architect Walter Gropius. Gropius, who founded the Bauhaus and served as its director from 1919 to 1928, personified the architect as public servant and teacher. Throughout the '20s and '30s Gropius experimented with prefabricated wall panels and eventually whole structures. During his tenure and that of his successors, the Bauhaus became a nexus for socially conscious design.</p> <p>Gropius, along with Marcel Breuer, is also credited with designing the first slab apartment block. This new building type, which would become the model for many future affordable-housing projects, was conceived to overcome the cramped, lightless tenement housing that had resulted from rampant speculation at the turn of the century. The basic plan consisted of parallel rows of four- to 11-story apartment blocks. Each slab was only one apartment deep with windows front and back. The slabs were sited on a "superblock" at an angle to the street with communal green spaces between them to allow maximum sunlight into each apartment.⁹</p>		 <p>Walter Gropius, slab apartment blocks on the Wannsee Shore, Berlin, 1931</p> <p>Others would also experiment with standardized building components, modular systems, and prefabrication, including the French industrial designer Jean Prouvé and Frank Lloyd Wright, but perhaps none more passionately than the American inventor R. Buckminster Fuller.</p> <p>Fuller arrived on what he termed "spaceship earth" in 1895. Like Gropius and Le Corbusier, he believed that mass-manufactured dwellings represented the future of housing. His most lasting contribution, however, was his fervent belief in the power of design to improve the human condition. In a sense Fuller, who was known for his eccentric use of language and his marathon lectures (the longest lasted 42 hours and only recently has been fully transcribed), was the first evangelist of humanitarian design.</p> <p>In 1927, after the death of his elder daughter and the collapse of his first business, he found himself at the edge of Lake Michigan contemplating suicide. He was a failure, "a throw-away." What brought him from the brink, he later recounted, was the simple idea that his experience might ultimately be somehow useful to his fellow human beings. Rather than taking his own life, he decided to embark on a lifelong experiment, using himself as his own best research subject. He became "Guinea Pig B" (for Bucky), the world's first test pilot of a "design-science revolution," the sole purpose of which was to improve "human livingry," and he started with the house.</p>		<p>Conventional "handcrafted" homes had undergone "no structural advances in 5,000 years," Fuller argued. They were poorly lit, required much maintenance, and did not make efficient use of raw materials. Most conventional buildings depended on gravity for their strength. But what if a building could be suspended, as a sail from a mast, allowing for greater strength and the use of fewer materials?</p> <p>Fuller's thinking led to the design of the Dymaxion House, a small-scale model of which was first exhibited at a Marshall Field's department store in Chicago in 1929. His radical scheme embraced the principle of tension and aimed to do "more with less." It was spherical, to make efficient use of materials, and clad in maintenance-free aluminum. It was naturally climate controlled and could be lit by a single light source through a system of mirrors and dimmers. All the mechanicals, wiring, and appliances were built into the walls and mast to allow for easy replacement. The house was also one of the first examples of self-sufficient (or "autonomous," as Fuller put it) green design. Wind turbines produced energy. The roof collected rainwater. Water-saving "fog guns" handled washing (including people), and Fuller's "package toilet" composted waste and reused gas.</p> <p>While the Dymaxion House was unabashedly ahead of its time it would be two decades before Fuller could find backing to build a full-scale prototype, the concept of building with tension rather than compression would become central to Fuller's work and would eventually lead to his most lasting contribution to the field of humanitarian design: the geodesic dome. Fuller's principle of tensegrity became a staple of tent design, and by extension, emergency shelter, that endures to this day.</p> <p>Like the Dymaxion House, few of these early designs for "factory-built" housing achieved widespread commercial viability. For example, Le Corbusier's low-cost housing for workers in Pessac, near Bordeaux, France, went unoccupied for eight years after it was built. However, this concept of mass-produced housing would have a number of lasting implications for low-cost shelter. It prefigured a move away from the craft of building toward the technology of building. It took design out of the realm of the many and put it in the hands of an educated few. Perhaps more important, it negated the need for a dialogue between the architect and the occupant.</p>		
1929 Dymaxion House Chicago, Ill., USA R. Buckminster Fuller	1930-31 Housing Act of 1930 England 1930-39 Drought and Dust Storms Midwestern and southern plains, USA	1931 Prefabricated houses built for the Hirsch Copper and Brass Works Finow, Germany Walter Gropius 1931 Slab apartment blocks on the Wannsee shore Berlin, Germany Walter Gropius			1931 Flood China The Yellow River, the second largest river in China, floods. Death toll estimates range from 850,000 to four million. The flooding is followed by famine and outbreaks of disease	1934 Modern Housing Catherine Bauer 1934 National Housing Act of 1934 USA



women

2/3 WORK of the world's working hours.

1/2 PRODUCE of the world's food, and yet

10% EARN of the world's income and

1% OWN LESS THAN of the world's property

2/3 of the 110 million children not in school are girls

70% of the world's people living in absolute poverty

Women constitute estimated 1,300,000,000 people living in absolute poverty

40-60% of sexual assaults are committed against girls younger than 18

Women constitute estimated 1,300,000,000 people living in absolute poverty

Water for People, *et al.*, *The Face of Human Rights*, Boston: Water for People, 2004.

Lightweight Emergency Tent

Location: Iraq
Date: 2003-present
Organization: Office of the United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR)
End client: Refugees, internally displaced populations
Design consultant: Chasem Pindarash
Manufacturer: Al-Sheikh Nour-ud-Din & Sons
Cost per unit: Approx. \$400
Area: 178 sq ft/16.5 sq m
Capacity: 4-5 people
Dimensions: 10' x 8' x 5'11.5" x 3' x 2'1" m
Weight: 91 lb/41.5 kg

In war-torn countries and areas devastated by disaster, the presence of UNHCR tents is one of the first signs of aid.

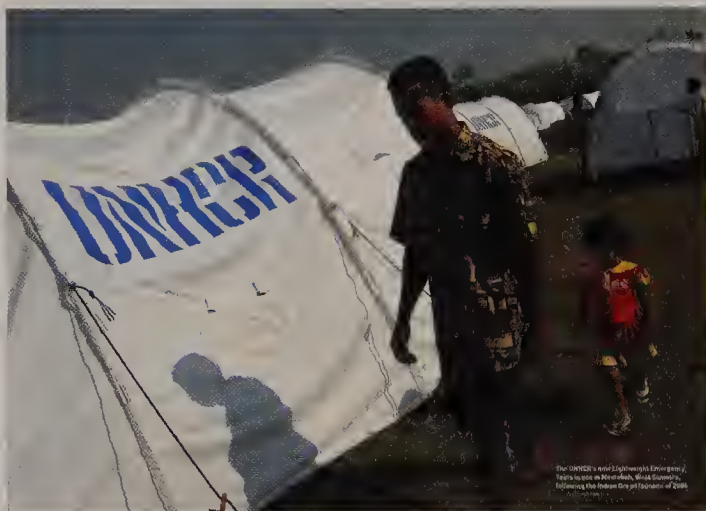
Designers have tried to rethink this basic tent for decades. Everything from prefabricated structures to shipping containers to polyethylene yurts has been suggested or attempted. But as the agency pointed out in its guide to emergency materials, to date none of these systems has been effective in refugee situations.

Most likely simply because other emergency shelter arrangements will have been made before these systems even arrive. Some tent alternatives are perceived as "too permanent," making them difficult to take in host communities and creating less incentive for a refugee to return home. Others are difficult or costly to replace.

But in recent years there has been a growing sense within the agency that the designed, standard tenting process could and should be radically overhauled. In most emergency situations the agency needs a plastic sheeting tent. Depending on the size and complexity of the crisis, this sheeting may be the response at hand and most urgent.

However, in cases where local materials are not available to build more permanent structures, which tenters cannot build shelter on their own community or are displaced for longer periods of time, the UNHCR provides more durable alternatives—typically a ridge-roof or certain pole-double-ty tent made from canvas. Yet these canvas tents are not only heavy, cumbersome to carry and costly to store, but because canvas rots they deteriorate quickly and cannot be stockpiled for long periods. Wear and tear on the weathered material in the field significantly shortens the useful lifespan of the shelter.

In 2002 the UNHCR began testing a new design for the basic family tent it regularly dispatched to areas of crisis. The agency's



The UNHCR's new Lightweight Emergency Tent, shown here in northern Iraq, is designed to be assembled in less than 10 minutes. Following the Bosnian Crisis in 2000.

GripClips

Location: Various
Date: 1975-present
Designer: Robert Gillis
Manufacturer: Shelter Systems
Cost: \$6-10 (set of 4)

It would be safe to say that few people know the ins and outs of tents better than Robert Gillis.

Not only did he design the first portable, backpacking tent, based on Buckminster Fuller's ideas, for the North Face in the 1970s, but he also lived in a collection of tents built by him and Moore children for more than 20 years—all of which he designed himself, including the tent that housed the family washing machine.

Although many of Gillis's tent innovations have stemmed from efforts to improve his own living conditions, from the beginning he saw the potential for translating his ideas to emergency shelter—in particular using the plastic sheeting that has become a standard

component of relief projects. However, working with peace-sheltering relief tenting agencies, Gillis realized that it was difficult to join the material without puncturing it. The material deteriorates less if you don't puncture it. The design went through more than 15 different iterations before arriving at the GripClip, a small plastic insulator that clips onto any type of sheeting and less than 10 minutes.

Reducing the shelter's size is the most fundamental element, the connection between the sheeting and the support, enabled Gillis to design a number of tents, from a basic shelter frame to a more elaborate dome structure. The clips also offered another advantage: They allowed for a range of shapes. Whereas most relief agencies distribute tunnel-shaped tents because the structure can be covered



with one large sheet of material, these tents are built inside the wind from dome-shaped tents. Using GripClips, Gillis found he was able to join sheeting in shingles to create a more stable structure. He would also build it or anything, he recalls. There was the perfect thing. It was totally wonderful.

Now a recently Gillis he has focused on creating clips and fasteners to attach plastic sheeting to roofs, frameworks, piping, or plywood, allowing him to build a diverse range of structures, which is a transitional frame where they could

significantly. A GripClip, designed for a range of uses, is shown here from inside a tent. The frame pieces are secured with plastic wrap.

GripClips's two plastic parts are designed to be twisted together with a piece of sheeting between them. The clip itself can be secured to a frame structure with plastic tape, rope, or other straps.

Robert Gillis built a tent built with GripClips. Following the Bosnian Crisis in 2000.



EXERCISE: MODULAR GRID

Use a modular grid to arrange a text in as many ways as you can. By employing just one size of type and flush left alignment only, you will construct a typographic hierarchy exclusively by means of spatial arrangement. To make the project more complex, begin adding variables such as weight, size, and alignment.

Common typographic disorders				
Various forms of dysfunction appear among populations exposed to typography for long periods of time. Listed here are a number of frequently observed afflictions.				
typophilia An excessive attachment to and fascination with the shape of letters, often to the exclusion of other interests and object choices.				
Typophiliacs usually die penniless and alone.				
typophobia The irrational dislike of letterforms, often marked by a preference for icons, dingbats, and—in fatal cases—bullets and daggers. The fears of the typophobe can often be quieted (but not cured) by steady doses of Helvetica and Times Roman.				
typochondria A persistent anxiety that one has selected the wrong typeface. This condition is often paired with okd (optical kerning disorder), the need to constantly adjust and readjust the spaces between letters.				

Common typographic disorders				
Various forms of dysfunction appear among populations exposed to typography for long periods of time. Listed here are a number of frequently observed afflictions.				
typophilia An excessive attachment to and fascination with the shape of letters, often to the exclusion of other interests and object choices. Typophiliacs usually die penniless and alone.	typophobia The irrational dislike of letterforms, often marked by a preference for icons, dingbats, and—in fatal cases—bullets and daggers. The fears of the typophobe can often be quieted (but not cured) by steady doses of Helvetica and Times Roman.	typochondria A persistent anxiety that one has selected the wrong typeface. This condition is often paired with OKD (optical kerning disorder), the need to constantly adjust and readjust the spaces between letters.		

Common typographic disorders				
Various forms of dysfunction appear among populations exposed to typography for long periods of time. Listed here are a number of frequently observed afflictions.				
	typophilia An excessive attachment to and fascination with the shape of letters, often to the exclusion of other interests and object choices. Typophiliacs usually die penniless and alone.			
	typophobia The irrational dislike of letterforms, often marked by a preference for icons, dingbats, and—in fatal cases—bullets and daggers. The fears of the typophobe can often be quieted (but not cured) by steady doses of Helvetica and Times Roman.			
	typochondria A persistent anxiety that one has selected the wrong typeface. This condition is often paired with OKD (optical kerning disorder), the need to constantly adjust and readjust the spaces between letters.			

Common typographic disorders		Various forms of dysfunction appear among populations exposed to typography for long periods of time. Listed here are a number of frequently observed afflictions.	
	typophilia	An excessive attachment to and fascination with the shape of letters, often to the exclusion of other interests and object choices. Typophiliacs usually die penniless and alone.	
	typophobia	The irrational dislike of letterforms, often marked by a preference for icons, dingbats, and—in fatal cases—bullets and daggers. The fears of the typophobe can often be quieted (but not cured) by steady doses of Helvetica and Times Roman.	
	typochondria	A persistent anxiety that one has selected the wrong typeface. This condition is often paired with OKD (optical kerning disorder), the need to constantly adjust and readjust the spaces between letters.	

Common typographic disorders			
	typophilia	typophobia	typochondria
Various forms of dysfunction appear among populations exposed to typography for long periods of time. Listed here are a number of frequently observed afflictions.	An excessive attachment to and fascination with the shape of letters, often to the exclusion of other interests and object choices. Typophiliacs usually die penniless and alone.	The irrational dislike of letterforms, often marked by a preference for icons, dingbats, and—in fatal cases—bullets and daggers. The fears of the typophobe can often be quieted (but not cured) by steady doses of Helvetica and Times Roman.	A persistent anxiety that one has selected the wrong typeface. This condition is often paired with OKD (optical kerning disorder), the need to constantly adjust and readjust the spaces between letters.

An excessive attachment to and fascination with the shape of letters, often to the exclusion of other interests and object choices. Typophiliacs usually die penniless and alone.	typophilia	Various forms of dysfunction appear among populations exposed to typography for long periods of time. Listed here are a number of frequently observed afflictions.	
		typophobia	
			typochondria
Common typographic disorders			

Common typographic disorders		Various forms of dysfunction appear among populations exposed to typography for long periods of time. Listed here are a number of frequently observed afflictions.	
typophilia	An excessive attachment to and fascination with the shape of letters, often to the exclusion of other interests and object choices. Typophiliacs usually die penniless and alone.	typophobia	
	typochondria		

DATA TABLES

The design of charts and graphs is a rich area of typographic practice. In a data table, the grid acquires semantic significance. Columns and rows contain different types of content that readers can scan and quickly compare. Designers (and software defaults) often over-emphasize the linear grid of a table rather than allowing the typography to command the page and stake out its own territory. As columns of text align visually, they create implied grid lines on the page or screen.

ACCOUNT	ACCOUNT NAME	TOTAL FOR ACCO
101001	Instructional Supplies	\$3,65
101002	Office Supplies	\$46
102004	Equipment- Non-Capital	\$1,28
105009	Travel-Conference Fees	\$56
110004	Miscellaneous Entertainment	\$8
114006	Postage/Shipping-Local Courier	\$21
151108	Temp Staff-Contractual	\$7
151181	Honoraria-Critics/V's Artist	\$1,00
	DEPARTMENTAL EXPENDITURES	\$7,35

TYPE CRIME: DATA PRISON *The rules and boxes used in data tables should illuminate the relationships among data, not trap each entry inside a heavily guarded cell.*

Train No.	3701	3301	3801	A 67	3 3803	3 3201	A3 51	3 3703	3 3807	3 3203	A3 61	3 3809	A3 47	3 3901	3 3811	3 3903	3 3813	3205	3815	3817	3819	3207	3821	3823	3825	3209	3827	3829	3831
New York, N.Y.	A.M. 12 10	A.M. 12 40	A.M. 1 30	A.M. 3 52	A.M. 4 50	A.M. 6 10	A.M. 6 25	A.M. 6 35	A.M. 6 50	A.M. 7 10	A.M. 7 30	A.M. 7 33	A.M. 7 45	A.M. 7 50	A.M. 8 05	A.M. 8 25	A.M. 8 40	A.M. 8 50	A.M. 9 10	A.M. 9 40	A.M. 10 10	A.M. 10 25	A.M. 10 40	A.M. 11 10	A.M. 11 40	A.M. 11 50	P.M. 12 10	P.M. 12 40	P.M. 1 10
Newark, N.J. P	12 24	12 55	1 44	4 07	5 04	6 24	6 38	6 49	7 04	7 24	7 45	7 47	7 59	8 04	8 19	8 39	8 54	9 04	9 24	9 54	10 24	10 39	10 54	11 24	11 54	12 04	12 24	12 54	1 24
North Elizabeth	12 31	1 03	1 51	5 11	6 31	7 11	7 32	7 54	8 13	8 26	8 46	9 01	9 11	9 31	10 01	10 31	10 46	11 01	11 31	12 01	12 11	12 31	1 01	1 31					
Linden	12 36	1 56	5 16	6 36	7 01	7 15	7 37	7 59	8 18	8 31	8 51	9 06	9 14	9 44	10 14	10 44	11 14	11 44	12 14	12 44	1 14	1 44							
North Rahway	12 40	1 11	2 00	5 20	6 40	7 03	7 39	8 03	8 20	8 33	8 54	9 18	9 48	10 18	10 48	11 18	11 48	12 18	12 48	1 18	1 48								
Rahway	12 44	2 04	4 26	5 24	6 56	7 10	7 25	8 04	8 07	8 15	8 40	9 14	9 44	10 14	10 44	11 14	11 44	12 14	12 44	1 14	1 44								
Metro Park (Iselin)	12 48	2 08	5 28	7 14	7 29	8 11	8 41	9 05	9 25	9 54	10 25	10 54	11 25	11 54	12 25	12 54	1 25	1 54											
Metuchen	12 51	2 11	5 35	7 05	7 21	7 35	8 14	8 25	8 50	9 25	9 54	10 25	10 54	11 25	11 54	12 25	12 54	1 25	1 54										
Edison	12 55	2 15	5 35	7 05	7 21	7 35	8 14	8 25	8 50	9 25	9 54	10 25	10 54	11 25	11 54	12 25	12 54	1 25	1 54										
New Brunswick	1 02	2 18	5 38	7 08	7 24	7 38	8 17	8 28	8 53	9 28	9 57	10 28	10 57	11 28	11 57	12 28	12 57	1 28	1 57										
Jersey Avenue	1 02	2 18	5 38	7 08	7 24	7 38	8 17	8 28	8 53	9 28	9 57	10 28	10 57	11 28	11 57	12 28	12 57	1 28	1 57										
Princeton Jct. S	2 31	5 50	7 19	7 50	8 34	8 41	9 05	9 41	10 09	10 41	11 09	11 41	12 09	12 41	1 09	1 41	2 09												
Trenton, N.J.	2 42	4 58	6 03	7 28	8 01	8 31	8 44	8 52	9 16	9 52	10 16	10 52	11 16	11 52	12 16	12 52	1 16	1 52	2 16	2 52	3 16	3 52	4 16	4 52	5 16	5 52	6 16	6 52	7 16
TRAIN NUMBER	3701	3301	3801	67	3803	3201	51	3703	3807	3203	61	3809	47	3901	3811	3903	3813	3205	3815	3817	3819	3207	3821	3823	3825	3209	3827	3829	3831
NOTES		XM		3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3

NEW JERSEY TRANSIT, NORTHEASTERN CORRIDOR TIMETABLE Original schedule with redesign by Edward Tufte. From Edward Tufte, *Envisioning Information* (Cheshire, Conn.: Graphics Press, 1990). The original design (top) is organized with heavy horizontal and vertical divisions. Tufte calls this a "data prison." His redesign uses the alignment of the typographic elements themselves to express the table's underlying structure.



33

YEAR INTRODUCED	MARKET SHARE	PRICE PER LB	MAKER
00	15	3.01	P
G	SUGAR	1	
K	FIBER	4	
P	PROTEIN	4	
Q	SODIUM	0	
	GENERAL MILLS		
	KELLOGG'S		
	POST		
	QUAKER OATS		

PERIODIC BREAKFAST TABLE Magazine page (detail), 1998. Designer: Catherine Weese. Photography: John Halpern. Publisher: Patsy Tarr, 2wice Magazine. This chart organizes breakfast cereals by shape and annotates them according to a dozen characteristics, from fiber content to price per pound. Visual displays of data allow readers to quickly compare items. One might observe, for example, that in breakfast cereals, intensity of sugar is usually accompanied by intensity of color.

EXERCISE: DATA TABLES

Find a chart from an old science book or other source and redesign it. Shown at right is a nineteenth-century table documenting an experiment about ants. The old design emphasizes vertical divisions at the expense of horizontal ones, and it jumbles together text and numbers within the table cells.

The redesign below eliminates many of the ruled lines, replacing them, where needed, with a pale tone that unifies the long horizontal rows of data. The redesigned chart also replaces most of the numerals with dots, a technique that lets the eye visually compare the results without having to read each numeral separately.

PT IO		CHLOROFORMED ANTS
I4		....				..	..
I5		.	.	..		..
29		....				....
CT O2		....				....	.
O6		....				....
AL	O4		20	OI	O2		20	O3

	LEFT ALONE	TAKEN TO NEST	THROWN IN WATER	BOTH NEST AND WATER	LEFT ALONE	TAKEN TO NEST	THROWN IN WATER	BOTH NEST AND WATER	INTOXICATED ANTS
OV 20		...	..		.		.....
22	..	..					.....
EC OI		.....	..				.....	...
O5		.....	.....				.....	...
AN I5	....				.		..
I7		....				..	.....	.
AL	O6	32	O9		O2	O2	43	O7	

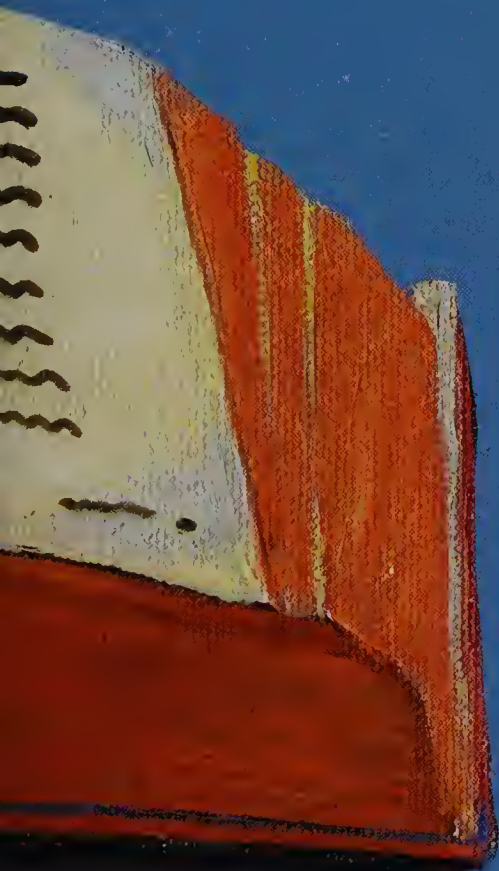
118 BEHAVIOUR TO INTOXICATED FRIENDS.

Tabular View.—Experiments on Ants under Chloroform and Intoxicated.

CHLOROFORMED ANTS.						
FRIENDS				STRANGERS		
	To Nest	To Water	Unre- moved	To Nest	To Water	Unre- moved
Sept. 10	...	...	4	...	4	...
14	...	4	...	2 and brought out again	2	...
15	1 and brought out again	1	...	...	2	2
29	...	5	...	...	4	...
Oct. 2	...	5	...	1 and brought out again	4	...
6	...	5	...	...	4	...
	1	20	4	3	20	2
INTOXICATED ANTS.						
Nov. 20	3	2	...	...	5	1
22	2	...	2	...	8	...
In these cases some of the Ants had partly recovered; in the following they were quite insensible.						
Dec. 1	7 none brought out again	2	...	3 all these brought out again	6	...
8	16 none brought out again	5	...	3 all these brought out again	15	...
Jan. 15	...	...	4	...	3	1
17	4 none brought out again	...	...	3 one brought out again	6	...
	27	7	4	2	30	1

INTOXICATED FRIENDS Data table from Sir John Lubbock, *Ants, Bees, and Wasps* (New York: D. Appleton and Company, 1893). The author of this experiment studied how ants responded upon meeting either "friends" (members of their own colony) or "strangers." In the first experiment, the friends and strangers were rendered unconscious with chloroform. In the second experiment, the ants were merely intoxicated. The chloroformed ants—whether friends or strangers—were usually taken for dead and pitched into a moat of water surrounding the colony. The intoxicated ants were treated with more discrimination. Many of the drunken friends were taken back to the nest for rehabilitation, whereas drunken strangers were generally tossed in the moat. Ants, one might conclude, should not rely on the kindness of strangers.





{APPENDIX}

SPACES AND PUNCTUATION

Writers or clients often supply manuscripts that employ incorrect dashes or faulty word spacing. Consult a definitive work such as *The Chicago Manual of Style* for a complete guide to punctuation. The following rules are especially pertinent for designers.

WORD SPACES are created by the space bar. Use just one space between sentences or after a comma, colon, or semicolon. One of the first steps in typesetting a manuscript is to purge it of all double spaces. Thus the space bar should not be used to create indents or otherwise position text on a line. Use tabs instead. HTML refuses to recognize double spaces altogether.

EN SPACES are wider than word spaces. An en space can be used to render a more emphatic distance between elements on a line: for example, to separate a subhead from the text that immediately follows, or to separate elements gathered along a single line in a letterhead.

EM DASHES express strong grammatical breaks. An em dash is one em wide—the width of the point size of the typeface. In manuscripts, dashes are often represented with a double hyphen (--); these must be replaced.

EN DASHES serve primarily to connect numbers (I–10). An en is half the width of an em. Manuscripts rarely employ en dashes, so the designer needs to supply them.

HYPHENS connect linked words and phrases, and they break words at the ends of lines. Typesetting programs break words automatically. Disable auto hyphenation when working with ragged or centered text; use discretionary hyphens instead, and only when unavoidable.

DISCRETIONARY HYPHENS, which are inserted manually to break lines, only appear in the document if they are needed. (If a text is reflowed in subsequent editing, a discretionary hyphen will disappear.) Wayward hyphens often occur in the middle of a line when the typesetter has inserted a “hard” hyphen instead of a discretionary one.

QUOTATION MARKS have distinct “open” and “closed” forms, unlike hatch marks, which are straight up and down. A single close quote also serves as an apostrophe (“It’s Bob’s font.”). Prime or hatch marks should only be used to indicate inches and feet (5’2”). Used incorrectly, hatches are known as “dumb quotes.” Although computer operating systems and typesetting programs often include automatic “smart quote” features, e-mailed, word-processed, and/or client-supplied text can be riddled with dumb quotes. Auto smart quote programs often render

apostrophes upside down (‘tis instead of ’tis), so designers must be vigilant and learn the necessary keystrokes.

ELLIPSES consist of three periods, which can be rendered with no spaces between them, or with open tracking (letterspacing), or with word spaces. An ellipsis indicates an omitted section in a quoted text or...a temporal break. Most typefaces include an ellipsis character, which presents closely spaced points.

MAC OS KEYSTROKES These keystrokes listed below are commonly used in word processing, page layout, and illustration software. Some fonts do not include a full range of special characters.

DASHES

—	em dash	shift-option-hyphen
–	en dash	option-hyphen
-	standard hyphen	(hyphen key)
-	discretionary hyphen	command-hyphen

PUNCTUATION

‘	single open quote	option-]
’	single close quote	shift-option-]
“	double open quote	option-[
”	double close quote	shift-option-[
...	ellipsis	option-;

OTHER MARKS

()	en space	option-space bar
†	dagger	option-t
‡	double dagger	shift-option-7
©	copyright symbol	option-g
®	resister symbol	option-r
€	Euro symbol	shift-option-2
fi	fi ligature	shift-option-5
fl	fl ligature	shift-option-6
é	accent aigu	option-e + e
è	accent grave	option-` + e
à	accent grave	option-` + a
ù	accent grave	option-` + u
ç	cédille	option-c
ü	umlaut	option-u + u
ö	umlaut	option-u + o

These interruptions—especially the snide remarks—are killing my buzz.

CRIME: Two hyphens in place of an em dash

Dashes express a break in the flow of a sentence. In a word-processed document, dashes can be indicated with two hyphens. Em dashes are required, however, in typesetting. No spaces are used around dashes.

El Lissitzky lived 1890–1941. Rodchenko lived longer (1891–1956).

CRIME: Hyphen between numbers

An en dash connects two numbers. It means “up to and including,” not “between.” No spaces are used around en dashes.

It’s okay to be second-best, but never, ever second–best.

CRIME: En dash in hyphenated word

Do not use en dashes where the humble hyphen is required.

In the beginning was...the word....Typography came later.

An ellipsis character is used here in place of separate points.

The periods in an ellipsis can be separated with word spaces, or, as we prefer, they can be tracked open (letterspaced). Most typefaces include an ellipsis character, whose points are more tightly spaced. After a sentence, use a period plus an ellipsis (four dots).

She was 5'2" with eyes of blue. "I'm not dumb," she said. "I'm prime."

CRIME: Prime marks (a.k.a. dumb quotes) used in place of quotation marks

The purpose of prime marks, or hatch marks, is to indicate inches and feet. Their use to mark quotations is a common blight across the typographic landscape.

“I’m not smart,” he replied. “I’m a quotation mark.”

Unlike prime marks, quotation marks include an opening and closing character. Single close quotes also serve as apostrophes. Incorrectly used prime marks must be routed out and destroyed.

Don’t put two spaces between sentences. They leave an ugly gap.

CRIME: Two spaces between sentences

Although writers persist in putting double spaces between sentences (a habit often learned in high school), all such spaces must be purged from a manuscript when it is set in type.

Since the onslaught of desktop publishing back in the dark days of the mid-1980s, graphic designers have taken on roles formerly occupied by distinct trades, such as typesetting and mechanical pasteup. Designers are often expected to be editors as well. Every project should have a true editor, a person with the training and disposition to judge the correctness, accuracy, and consistency of written content. Neither a project's author nor its designer should be its editor, who is rightly a neutral party between them. If a project team includes no properly trained editor, try to find one. If that fails, make sure that *someone* is responsible for this crucial role, for the failure to edit carefully is the source of costly and embarrassing errors.

Editing a text for publication has three basic phases. *Developmental editing* addresses broad issues of the content and the structure of a work; indeed, it can include judging a work's fitness for publication in the first place. *Copy editing* (also called line editing or manuscript editing) seeks to root out redundancies, inconsistencies, grammatical errors, and other flaws appearing across the body of the work. The copy editor—who must study every word and sentence—is not expected to question the overall meaning or structure of a work, nor to alter an author's style, but rather to refine and correct. *Proofreading*, which checks the correctness, consistency, and flow of designed, typeset pages, is the final stage. Depending on the nature of the project and its team, each of these phases may go through several rounds.

ANATOMY OF AN ERROR After a document has been written, edited, designed, and proofread, a printer's proof is created by the printer from the digital files supplied by the designer. Many clients (or authors) fail to recognize errors (or make decisions) until the printer's proofs are issued. This luxury has its costs, and someone will have to pay.

PE'S (PRINTER'S ERRORS) These are errors that can be assigned to the printer, and they must be corrected at no expense to the designer or client. A printer's error is an obvious and blatant divergence from the digital files and other instructions provided by the designer and agreed to by the printer. Printer's errors are surprisingly rare in the digital age.

AA'S (AUTHOR'S ALTERATIONS) These are not so rare. Author's alterations are changes to the approved text or layout of the work. If the change originates with the designer, the designer is responsible. If it originates with the client or author, she or he is responsible. Keeping records of each phase of a project's development is helpful in assigning blame later. Designers can charge the client a fee for the AA on top of the printer's fee, as the designer must correct the file, print out new hard copy, get the client's approval (again), communicate with the printer (again), and so on. If agreed to in advance, designers can charge AA fees for *any* change to an approved document, even before the printer's proof is issued.

EA'S (EDITOR'S ALTERATIONS) Errors made by the editor are the responsibility of the editor's employer, typically the client or publisher of the work. Good editors help prevent everyone's errors from occurring in the first place.

For more detailed information about the editorial process, see *The Chicago Manual of Style, 15th Edition* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2003).

Manuscript editing, also called copyediting or line editing, requires attention to every word in a manuscript, a thorough knowledge of the style to be followed, and the ability to make quick, logical, and defensible decisions. —THE CHICAGO MANUAL OF STYLE, 2003

Only an editor can see beyond a writer's navel.

No matter how brilliant your prose, an editor will discover errors in spelling, grammar, consistency, redundancy, and construction.

Writers should not over-format their texts.

The time you spend fiddling with formatting will be spent again by the editor and/or designer, removing extra keystrokes. Provide flush left copy, in one font, double-spaced.

Some lessons learned in high school are best forgotten.

One of them is dotting your i's with hearts and smiley faces. The other is leaving two spaces between sentences. In typesetting, one space only must be left between sentences.

The space bar is not a design tool.

Don't use the space bar to create indents (just key in a single tab), and don't use extra spaces to create centered effects or layouts (unless you really are E. E. Cummings).

Every change threatens to introduce new errors.

Each time a file is "corrected," new errors can appear, from problems with rags, justification, and page breaks to spelling mistakes, missing words, and botched or incomplete corrections.

Don't wait for the proofs to seriously examine the typeset text.

Changes made after a printer's proof has been made (blue line, press proof, or other) are expensive. They also will slow down your project, which, of course, is already late.

Famous last words: "We'll catch it in the blue lines."

EDITING HARD COPY

~~delete~~
delete

pose trans
transpose

~~let it stand~~
stet ("let it stand")

add space
separate; add space

=
second rate
add hyphen

left-over
remove hyphen

^M
Dashing-no?
em dash (—)

^N
1914-1918
en dash (–)

italic
italic

boldface
boldface

~~remove underline~~
remove underline

~~case~~
lowercase

case
uppercase

case
small caps

Writers, editors, and designers use special symbols to mark changes such as ~~deleting~~, posing trans, or ^{substituting} ~~correcting~~ words or phrases. If you change your mind about a ~~deletion~~, place dots beneath it. Remove a comma by circling it. Add a period with a circled dot. If two words run together, insert a straight line and a space mark.

run in To combine two paragraphs, connect them with a line and note the comment "run-in" in the margin. (Circling notes prevents the typesetter from confusing comments with content.)

Insert two short lines to hyphenate a word such as second ⁼rate. When removing a hyphen, close up the left [Ⓢ]over space. To replace a hyphen with an em dash-a symbol that expresses a grammatical break-write a tiny ^Mm above the hyphen. If a manuscript indicates dashes with double hyphens--like this--the typesetter or designer is expected to convert them without being told.

Use an en dash, not a hyphen, to connect two numbers, such as 1914-1918. ^N

In addition to correcting grammar, spelling, punctuation, and clarity of prose, editors indicate typographic styles such as italic (with an underscore) and **boldface** (with a wavy line). Underlining, which is rarely used in formal typography, is removed like this. Draw ~~A~~ line through ~~A~~ Capital ~~letter~~ to change it to lowercase. underline a letter with three strokes to capitalize it.

Use two underlines to indicate small capitals.

Double-space the manuscript and leave a generous margin to provide room for comments and corrections. Align the text flush left, ragged right, and disable automatic hyphenation.

Don't mark manuscripts or proofs with Post-It notes. They can fall off, block the text, and make the document hard to photocopy.

Editing an electronic file and allowing the author to see the changes is called *redlining* (also referred to as “editing online”). Basic housekeeping includes removing all double spaces and converting hatches (a.k.a. “dumb quotes”) to quotation marks and apostrophes (a.k.a. “smart quotes”). The editor need not point out these changes to the author.

Changes to the structure and wording of the text must be communicated to the author. A visual convention is needed for showing ~~deleted~~ and **added** material. Words to be removed are typically struck out, and words **added or substituted** can be underlined, **highlighted**, or **rendered in color**. A line in the margin indicates that a change has been recommended. [Queries to the author are set off with brackets.]^A

Underlining or striking out punctuation is visually confusing, so the editor often strikes out an entire word, ~~or phrase,~~ **or phrase**—and types in the freshly punctuated passage as an addition. To hyphenate a word such as ~~secondrate~~ **second-rate**, strike it out and add the hyphenated form. When converting hyphens to en dashes (1914–18)—or changing double hyphens to em dashes—the editor simply keys them in. Typographic styles such as *italic*, **boldface**, and small capitals can also be changed directly.

Although redlining is wonderfully fluid and direct, it can be dangerous. The editor must scrupulously remove all traces of the editing process before releasing the file for design and typesetting. Potential disasters include words that are stucktogether, a missing , or a forgotten comment to the author [**Are you out of your mother-loving mind?**].

A. Queries to the author can also take the form of footnotes. Identify these notes with letters, so they are not confused with footnotes that belong to the text.

PROOFREADING

PROOFREADING takes place *after* an edited manuscript has been designed and typeset. New errors can appear at any time during the handling of a document, and old errors previously unrecognized—can leap to the eye once the text has been set in type. The proofreader corrects gross errors in spelling, grammar, and fact, but avoids changes in style and content. Changes at this stage are not only expensive but they can affect the page design and introduce new problems.

Proofreading is a different task from editing, although the editor may play a role in it, along with or in addition to the author or client. Although the designer or typesetter should not be given the role of proof reader, designers must nonetheless inspect their work carefully for errors before sending it back to the editor, author, or client.

Mark all corrections in the margin of the proof, and indicate the position of changes within the text. Don't write between the lines. Many of the same interline symbols are used in proofreading and in copy editing, but proofreaders use an additional set of flags for marginal notes.

Don't obliterate what is being crossed out ~~and deleted~~, so the typesetter can read it.

Mark all changes on one master proof. If several copies of the proof are circulated for approval, one person (usually the editor) is responsible for transferring corrections to a master copy.

Don't give the designer a proof with conflicting or indecisive comments.

TYPES OF PROOFS Depending on how a project is organized and produced, some or all of the following proofs may be involved.

Galley proofs are typically supplied in a book-length project. They consist of text that has been typeset but not paginated and do not yet include illustrations.

Page proofs are broken into pages and include illustrations, page numbers, running heads, and other details.

Revised proofs include changes that have been recommended by the proofreader and input by the designer or typesetter.

Printer's proofs are generated by the printer. At this phase, changes become increasingly costly, complex, and ill-advised. In theory, one is only looking for printers' errors—not errors in design or verbal style—at this stage. Printer's proofs might include blue lines (one color only) and/or color proofs.

1. The designer and typesetter may be the same person. In a design studio, as opposed to a publishing house, designers are generally responsible for typesetting.

EDITORIAL CHANGE	MARK IN TEXT	MARK IN MARGIN	EDITORIAL CHANGE	MARK IN TEXT	MARK IN MARGIN
delete	delete		letterspace	letterspace	ls
delete and close up	delete and close up		close up	close up	
let it stand (stet)	let it stand	stet	insert space	insert space	#
insert text or character	insert	text	reduce space	reduce space	less #
run in paragraph	run in	run in	transpose	posetrans	tr
start new paragraph	start new paragraph	¶	flush right	flush right	fr
insert punctuation	insert punctuation	^	flush left	flush left	fl
change punctuation	change punctuation	^	indent 1 em	indent 1 em	□
insert hyphen	insert hyphen	=	move to next line	move to next line	T.O.
insert parentheses	insert parentheses	(/)	superscript	superscript	1
insert en or em dash	insert en dash	N M	align vertically	align vertically	||
insert quotes	insert quotes	“ ”	align horizontally	align horizontally	==
capitalize	capitalize	cap	spell out abbreviation	spell out abbrev.	sp
change to lowercase	LOWERCASE	lc	use ligature	use ligature (flour)	f
change to small caps	small caps	sc	query that cannot be resolved by proofreader	query	?
change to bold	bold	bf			
change to roman	roman	rom			
wrong font	wrong font	wf			

Proofreader's marks derived from The Chicago Manual of Style and David Jury, About Face: Reviving the Rules of Typography (East Sussex: Rotovision, 2001). Marking conventions do vary slightly from source to source.

FREE ADVICE

Think more, design less.

Many desperate acts of design (including gradients, drop shadows, and the gratuitous use of transparency) are perpetrated in the absence of a strong concept. A good idea provides a framework for design decisions, guiding the work.

Say more, write less.

Just as designers should avoid filling up space with arbitrary visual effects, writers should remember that no one loves their words as much as they do.

Spend more, buy less.

Cheap stuff is usually cheap because of how it's made, what it's made of, and who made it. Buy better quality goods, less often.

May your thoughts be deep and your wounds be shallow.

Always work with a sharp blade. Although graphic design is not a terribly dangerous occupation, many late-night accidents occur involving dull X-Acto blades. Protect your printouts from senseless bloodshed.

Density is the new white space.

In an era of exurban sprawl, closely knit neighborhoods have renewed appeal. So, too, on page and screen, where a rich texture of information can function better than sparseness and isolation.

Make the shoe fit, not the foot.

Rather than force content into rigid containers, create systems that are flexible and responsive to the material they are intended to accommodate.

Make it bigger. (Courtesy of Paula Scher)

Amateur typographers make their type too big. The 12-pt default—which looks okay on the screen—often looks horsey on the page. Experienced designers, however, make their type too tiny: shown here, 7.5-pt Scala Pro.

It is easier to talk than to listen.

Pay attention to your clients, your users, your readers, and your friends. Your design will get better as you listen to other people.

Design is an art of situations.

Designers respond to a need, a problem, a circumstance, that arises in the world. The best work is produced in relation to interesting situations—an open-minded client, a good cause, or great content.

No job is too small.

A graphic designer can set out to change the world one business card at a time—as long as it is the business card of a really interesting person.

An interface calls attention to itself at its point of failure.

Design helps the systems of daily life run smoothly, letting users and readers ignore how things are put together. Design should sometimes announce itself in order to shed light on the system, exposing its construction, identity, personality, and politics.

The idea is the machine that makes the art. (Courtesy of Sol Lewitt)

A powerful concept can drive decisions about color, layout, type choice, format, and so on, preventing senseless acts of whimsy. (On the other hand, senseless acts of whimsy sometimes lead to powerful concepts.)

The early bird gets to work before everyone else.

Your best time for thinking could be early in the morning, late at night, or even, in rare circumstances, during class or between nine and five. Whether your best time is in the shower, at the gym, or on the train, use it for your hardest thinking.

Build the discourse.

Design is social. It lives in society, it creates society, and it needs a society of its own—a community of designers committed to advancing and debating our shared hopes and desires. Read, write, and talk about design whenever you can.

Go forth and reproduce.

LETTER

- Bartram, Alan. *Five Hundred Years of Book Design*. London: British Library, 2001.
- Benjamin, Walter. *One Way Street and Other Writings*. London: Verso, 1978.
- Blackwell, Lewis. *Twentieth-Century Type*. New Haven: Yale University Press, 2004.
- Boyerski, Dan, Christine Neuwirth, Jodi Forlizzi, and Susan Harkness Regli. "A Study of Fonts Designed for Screen Display." *CHI* 98 (April 1998): 18–23.
- Broos, Kees, and Paul Hefting. *Dutch Graphic Design: A Century*. Cambridge: MIT Press, 1993.
- Burke, Christopher. *Paul Renner: The Art of Typography*. New York: Princeton Architectural Press, 1998.
- Clouse, Doug and Angela Voulagas. *The Handy Book of Artistic Printing*. New York: Princeton Architectural Press, 2009.
- Christin, Anne-Marie. *A History of Writing, from Hieroglyph to Multimedia*. Paris: Flammarion, 2002.
- Crouwel, Wim. *New Alphabet: An Introduction for a Programmed Typography*. Amsterdam: Wim Crouwel/Total Design, 1967.
- , Kees Broos, and David Quay. *Wim Crouwel: Alphabets*. Amsterdam: BIS Publishers, 2003.
- Cruz, Andy, Ken Barber, and Rich Roat. *House Industries*. Berlin: Die Gestalten Verlag, 2004.
- De Jong, Ceas, Alston W. Purvis, and Jan Tholenaar, eds. *Type: A Visual History of Typefaces, Volume 1, 1628–1900*. Cologne: Taschen, 2009.
- Eason, Ron, and Sarah Rookledge. *Rookledge's International Directory of Type Designers: A Biographical Handbook*. New York: Sarabande Press, 1994.
- Gray, Nicolette. *A History of Lettering*. Oxford: Phaidon Press, 1986.
- Heller, Steven, and Philip B. Meggs, eds. *Texts on Type: Critical Writings on Typography*. New York: Allworth Press, 2001.
- Johnston, Edward. *Writing & Illuminating & Lettering*. London: Sir Isaac Pitman & Sons, 1932.
- Kelly, Rob Roy. *American Wood Type: 1828–1900*. New York: Da Capo Press, 1969.
- Kinross, Robin. *Unjustified Texts: Perspectives on Typography*. London: Hyphen Press, 2002.
- Lawson, Alexander. *Anatomy of a Typeface*. Boston: David R. Godine, 1990.
- Lewis, John. *Anatomy of Printing: The Influences of Art and History on its Design*. New York: Watson-Guptill Publications, 1970.
- . *Typography: Basic Principles, Influences and Trends Since the Nineteenth Century*. New York: Reinhold Publishing, 1963.
- McMurtrie, Douglas. *The Book: The Story of Printing and Bookmaking*. New York: Dorset Press, 1943.
- Morison, Stanley. *Letter Forms*. London: Nattali & Maurice, 1968.
- Noordzij, Gerrit. *Letterletter: An Inconsistent Collection of Tentative Theories That Do Not Claim Any Authority Other Than That of Common Sense*. Vancouver: Hartley and Marks, 2000.
- Pardoe, F. E. *John Baskerville of Birmingham: Letter-Founder and Printer*. London: Frederick Muller Limited, 1975.
- Perry, Michael. *Hand Job: A Catalog of Type*. New York: Princeton Architectural Press, 2007.

- Shelley, Mary. *Frankenstein*. New York: The Modern Library, 1999. First published 1831.
- Re, Margaret. *Typographically Speaking: The Art of Matthew Carter*. New York: Princeton Architectural Press, 2002.
- Triggs, Teal. *The Typographic Experiment: Radical Innovation in Contemporary Type Design*. London: Thames & Hudson, 2003.
- Updike, Daniel. *Printing Types: Their History, Forms, and Use, Volumes I and II*. New York: Dover Publications, 1980.
- VanderLans, Rudy, and Zuzana Licko. *Emigre: Graphic Design into the Digital Realm*. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1993.
- Vanderlans, Rudy. *Emigre No. 70: The Look Back Issue, Selections from Emigre Magazine, 1984–2009*. Berkeley, CA: Gingko Press, 2009.
- Willen, Bruce and Nolen Strals. *Lettering & Type: Creating Letters and Designing Typefaces*. New York: Princeton Architectural Press, 2009.

TEXT

- Armstrong, Helen. *Graphic Design Theory: Readings from the Field*. New York: Princeton Architectural Press, 2009.
- Barthes, Roland. *Image/Music/Text*. Trans. Stephen Heath. New York: Hill and Wang, 1977.
- . *Mythologies*. Trans. Annette Lavers. New York: Hill and Wang, 1977.
- Baudrillard, Jean. *For a Critique of the Political Economy of the Sign*. St. Louis, MO: Telos Press, 1981.
- Benjamin, Walter. *Reflections*. Ed. Peter Demetz. New York: Schocken Books, 1978.
- Bierut, Michael. *Forty Posters for the Yale School of Architecture*. Cohoes, NY: Mohawk Fine Papers, 2007.
- Bolter, Jay David. *Writing Space: Computers, Hypertext, and the Remediation of Print*. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, 2001.
- Derrida, Jacques. *Of Grammatology*. Trans. Gayatri Chakravorty Spivak. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1976.
- Diamond, Jared. *Guns, Germs, and Steel: The Fates of Human Societies*. New York: W. W. Norton, 1997.
- Kaplan, Nancy. "Blake's Problem and Ours: Some Reflections on the Image and the Word." *Readerly/Writerly Texts*, 3.2 (Spring/Summer 1996): 115–33.
- Gould, John D. et al. "Reading from CRT Displays Can Be as Fast as Reading from Paper." *Human Factors* 29, 5 (1987): 497–517.
- Helfand, Jessica. *Screen: Essays on Graphic Design, New Media, and Visual Culture*. New York: Princeton Architectural Press, 2001.
- Lessig, Lawrence. *Free Culture: How Big Media Uses Technology and the Law to Lock Down Culture and Control Creativity*. New York: Penguin, 2004.
- Laurel, Brenda. *Utopian Entrepreneur*. Cambridge: MIT Press, 2001.
- Lunenfeld, Peter. *Snap to Grid: A User's Guide to Digital Arts, Media, and Cultures*. Cambridge: MIT Press, 2001.
- Manovich, Lev. *The Language of New Media*. Cambridge: MIT Press, 2002.
- McCoy, Katherine and Michael McCoy. *Cranbrook Design: The New Discourse*. New York: Rizzoli, 1990.
- . "American Graphic Design Expression." *Design Quarterly* 148 (1990): 4–22.

- McLuhan, Marshall. *The Gutenberg Galaxy*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1962.
- Millman, Debbie. *The Essential Principles of Graphic Design*. Cincinnati: How, 2008.
- Moulthrop, Stuart. "You Say You Want a Revolution? Hypertext and the Laws of Media" in *The New Media Reader*. Noah Wardrip-Fruin and Nick Monfort, eds. Cambridge: MIT Press, 2003. 691–703.
- Nielsen, Jakob. *Designing Web Usability*. Indianapolis: New Riders, 2000.
- Ong, Walter. *Orality and Literacy: The Technologizing of the Word*. New York: Methuen, 1982.
- Raskin, Jef. *The Human Interface: New Directions for Designing Interactive Systems*. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 2000.
- Ronell, Avital. *The Telephone Book: Technology, Schizophrenia, Electric Speech*. Lincoln, NE: University of Nebraska Press, 1989.
- ## GRID
- Berners-Lee, Tim. *Weaving the Web: The Original Design and Ultimate Destiny of the World Wide Web*. New York: HarperCollins, 1999.
- Bosshard, Hans Rudolf. *Der Typografische Raster/The Typographic Grid*. Sulgen, Switzerland: Verlag Niggli, 2000.
- Cantz, Hatje. *Karl Gerstner: Review of 5 x 10 Years of Graphic Design etc.* Ostfildern-Ruit, Germany: Hatje Cantz Verlag, 2001.
- Elam, Kimberly. *Geometry of Design*. New York: Princeton Architectural Press, 2001.
- Gerstner, Karl. *Designing Programmes*. Sulgen, Switzerland: Arthur Niggli Ltd., 1964.
- Gibson, William. *Neuromancer*. New York: Ace Books, 1984.
- Higgins, Hannah P. *The Grid Book*. Cambridge: MIT Press, 2009.
- Hochuli, Jost, and Robin Kinross. *Designing Books: Practice and Theory*. London: Hyphen Press, 1996.
- Krauss, Rosalind. "Grids" in *The Originality of the Avant-Garde and Other Modernist Myths*. Cambridge: MIT Press, 1985. 9–22.
- Küsters, Christian and Emily King. *Restart: New Systems in Graphic Design*. London: Thames and Hudson, 2002.
- Lidwell, William, Kritina Holden, and Jill Butler. *Universal Principles of Design*. Gloucester, MA: Rockport Publishers, 2003.
- Müller-Brockmann, Josef. *The Graphic Artist and his Design Problems*. Sulgen, Switzerland: Arthur Niggli Ltd., 1961.
- . *Grid Systems in Graphic Design*. Santa Monica: Ram Publications, 1996. First published in 1961.
- . *A History of Graphic Communication*. Sulgen, Switzerland: Arthur Niggli Ltd., 1971.
- Nicolai, Carsten. *Grid Index*. Berlin: Die Gestalten, 2009.
- Roberts, Lucienne, and Julia Shrift. *The Designer and the Grid*. East Sussex, UK: RotoVision, 2002.
- Rothschild, Deborah, Ellen Lupton, and Darra Goldstein. *Graphic Design in the Mechanical Age: Selections from the Merrill C. Berman Collection*. New Haven: Yale University Press, 1999.
- Ruder, Emil. *Typography*. Sulgen, Switzerland: Arthur Niggli Ltd., New York: Hastings House, 1981. First published in 1967.
- Rüegg, Ruedi. *Basic Typography: Design with Letters*. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1989.
- Samara, Timothy. *Making and Breaking the Grid: A Graphic Design Layout Workshop*. Gloucester, MA: Rockport Publishers, 2002.
- Tufte, Edward R. *Envisioning Information*. Cheshire, CT: Graphics Press, 1990.
- . *The Cognitive Style of PowerPoint*. Cheshire, CT: Graphics Press, 2003.
- Zeldman, Jeffrey with Ethan Marcotte. *Designing with Web Standards*, Third Edition. Berkeley, CA: New Riders, 2009.
- ## MANUALS AND MONOGRAPHS
- Baines, Phil, and Andrew Haslam. *Type and Typography*. New York: Watson-Guip Publications, 2002.
- Bringhurst, Robert. *The Elements of Typographic Style*. Vancouver: Hartley and Marks, 1992, 1997.
- . *The Chicago Manual of Style, 15th Edition*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2003.
- Dwiggins, W. A. *Layout in Advertising*. New York: Harper and Brothers Publishers, 1928.
- Eckersley, Richard et al. *Glossary of Typesetting Terms*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1994.
- Felton, Paul. *Type Heresy: Breaking the Ten Commandments of Typography*. London: Merrell, 2006.
- French, Nigel. *InDesign Type: Professional Typography with Adobe InDesign CS2*. Berkeley, CA: Peachpit Press, 2006.
- Jardi, Enric. *Twenty-Two Tips on Typography (That Some Designers Will Never Reveal)*. Barcelona: Actar, 2007.
- Jury, David. *About Face: Reviving the Rules of Typography*. East Sussex, UK: RotoVision, 2001.
- Kane, John. *A Type Primer*. London: Laurence King, 2002.
- Kunz, Willi. *Typography: Macro- and Micro-Aesthetics*. Sulgen, Switzerland: Verlag Arthur Niggli, 1998.
- Lupton, Ellen and J. Abbott Miller. *Design Writing Research: Writing on Graphic Design*. London: Paidon, 1999.
- Lupton, Ellen and Jennifer Cole Phillips. *Graphic Design: The New Basics*. New York: Princeton Architectural Press, 2008.
- Lynch, Patrick, and Sarah Horton. *Web Style Guide: Basic Design Principles for Creating Web Sites*. New Haven: Yale University Press, 2001.
- Millman, Debbie. *The Essential Principles of Graphic Design*. Cincinnati: How, 2008.
- Rosendorf, Theodore. *The Typographic Desk Reference*. New Castle: Oak Knoll, 2008.
- Samara, Timothy. *Typography Workbook: A Real-World Guide to Using Type in Graphic Design*. Beverly, MA: Rockport, 2004.
- Scher, Paula. *Make It Bigger*. New York: Princeton Architectural Press, 2002.
- Spiekermann, Erik, and E. M. Ginger. *Stop Stealing Sheep and Find Out How Type Works*. Mountain View, CA: Adobe Press, 1993.
- Strizver, Ilene. *Type Rules: The Designer's Guide to Professional Typography*. Cincinnati: North Light Books, 2001.
- Strunk, William Jr. and E. B. White. *The Elements of Style*. Illustrated by Maira Kalman. New York: Penguin Press, 2005.
- Tschichold, Jan. *The Form of the Book: Essays on the Morality of Good Design*. Point Roberts, WA: Hartley & Marks, 1991.

Abbink, Mike 70

Abrams, Jan 187

accent characters 210

accessibility 136, 171

Adobe 80, 93

Adobe Caslon 104

Adobe Garamond 40

Adobe Garamond Premiere Pro 41

Adobe Garamond Pro 48, 56, 80

Adobe Jenson 14

advertising 24

Agenda 69

AIGA 7

Albers, Josef 27

alignment 112, 114–19

Alternate Gothic No.1 83

Alvarez, James 78

Amazon.com 95

Amazon Kindle 92

American Type Founders

Company (ATF) 83

Amusement Magazine 53

anti-aliasing 73

antique Tuscan type style 23

antique type style 23

Antykwa Poltawskiego 82

apostrophe 58–59

Apple 80

Apple Chancery 80

Arbello, Daniel 119

Architecture for Humanity 200

Arnhem 33

Arthur Niggli 169, 194, 197

Arts and Crafts movement 27

ascender 19, 36, 37

ATF 40, 83

Audimat 82

author's alteration 212

authorship 89, 95–97

auto leading 198

auto spacing 108

Balmond, Cecil 117

Bantjes, Marian 60

Barbara, Vanessa 110

Barber, Ken 76

Barbour, Urshula 43, 200

Barthes, Roland 83, 92–97

baseline 36, 37, 120, 123

baseline grid 98–99

baseline shift 108

Baskerville 39, 47

Baskerville, John 16–17, 19, 46

Baudrillard, Jean 126–27

Bauhaus 26–27

Baumeister, Willi 161

Bayer, Herbert 26–27, 162, 165

Bembo 15

Bender, Kim 119

Benjamin, Walter 24

Benton, Morris Fuller 40, 83

Beowulf 31

Berners-Lee, Tim 174

Bevington, William 9

Bickham, George 17

Bierut, Michael 101, 142–43

Bilak, Peter 63, 72

Bill, Max 165–67

bitmap typeface 29, 73–74, 78–79

blackletter 13

Blechman, Nicholas 124

van Blokland, Erik 31

Bodoni 22–23, 39, 41, 47, 54, 58

Bodoni, Giambattista 16–17, 46

body text 87, 92, 126

Bolter, Jay David 100

Boston Public Library 21

bowl 36

branding 68–71, 100, 193

Brezina, David 72

Bringinghurst, Robert 16, 17

Buivenga, Jos 82

Burdick, Anne 139

Burk, Katie 144

Burke, Christopher 27

Burns, Charles 141

Büro für konkrete Gestaltung 183

Butler, Jill 174

Calligraphy 13, 46

cap height 36–37

capitals 19, 52, 104–105, 120

caption 130

Carlos, Paul 43, 200

Carter, Matthew 55, 72

Carton Donofrio Partners 171

Cascading Style Sheets

See CSS

Caslon 540 104

Caslon, William 16, 17

Centaur 14

Centennial 31

centered alignment 24, 112, 114, 118, 120

chart 203–206

Chase, Kapila 119

Cheuk, Deanne 65

Ching, Jason 44

Cho, Peter 73

Clarendon 23, 47

Cleland, Thomas Maitland 40

CNN crawl 92

colon 210

Colter, Angela 137

COMA 117

Comic Sans 80

comma 58, 210

Connor, Bryan 79

Constructivism 160–61, 163

copy editing 212

copyright 89, 92

Cosac Naify 110

counter 36

Cranbrook Academy of Art 97

cross bar 36

Crouwel, Wim 28–29

Cruz, Andy 76

CSS 72, 125, 135, 144–45, 172, 198

curly quote 58–59

Cyan 189

cyberspace 86, 174

Dada 98, 160, 161

Dance Ink Magazine 61

Danzico, Liz 72

dash 211

database 93

data prison 204

data table 205–207

datum 181

Davis, Joshua 173

Day, Colin 136

Dead History 31

Deck, Barry 31

Demak, Cadson 60

Derrida, Jacques 91, 153

descender 19, 36–37

desktop publishing 29

De Stijl 26–27, 160–61, 163

Detroit Focus Gallery 30

developmental editing 212

Didot 22–23, 53

Didot, Firmin 19

Didot, François-Ambroise 16

Dirty Ego 83

discretionary hyphen 210

Distler, Joshua 70

Dixon, Chris 52, 55

van Doesburg, Theo 26, 161

Double Pica 21

Downcome 83

Doyle, Stephen 42

Drenttel, William 101

dropped capitals 124–25, 128

Drouet, Minou 83

dry transfer lettering 111

Duenes, Steve 170

Duffy & Partners 71, 105

dumb quotes 58, 210

Dwiggins, W. A. 115

Eaves, Sarah 39

Eckersley, Richard 90

Edenspiekermann 69

editing 212–14

editing hard copy 214

editing soft copy 215

editor's alterations 212

Eggers, Dave 49, 141

Egyptian 22, 23, 46, 50, 55

Elam, Kimberly 177

Elazegui, Kate 140

Elementar 75

ellipsis 210–11

em dash 210–11

Emigre magazine 29

Emigre Fonts 31, 61, 74

em space 126

en dash 210–11

end user license agreement 82

engraving 17, 124, 172

enlarged capitals 124–25

en space 210

EULA. See end user license

agreement.

Exclamation Communications 136

Ex Ljbris 82

Fantaisie Kapitalen 62

Farrell, Stephen 116

fat face 22, 50

Fedra 72

Fella, Ed 30, 31

Fernando, Sasha 143

Ferreira, Gustavo 75

finial 36

Five Line Pica 21

Flash 33, 172

flush left alignment 112–19, 202

flush right alignment 113–18

font embedding 72

font formats 80

Fontin 82

Fontlab 76

font licensing 82

FontShop International 33, 80

framing 71, 153

Franklin, Benjamin 17

Frere-Jones, Tobias 32, 55, 57

Frutiger, Adrian 50, 55, 75

Fry and Steele 60

Futura 26–27, 47, 54, 56

Futurism 98, 160–61, 163

Garamond 15, 29

Garamond 3 40, 49

Garamond, Claude 40

Garamond Premiere Pro 40

Gaultney, Victor 82

Geeraerts, Rudy 33

Gentium 82

geometric sans serif 46

Georgia 72
 Gerstner, Karl 165, 169, 194–95
 Ghiotti, Michelle 79
 Gibson, William 174
 Gill, Eric 46
 Gill Sans 46, 47
 Glaser, Milton 55
 glyph 59, 80, 81
 Glypha 53, 55
 golden rectangle 177
 golden section 176, 177
 Golden Type 14
 Gotham 32
 gothic type style 22
 Goudy, Frederic W. 82
 Goudy Old Style 82
 Gould, John D. 98
 Grandjean, Philippe 16
 Grant, Whitney 104
 graph 170, 204
 graphical user interface 98, 151
 Great Primer 21
 Greek alphabet 91
 Greta 72
 grid 17, 78, 126, 151
 Griffo, Francesco 15
 de Groot, Lu(cas) 51
 Guggenheim Museum 55
 gui 151
 GUI 98
 Gutenberg 153
 Gutenberg, Johannes 13

Halpern, John 205
 hanging indentation 127
 hanging punctuation 58, 116
 hang line 181
 hatch mark 58–59, 210–11
 Hayman, Luke 140
 HCI 97, 98
 headline 140
 Helvetica 39, 46, 47, 82
 Helevetica Neue 54, 56, 58
 Helfand, Jessica 101
 Henderson, Hayes 86
 hierarchy 42, 132–48, 180, 192
 Hillyer, Jason 172
 History 63
 Hoefler & Frere-Jones 77
 Hoefler, Jonathan 55, 77
 Hoefler Text 80
 Hoffman, Jeremy 63
 Hoffman, Kevin 137
 Hogg, Jason 107
 Holden, Kritina 174
 Hopkinson, Francis 21
 horizontal and vertical scaling 38
 Horton, Sarah 171

House Industries 76
 Howard, Karen 129
 Hsu, Nelson 145
 html 126, 135, 170, 171, 172
 human-computer interaction
 97, 98
 humanist sans serif 46
 humanist type classification
 15, 46
 Huszár, Vilmos 26
 hyphen 210, 211

Identify design 68–71
 Imprimerie Royale, Paris 15
 indent 126–32
 InDesign 52, 58, 76, 80, 93, 103,
 125, 198
 Ingles, Brian 192
 interaction design 98
 interface design 97, 99
 Interstate 38, 39
 italic 15, 19, 48, 50, 81
 ITC Garamond 40

Jampathom, May 104
 Jannon, Jean 15
 Jenson 14–15
 Jenson, Nicolas 14–15
 Jeremy Tankard Typography 80
 Joh. Enchedé & Zohnen 62
 Johnston, Edward 27
 Jury, David 217
 justified alignment 112–19

Kane, John 177
 Kaplan, Nancy 9, 93
 Kelly, Rob Roy 23
 kerning 102–105
 Khan, Farha 200
 Kim, Jacqueline 143
 Kim, Julia 79
 Kinross, Robin 27
 Koberger, Anton 152
 Kogan, Sabrina 146
 Kolthar, Marcos 107
 Kraus, Karl 139
 Kroh, Mary Lou 97
 Kudos, Johnschén 106, 118

Laan, Paul van der 70
 Lansing, Bill 115
 Latin alphabet 81, 91, 120
 Latin type style 23
 Laurel, Brenda 99
 leading 108
 League Gothic 83
 League of Moveable Type 82, 83
 Leong, Michelle 143

Lessig, Lawrence 89
lettera antica 15
 lettering 64, 66
 letterpress 24, 60, 91, 108, 124,
 151, 153, 160, 161, 172
 letterspacing 104
 Levush, Efrat 119
 Lewitt, Sol 219
 Libner, K. 192
 Licko, Zuzana 29, 32, 61, 74
 Lidwell, William 174
 ligature 13, 36, 210
 linearity 92–93
 linearization 136, 137, 171
 line spacing 38, 108–11, 132, 198
 lining numerals 56
 Linotype 55
 Lissitzky, El 160, 161
 lithography 172
 Litscher, Alice 53
 logotype 68–71, 193
 Long Primer 21
 Lopez, Paulo 144
 Lo-Res 29, 74
 Louis XIV 17
 lowercase 36
 Lubalin, Herb 105
 Lubbock, Sir John 207
 Lukas, Jenn 137
 Lunenfeld, Peter 100
 Lupton, Ellen 124
 Lutz, Benjamin 118
 Lynch, Patrick 171

Majoor, Martin 32, 50, 80
 Makela, P. Scott 31, 97
 Mall, Dan 137
 Mangold, Andy 147
 Manovich, Lev 93
 manuscript editing 212
 Manutius, Aldus 15
 Mapes, Andrew 143
 Marcotte, Ethan 135, 171
 Marinetti, F. T. 160–61
 Marks, Andrea 121
 Martin, Betsy 144
 Maryland Institute College of Art
 7, 78, 106, 118, 147
 Mau, Bruce 35
 Maurer, Luna 175
 Mauro, Darren 192
 McClean, Brendon 78
 McCoy, Katherine 97
 McLean, Ruari 23
 McLuhan, Marshall 89
McSweeney's 49
 Mercury 77
 metric kerning 102, 103

Mevis and Van Deursen 187
 Meyers, Dan 35, 90, 97, 117, 169,
 185, 187
 Meyers, Emil 197
 Michelet, Charles 172
 Microsoft 72, 80
 Miedinger, Max 46
 Miller 52, 55
 Miller, Abbott 55, 61, 63, 109
 Misproject 83
 mixing typefaces 54
 modern type classification 19, 46
 modular grid 194–203
 Mondrian, Piet 161
 Morris, William 14
 Moulthrop, Stuart 9, 100
 movable type 13, 89, 118
 Mr Eaves 32, 39
 Mrozowski, Nick 130
 Mrs Eaves 32, 39
 Müller-Brockmann, Josef 165,
 174, 195
 multicolumn grid 161, 180–92
 Myriad 134

Neese, Wendy 78
 nerd alerts 58, 80, 103, 108,
 126, 198
 Netherlands Design Institute 187
 new alphabet 28, 29
New York Magazine 52
 Neylan, Callie 144, 192
 Niedich, Warren 43
 Nielsen, John D. 98
 Nix, Charles 104
 non-lining numerals 19, 50, 56
 Noordzij, Gerrit 14, 15
 Nowacki, Janusz Marian 82
 NPR.org 192
 numerals 56
 Nunoo-Quarcoo, Franc 129

Obama, Barack 32
 OFL 82
 OFL Sorts Mill Goudy 82
 old-style numerals. *See non-lining numerals.*
 old style type classification 46
 Ong, Walter 91, 118
 Open Font License (OFL) 82
 OpenType 50, 52, 74, 80
 optical kerning 102–103
 optical sizes 41
 Orcutt, William Dana 19, 155
 ornament 60–63, 128
 Österreichische Akademie der
 Wissenschaften 139
 OurType.com 33

INDEX

- outdent 127
- overhang 37
- P**alatio 15
- pantograph 23
- Panuska, Genevieve 143
- Papyrus 80
- paragraph 126–28
- paragraph-spacing 126–28
- Parðoe, F. E. 17
- Pearce, Harry 44
- Pentagram 44, 63, 123, 140, 142–44
- Phaidon 35, 185
- Photoshop 73, 76
- pica 38
- Pica Roman 21
- pixel 73, 74
- Plantin, Christopher 155
- Plumb Design Inc. 94
- point system 38
- Póltawski, Adam 82
- polyglot 153, 155
- Porter, Mark 131
- postmodernism 174
- PostScript 29, 74, 80
- Potts, Joey 78
- Powell, Kerrie 142
- PowerPoint 93
- prime mark 58, 211
- printer's error 212
- proofreading 89, 92, 212, 216, 217
- pseudo small caps 52
- punch 15, 41
- punctuation 58, 91, 113
- Pure + Applied 43, 200
- Q**uad 126
- Quadraat 32, 33, 48, 54
- Quadraat Sans 54
- Quark XPress 93
- quotation mark 58, 59, 210, 211
- R**adar 140
- rag 113, 117
- Ramos, Elaine 110
- Raskin, Jef 97–99
- Recife, Eduardo 83
- redundancy 132
- Reed, Robert 172
- Reichert, Hans Dieter 185
- Renner, Paul 26–27, 162, 165
- Restraint 60
- Retina 57
- reversed type 104
- Revolver: Zeitschrift für Film* 45
- Richmond, Matthew 172
- river 90
- Rizzoli 97
- Roat, Rich 76
- Rogers, Bruce 14
- romain du roi 16, 17
- roman type 15, 50, 19, 81
- Romer, Thomas 172
- Ronell, Avital 90
- Roth, Max 167
- Roycroft Shop 114
- Ruder, Emil 165, 195, 197
- Ruit 14
- S**abon 46–47
- Sadek, George 9
- Saffron 70
- Sampaio, Maria Carolina 110
- Sandberg Institute 175
- sans serif 20, 50
- Santa Maria, Jason 72
- Sardón, Virginia 70
- Sasser, Virginia 79
- Scala 14, 32, 38, 50, 80
- Scala Pro 37, 39, 50, 80, 102, 108, 198
- Scala Sans 50
- Scala Sans Pro 56, 199
- scale 42–44
- Schedler, Clemens 183
- Scher, Paula 123, 218
- Schmidt, Gerwin 45
- Schreier, Gabor 70
- Schwartz, Barry 82
- Schwitters, Kurt 160
- Scotch Roman 55
- Seifert, Katharina 200
- semicolon 210
- serif 19, 23, 36, 50, 77
- set width 38, 57
- Sezione Aurea 134
- Sharon, Kevin 137
- Sharp, Jennifer 192
- Shelley, Mary 22
- Shortcut 83
- Simonneau, Louis 16
- Sinclair, Cameron 200
- single-column grid 156, 178, 179
- Skolar 72
- slab serif 22, 23, 46, 141
- Slimbach, Robert 14, 40, 48, 134
- Slogeris, Becky 79, 147
- small capitals 19, 36, 50, 52, 80, 104, 105, 125, 132
- smart quotes 58, 210
- Smeijers, Fred 32–33, 48
- SMeltery.net 82
- Smith, Januzzi 117
- Soleri, Paolo 111
- Solidarietà Internazionale* 134
- spacing 91–93, 99, 102–10, 120, 126, 132, 153
- Speakup 60
- Spilman, Kristen 63
- spine 36
- spread 179
- stacked letters 120, 121
- Stankowski, Anton 164
- Stankowski, Jochen 68
- Stan, Tony 40
- steel pen 17
- stem 36
- Stinson, Graham 135
- Stohr, Kate 200
- Strals, Nolen 66
- Stroud, Scott 192
- style guide 134
- style sheets 98, 135, 146
- sub-pixel 73
- superfamily 50
- Sutton, Jennifer 137
- Swiss design 165, 174
- T**26 60
- table 170
- Tankard, Jeremy 50
- Tarr, Patsy 109, 205
- Template Gothic 31
- terminal 36
- text numerals 56
- The Believer* 141
- The Chicago Manual of Style* 210, 212, 217
- The Chopping Block 172
- The Clapham Institute 136
- The Foundry 28
- The New Republic* 193
- Thesis 50, 51, 54, 125
- Times New Roman 125
- Tomasula, Steve 116
- Tonson, Jacob 114
- van Toorn, Jan 129
- Tory, Geofroy 16, 17
- tracking 104, 105, 125
- transitional sans serif 46
- transitional type classification 46
- Trilogy 50
- TrueType 74, 80
- Tschichold, Jan 46, 163–65, 167
- Tufte, Edward 93, 99, 171, 204
- Tuscan type style 23
- two-column grid 153, 156, 187
- Type 1 80
- type classification 45–46
- type crimes 38, 41, 42, 52, 54, 58, 104, 112, 113, 120, 127, 132, 204, 211
- typeface design 76–77
- type families 48, 77
- Typekit 72
- TypeTogether 72
- typographer's quotes 58
- Typotheque 72
- U**nderware 80
- Unicode 81
- Univers 50, 54, 75
- universal alphabet 26
- universal design 174
- uppercase 36
- usability design 97, 98
- Usine, Jack 82
- Utopia 134
- V**AG Rounded 31, 54
- VanderLans, Rudy 29
- van Rossum, Just 31
- Vardell, Betsy 101
- Verdana 72
- Verlag 52, 55
- versal 124
- vertical text 120–23
- Vinh, Khoi 191
- W**albaum, Justus Erich 16
- Wattanasansanee, Supisa 60
- web design 33, 69, 72–73, 93, 98, 100–101, 125–26, 131, 135–37, 144–45, 170–72, 173, 175–77, 191–93, 198
- web standards 135, 171
- Weese, Catherine 205
- Weyers, Justin 142
- Whirligigs 61
- white space 99, 191
- Willen, Bruce 78
- Williams, Heather 107
- wood type 23
- word space 210–11, 213
- World Wide Web 72
- Wright, David 145, 192
- Wright, Frank Lloyd 55
- X**-height 36–37
- Z**eldman, Jeffrey 135, 171
- Zhang, Lu 118
- Zwart, Piet 160–61

HELVETICA

Designed by **Max Miedinger**, 1957

HOEFLER TEXT

Designed by *Jonathan Hoefler*, c. 1995

INTERSTATE

Designed by **Tobias Frere-Jones**, 1993,
inspired by U.S. highway signs

ADOBE JENSON

Designed by *Robert Slimbach*, 1995

META

Designed by **Erik Spiekermann**, 1991

MRS EAVES

Designed by *Zuzana Licko*, 1996,
inspired by the types of *John Baskerville*

NEUTRAFACE

Designed by **Christian Schwartz**, House Industries,
2002, based on lettering created by the architect
Richard Neutra in the 1940s and 1950s

NOBEL

Designed by **Tobias Frere-Jones**, 1993,
based on 1929 types by the Dutch typographer
Sjoerd Henrik de Roos.
Frere-Jones describes Nobel as
"Futura cooked in a dirty pan."

NEWS GOTHIC

Designed by **Morris Fuller Benton**, 1908

QUADRAAT

Designed by *Fred Smeijers*, 1992

SABON

Designed by *Jan Tschichold*, 1966,
inspired by the sixteenth-century types of
Claude Garamond

SCALA

Designed by *Martin Majoor*, 1991

THESIS SERIF

Designed by **Lucas de Groot**, 1994

TRADE GOTHIC

Designed by **Jackson Burke**, 1948–60,
inspired by nineteenth-century grotesques

UNIVERS

Designed by **Adrian Frutiger**, 1957

VERDANA

Designed by **Matthew Carter**, 1996,
for display on screen

WALBAUM

Designed by *Justus Erich Walbaum*, 1800

PRAISE
FOR *Thinking with Type*

.....

Type is the foundation of print and web design. Everything you need to know about thinking with type, you will find here. This richly detailed update to the

CLASSIC
text belongs on the shelf of every designer, writer, editor, publisher, and client.

JEFFREY ZELDMAN
.....

This beautifully designed book on understanding typography fills a big

VOID.
It enables the reader to grasp the principles of typography through inspiring examples coupled with warm, straightforward explanations.

PAULA SCHER
.....

This book is essential reading for the design student and the perfect wake-up

DRUG
for the most stodgy of design experts.

JOHN MAEDA
.....

This engaging book offers principles without dogma and history without

ARCANA.

In short, it is a compendium for literate typographic practice.

ANDREW BLAUVELT
.....

Ellen Lupton is a stylish
TASKMASTER.
I couldn't put it down.
ABBOTT MILLER

Completely revised and expanded, the second edition of *Thinking with Type* provides even more examples, exercises, and useful information than the first edition, published in 2004, which was quickly recognized as an essential design tool. A blank page or screen confronts the designer with fundamental questions. What kind of typeface to use? How big? How should those letters, words, and paragraphs be aligned, spaced, ordered, and shaped? *Thinking with Type* provides clear and focused guidance for students, designers, writers, and editors on how to arrange written content. Throughout the book, visual examples show how to be inventive within the systems of typographic form. With forty-eight pages of new content and dozens of additional illustrations, the second edition provides stunning examples, eye-opening demonstrations, and helpful exercises.

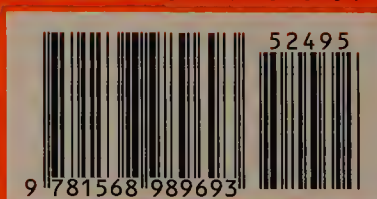
INCLUDES NEW SECTIONS ON

- *Lining and non-lining numerals*
- *Small caps and enlarged capitals*
- *Optical sizes*
- *Captions*
- *Punctuation and ornaments*
- *Font formats and font licensing*
- *Mixing typefaces*
- *Hand lettering*

ELLEN LUPTON is one of America's preeminent design authors and educators. Her books include *Indie Publishing*, *D.I.Y. Design It Yourself*, *Graphic Design: The New Basics* (with Jennifer Cole Phillips), *Design Your Life* (with Julia Lupton), and many others. She is curator of contemporary design at Cooper-Hewitt, National Design Museum in New York, and director of the Graphic Design MFA program at Maryland Institute College of Art (MICA) in Baltimore.

www.ThinkingWithType.com

PRINCETON ARCHITECTURAL PRESS
US\$24.95 ISBN 978-1-56898-969-3



WWW.PAPRESS.COM

DESIGN BRIEFS